

ia



THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA
LOS ANGELES

PRECIS OF THE ARCHIVES

OF THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

JOURNAL, 1671-1674 & 1676

BY

H. C. V. LEIBBRANDT

KEEPER OF THE ARCHIVES

CAPE TOWN:

W. A. RICHARDS & SONS, GOVERNMENT PRINTERS, CASTLE STREET

1902.

A 1748.

DT
843
C17P
v.15

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

JOURNAL, JANUARY 1, 1671.

January 1st.—Misty, rainy weather. This first day of the year celebrated with hearty thanksgiving to God for His mercies during the past year.

1671.
—

Reported this morning that the fugitive, Jan Foxt, who had been in hiding some time, and been summoned by bell and edict on the 23rd last, had been conveyed late last night on board the French ship *Phoenix*, by the servants of the burgher Tieleman Hendricksen. The Council accordingly decided to send a Commission on board, consisting of the Secretary and two of its members, to claim the deserter. Orders were likewise issued to seize the servants above mentioned, and during the afternoon they were brought into the Fort and examined, when they voluntarily confessed the deed. About the same time the Secretary returned on shore, and reported that the French Officers had declared to him that they knew nothing at all about the matter, but would have a thorough search made. Twice the Lieutenant instituted one but without success, reporting that he had found no strangers on board. Whereupon the Secretary replied that we were sufficiently convinced of the contrary, and accordingly he submitted his protest in solemn form and returned on shore. But the Council decided that the matter should be taken in hand once more, and the deputation was again despatched on board, in order to renew the insinuation and protest, and to take with them the two men of Thieleman who had taken the said Foxt on board the evening before, and given him over to the boatswain and his mate, whom they were to confront. This was done, and the deputation on their return, reported that they had carried out their instructions in every way but without meeting with any success, as the officers, the boatswain, his mate, the French Bishop and his Clergy pretended ignorance as before, although they promised that they would have the search renewed, and hoist a signal should they be successful. But as these Frenchman were fully convinced that the "stowaway" was on board, and premeditatedly attempted to hide the fact, it was decided to notify the same to the other French ship, the *Indian*, lying in the Bay.

1671.

January 2nd.—As soon as the gates were opened, our deputation proceeded on board the French warship *Indian*. In the afternoon they returned and reported that they had communicated their instructions to the Captain of the said flute, viz., Mons. de Leclide (a member of the Reformed Church) who had requested them to submit their insinuation in writing, when he would take care that the fugitive was delivered up. The secretary, however, having no authority to do this, submitted that it would be sufficient if he communicated the same by word of mouth. Thereupon the Captain ordered his lieutenant to proceed on board the *Phoenix*, and expressly mention to the officers, in the name of the King, that if the deserter was in hiding on board their ship, of which there was no reasonable doubt, that they were to deliver him up without delay. The Lieutenant on his return reported that the officers had replied that the Captain going on watch yesterday had suddenly encountered the vagabond, and at once ordered him to be seized, so that all we now had to do was simply to send for him. The deputation accordingly returned on board the *Phoenix*, whose officers thereupon delivered up the aforesaid vagabond, with the paltry excuse, however, that according to yesterday's promise they had intended to hoist a signal, but seeing our sloop out already early in the water, they had concluded that it was coming to them, so that they believed it unnecessary to signal. The deserter having been landed and imprisoned, was examined and confessed that he had endeavoured to make his escape principally by the advice of a certain burgher's wife, with whom he previously had had some transactions in sheep bartering. He had feared that this would leak out, and that he would be punished.

He had therefore run away.

The woman was accordingly likewise imprisoned, and will be examined to-morrow.

The French ships leave about 2 p.m, for Madagascar.

January 3rd.—The prisoners are examined, and acknowledge their offence, whilst it further came out in evidence, that the said burgher's wife had been complicated in various barter for cattle not only with the fugitive Fox, but also secretly and directly with the Hottentots themselves; thus directly violating the ordinance expressly enacted on this subject. On the 5th five sheep were obtained from the Cuijper's Hottentots.

January 7th.—A large quantity of shells required for lime for building the water course, and making other repairs. The shed at the Harbour House is being rapidly built up, and may be finished before the arrival of the return fleet. Hitherto all ships' materials we have been obliged to store in the church, so that they can now be removed soon, and the word of the Lord, as usual, preached in His House. The parsonage is rapidly advancing, but it will not

be ready before the arrival of the *Oranglammen*, on board the return fleet. (Note.—Those proceeding to India were mentioned as Orang Bharu or verdant greens, and those returning home as Oranglammen—Cape Oorlam—the wise men of wide experience.) The stone water furrow will, however, take a long while, as many obstacles are encountered in its construction, partly for the want of good stone (or brick?) and partly because the mason work is not always as it should be. We have accordingly been obliged to break it down in many places, and this causes considerable delay and trouble.

January 8th.—Fine warm weather with a nice sea breeze, most desirable and welcome to our farmers, in order to enable them the more comfortably to get through their harvest time. To all appearance Providence has blessed us with fairly good crops; grapes are abundant and garden and other produce promise well. The fruit on the trees, however, are exposed to too many “vexations,” in consequence of the heavy S.E. winds.

January 10th.—Arrival of the yacht *Nuytsenburgh*, of Amsterdam. Had left on the 13th October, with 122 men. Had a prosperous voyage. Called at St. Vincent. Brought no sick or dead. Arrival also of the ship *Tulpenburgh* and the flute *Bueren*, the first with 150 men from Patria, and the other 99; both destined to Batavia. The *Tulpenburgh* had neither dead nor sick. The *Bueren* had six deaths and brought a few sick.

January 11th.—Arrival of the ship *Brederode* from Holland the 13th October, with 168 men. Had on board the Hon. Ryckloff v. Goens, junior. About noon the sloop approached the shore, whilst the guns fired a salute. Mr. van Goens and family landed, and was again greeted with a salute. He has been appointed Councillor Extraordinary of India, and successor to his father as Governor of Ceylon. Some sheep bartered from the Hottentots of Captain Cuijper on the 12th.

Died in the Lord, the assistant Anthony de Raaf, who arrived here on the return ship *Het Wapen van Vlissingen*, and been appointed here as dispenser.

He had been ill a long while, suffering from lameness in the hands and feet.

January 12th.—The Hottentoo Captain Cuijper visited us and brought 18 cattle and 26 sheep, bartered from him for the usual wares. The body of the late dispenser was in the afternoon buried in a christian manner in the New Church.

January 13th.—Arrival of the ship *Brederode*, at the proper anchorage. Fine weather the whole day.

January 14th,—Court of Justice held to-day. The fugitives and

deserters in custody were tried, also those who had aided and abetted them. They were sentenced to be taken to-morrow to the place of execution, and there be whipped and otherwise punished, as their sentences will show—for an example to others.

January 15th.—The soldier deserter, who was to have been punished to-day, escaped from prison during the night. He had removed the shackles from his legs, and had managed to lower himself to the ground with a rope from a small window. The Fiscal accordingly sent out some Hottentoots in pursuit, having offered them a good reward if they captured him. The sentences were carried out on the others.

January 16th.—Some Hottentoots of Cuijper's Craal committed a burglary in the Fort yesterday, and stole many articles of provisions. A young Hottentoo who had likewise attempted to fish in this troubled water, was caught and imprisoned in order to divulge the names of the real culprits.

January 17th—(Saturday). The Hottentoots of Cuijper's Kraal, having heard that one of their number had been captured for theft, brought a present of four fine oxen and some sheep to ransom their comrade, and get him off the dreaded punishment. As it appeared impossible to discover the real offenders, and the young Hottentoo was not guilty to a great extent, he was ransomed under the promise that they would do their best to find out who the culprits were, and deliver them up.

January 18th—(Sunday). Strong N.W. wind. A clear sky. *The Lord's Holy Word preached this day twice in the New Church.*

January 19th.—Decided by resolution of the Council, dated 17th inst., to land 36 soldiers out of the three Batavia ships now lying in the Bay. Resolution carried out this day.

January 20th.—Some convicts sent to Robben Island. The three Batavia ships leave.

January 26th.—As the *Sparendam* destined to Ceylon has not yet made her appearance, the Hon. Van Goens decides to leave to-morrow, weather permitting. He accordingly receives his farewell dinner.

January 27th.—After dinner the Hon. R. Van Goens proceeds on board the *Brederode* in order to continue the voyage to Ceylon. He leaves next day with a S.E. breeze.

January 28th.—Seven oxen and 28 sheep bartered from Capt. Schacher.

February 1st.—Arrival of the return fleet—8 ships—bringing the Hon. Isbrand Goske, ex-director of Persia, and at present

commander of the return fleet. The fleet consisted of *Het Sticht van Utrecht*, *Middelburg*, *De Vrye Zee*, *Dordrecht*, *Gouda*, *Het Wapen van Hoorn*, *De Gerechtigheyt*, and *Prins Willem*. All had left Batavia on the 20th November last. They had with them the little flute *Bunschoten*, which had separated from them during the voyage, and was laden with supplies for the Cape. The *Hooker de Grundel* likewise arrives from Mauritius, having left that Island on the 20th December previously with a cargo of 1,200 blocks of ebony, $3\frac{1}{16}$ lbs. ambergris, $13\frac{1}{4}$ lbs. amber succini, and 12 lbs. ditto *noir*; also 60 dried bucks and a cask of ditto salted, and 3 casks butter. According to the advices received from the commander of that Island, confirmed by the officers of this vessel, everything was in a very good state there, excepting the fact that two vagabonds had escaped into the forest, and that every effort was being made to recapture them. How agricultural matters were going on there would be seen from the letters received. Our hope and confidence were that we would receive some desirable news by this vessel regarding the 17 souls left on shore in the bay Os Medos de Cura, in Lat. $27^{\circ} 17'$, East Coast, but the officers on their return from Mauritius, having appeared before the said bay on the 16th Jan. last, decided to fire a few guns to give notice of the vessel's presence there, but no one of our nation was observed by them on shore. They accordingly sent the boat on shore the next day with some men, who found the old boat lying in the same place with some blacks sitting near and in it. But as they could not very well land that day, they again returned on board, when more guns were fired. No one, however, made his appearance, and those foolish-minded officers thereupon resolved, after having spent hardly 24 hours there, to weigh anchor and proceed to the Cape. Verily the last error was worse than the first, so that we do not find ourselves agreeably edified by all these stupid proceedings, and cannot but feel suspicious.

The Hottentoots of Cuijper's Kraal bring in 7 oxen and 4 sheep.

February 3rd.—Arrival of the return ships *Gerechtigheyt* and *Hoorn*, so that the whole fleet, thank God, is now safely anchored in the bay.

February 4th.—Meeting of Council in the evening. *Abraham Joosten*, of Amsterdam, formerly ship's carpenter at Mauritius, receives a premium of Rds. 100 for finding a valuable piece of ambergris of $3\frac{3}{16}$ lbs. weight. As such valuable material has never been found there before, the reward was decided on, in order to encourage others to make a careful search.

February 5th.—Arrival of the little flute *Bunschoten* from Batavia the 20th November, with supplies for the Cape.

February 7th.—After the usual evening prayer, the Council

1671.

having met, some freemen and agriculturists whose time had expired, and who had requested to be discharged to the Fatherland, were allowed to go. It was useless to endeavour to persuade them to remain any longer, and moreover they had been found to be none of the most industrious.

February 8th.—The Saldanha packet *Voerman* arrives, and reports that 8 or 10 days ago a large French ship had been seen in Sald. Bay, which, after having lain there about 8 days, had again left. We believe that she was the French flute *Sultane*.

February 10th.—The masoned watercourse completed so far that only the stone embankment over which the water must flow is wanting. The return ships will, however, not yet be able to make use of it this year.

February 11th.—Commissioner Goske and Council decide to despatch some burghers and agriculturists to *Hottentoots Holland* tomorrow on horseback, in order to make a careful examination of the fertility of that country, its capabilities and its situation, so that the question may be decided whether or not the Company would be greatly profited by occupying the same.

It was likewise decided to make the wall of the brick watercourse of Fatherland “klinkers,” instead of Cape bricks, as the latter have been found to be by no means durable for works of this nature.

February 12th.—Arrival of the *Huys te Velsen*, return ship, from Colombo on the 7th December.

February 15th (Sunday).—Arrival of the flutes *Cattenburg* and *Soetendael*. Left Gale on the 26th December.

Two services as usual, and the administration of the Holy Sacrament. The burghers despatched to *Hot. Holland* on the 11th inst. return and deliver such a report as the Hon. Commissioner Goske will take with him to the Fatherland.

February 16th.—Death of the bookkeeper of the ship *Prins Willem Hendrik*. He was buried this afternoon in the church.

Busy disembarking from *De Grundel* the ebony brought from Mauritius, and shipping it into the return fleet. Twelve hundred pieces (mooten).

Death of Jacob Schoute, of Ijperen, soldier of the return ship *Het Huys te Velsen*.

February 20th.—The stone furrow examined by Commissioners; busy laying the upper courses, which, if finished, will make this watercourse fit for use.

February 23rd.—Farewell dinner to the officers of the return fleet.

February 24th.—About 9 a.m. the Hon. Isbrand Goske embarked, the customary salute being fired, and the burghers and soldiers being all under arms.

February 25th.—As it had been decided by Resolution of the 21st inst. to place the new fort in a better state of defence, by building up the Western point, and enclosing it behind, which has already been finished off with an earthen embankment and rampart, it was decided to despatch the Hooker *de Grundel* to Rob. Island for a cargo of shells and blue slate stone lying ready there. The Superintendent was likewise ordered to continue quarrying that kind of stone, independent of the daily work done on the island.

February 26th.—The return fleet leaves.

March 2nd.—Arrival of the flute *Sparendam* of Amsterdam. Left on the 13th December for Ceylon. Of 170 men she had lost 5, and brought 3 sick.

March 4th.—The hooker *Grundel* leaves for the Island for a load of blue slabs. Arrival of the ship *Damiate* of Amsterdam with 170 men, of whom 13 had died. Brought, praise God! only 7 sick. The *Bruydegom* leaves for the Island to bring back some slaughter sheep.

March 5th.—Arrival of the *Gecroonde Vrede* of Hoorn, with 183 men. Left on the 23rd October. Had 6 deaths, and brought 7 sick.

March 6th.—Arrival of the second return squadron, consisting of 5 ships, viz. : the *Vryheyd*, &c., under the flag of skipper Pieter Coopman, who, on his arrival was deadly sick. Had left the Straits of Sunda on the 13th December. The fifth vessel was the little flute *Sandlooper* with 50 lasts of rice and other provisions for this place.

March 7th.—At daybreak we saw with astonishment on the other side of the bay a fine “*Spiegel*” ship with a French flag gradually approaching the roadstead.

When the flute *Sparendam* arrived, she brought with her the chief merchant, Robbert Padtbrugge. Thereupon it was deemed good to permit him to hoist the flag on the main topmast, as far as this fortress was concerned (as a mark of personal respect on the part of the authorities in this fortress), but as the skipper—commander of the four return ships lately arrived here (Skipper Coopman) also carried the flag in the same manner, and still continues to do so, which is considered to be contrary to all naval usage, it being never allowed to have two flags hoisted in that manner at the same time in one harbour—and as there is likewise a strange vessel in the bay with her flag hoisted in the same

1671.

manner, the Council decided to send the Fiscal on board and ask Skipper Coopman whether he has received any special commission, and if not, then to strike his flag with proper respect until further orders.

In the meanwhile the sloop of the French vessel still lying in the offing, arrived, and some officers landed, who in the name of the ex-Viceroy of Madagascar, Mons. De Mondavergne, had come to greet the Commander and to ask whether His Excellency would be allowed to remain here some days in order to refresh himself and his people a little. This was politely complied with. This vessel, the *Maria*, had left Madagascar on the 13th February and was now on her second voyage to France. In April last year she had likewise left Madagascar in company of the ship *La Force* and the bark which had passed here with the intention of returning to Europe. In lat. 32° they had been overtaken by a severe storm, and the *Maria* had been compelled to put back to her old anchorage, and after Mons. De la Haye had relieved Mons. Mondevergne she had resumed her return voyage to France. All the King's ships that had called here and at Saldanha Bay had arrived safely, excepting the *Phoenix*, whose non-appearance caused them all considerable anxiety. The officers likewise informed us that when they left Madagascar the Viceroy (de la Haye) was mortally ill, and that there was little hope of his recovery. On their way hither they had spoken the ship *Sultana* from Brazil via Saldanha Bay.

March 9th.—Arrival of the flute *Spanbroeck* from Ceylon on the 14th January. Had had a prosperous voyage to this.

The sloop of the ship *Zuytpolsbroek*, which had the day before yesterday been blown out of the bay by the heavy S. Easter, had, with the greatest danger to its occupants, finally succeeded in effecting a landing below Blue Berg, about eight hours distant from the Fort. The skipper and bookkeeper, who had been in her, left her where she was, and walked towards the Fort with the news To-morrow wagons will be despatched to fetch the boat and the men.

March 10th.—To-day 36 men were drafted from the *Damiate*, and 36 more from the *Gecroonde Vrede*, in order to strengthen the garrison here. Among them was Lieutenant Breitenbach. Ten guns and some ammunition were likewise landed. Twenty-five men were also taken out of the flute *Sparendam*, but mainly at the desire of Mr. Padtbrugge, because they were suspected in matters of importance.

March 14th.—Contrary winds prevent the *Sparendam* from leaving, as well as the French Viceroy, Mons. de Mondavergne, who bade us farewell to-day with civility.

March 16th.—About 9 o'clock a.m. a letter was received from Mr. Padbrugge on board the *Sparendam*, lying ready for sea, stating that the French ship *Maria* yesterday anchored off the Downs (Mouille Point), and also waiting for a favourable breeze, was now lying to off Robben Island. That this had made him suspicious. That when he was on board the Frenchman yesterday to say farewell to the Viceroy, he had given orders to the quartermaster and the boat's crew to observe everything carefully, and make a rough estimate of the number of men on board, as they were then busy with boat and windlass, and supposed to be mostly all on deck; but they reported that there were hardly 50 men on deck and only a few cripples and slaves under the half deck, where the Viceroy was: about 15 or 16 men—so that there could hardly have been more than 80 altogether. But as in conversation yesterday the Viceroy mentioned that there was a vessel in Saldanha Bay, and that he believed it to be a Frenchman, it may be questioned whether there has been no communication between these two vessels, so that they are now looking out for the *Sparendam*. The latter accordingly was making every preparation for a vigorous defence, and if it received orders to go to sea, it intended at once to board the Frenchman, as its guns were inferior to those of the Frenchman, and would be powerless to act, besides the fact that the latter had many more men on board; he accordingly awaited the Commander's instructions, &c.; as the Frenchman had 26 or 28 guns above deck, and the *Sparendam* only 16, and two light tugs before the cabin.

The Council was very much taken aback by these deplorable events or rather this (deplorable) news, and the mate who had brought the letter was sent back to Mr. Padtbrugge with the answer that we were much surprised here at his timidity and had had quite a different opinion of him, that we did not feel the least anxiety, that his fears were groundless, that without further ado he was to weigh anchor, as the wind was favourable, that he was to haul down his flag, and in the name of God proceed on the voyage.

About an hour and a half later the mate returned and brought a second epistle from Mr. Padtbrugge as follows: "We expect written orders, as we have only received verbal ones (in reply to our question) whether there be sufficient reason or not (for our suspicions). As regards the assistance which you would be pleased to send us, I leave it to yourselves to decide whether you would have time enough to help us when both the offender and defender are three Dutch miles away from you. This is our general opinion. But as you have the supreme authority here in the name of the Hon^{ble} Company, and we do not know whether, in a case of emergency to strike our flag or uphold the dignity of the Company, or to set the topsail (on which the question will hinge, and

1671.

which—subject to your better judgement—cannot be thought of) we wish to know how we are to act, and therefore we respectfully request to be informed by you in writing, otherwise we shall hold ourselves irresponsible for all loss or injury that may accrue. As soon as we shall have received your answer we shall make sail and proceed towards the Frenchman who is waiting for us, and is lying with his stem towards the south. We likewise request that this letter may be registered. (Signed) R. Padtbrugge (at the side) with special greeting, in haste. On board the *Sparendam*, 16th March, 1671.”

The Commander and Council being greatly dissatisfied with this letter, answered as follows: “Monsieur! About 9 o'clock this morning we received your first letter, and with great surprise gathered from it what great difficulties prevented you from setting sail. We accordingly communicated your anxieties to the Council for the consideration of that body, but as there was nothing to induce us to fall in with your fears in the least, we sent you a verbal message to continue your voyage without delay, but as in spite of that you continued on the roadstead, we had already taken steps to instruct the gunner to send you a sharp messenger ordering you to obey our order implicitly. Your second letter arrived at that moment which, added to our great dissatisfaction, for we gathered from it to our greater alarm the timid continuance of fear which you felt for the Frenchman, still lying at anchor off Robben Island. And as as yet we can see no reason for the least anxiety in his being there, we have not been able to refrain from ordering you in writing that immediately on receipt of this, you shall strike your flag, weigh anchor and make sail without expecting any convoy, or in any way interfering with anyone; making for the open sea, and should you be attacked, which is highly improbable, so to conduct yourself, as you may consider yourself authorized to do by nature and by God. And should you still longer delay, or act contrary to our order, we shall be obliged to remove you from the vessel and fill your place with another who at any rate shall feel no scruple about sailing past the Frenchman. We wish you a happy and prosperous voyage. (Signed) Pieter Hackius. Cornelis de Cretzer. Joh. Coon and Jac. Granaat. In the Fortress Good Hope adij, 16th March, 1671.”

This letter having been handed to the mate, the latter at once returned on board. The *Sparendam* however still remained three hours loitering until finally tacking towards the opposite side of of the bay it fell in with an E. breeze, and in a short time was out of sight. The French vessel however remained where she was, and on the following day returned to the outer roads so that the *Sparendam* was in no danger of attack from that quarter.

March 17th.—The presumption of Padtbrugge that there was a

French vessel in Saldanha Bay was considered to be a myth emanating from himself, and the more so as some Hottentoots who had arrived from that place had seen no such ship. During the night the Frenchman left without firing a gun.

March 18th.—Last night the junior mate of the return ship *Het Hoff van Breda*, named Jan Jans: Gale, of Gorcum, was stabbed in his left leg by the third officer of the same ship, named Bruyn Jans: Scheve of Edam. This occurred in the house of a certain burgher near the Company's orchard behind the "Windberg." About three or four hours afterwards the person wounded died. The criminal at once absconded and notwithstanding every effort was not captured. A commission was sent out to inspect the body and bury it.

March 20th.—The Fiscal proceeds on board the return ships warning all against harbouring the murderer, and on his return the same warning was publicly read from the balcony and affixed in writing at the usual place. Every one was forbidden to harbour him or give him any sustenance.

March 22nd.—The return squadron leaves.

March 23rd.—*The little yacht, De Bruijdegom, proceeds to False Bay to search for a suitable landing place, in order to reach Hottentoots Holland more easily. This would be a great convenience when agriculture is taken in hand there, for the long and difficult journey overland would be dispensed with.*

March 25th.—In consequence of the resolution adopted during the presence here of the Hon: Goske, to commence some fortifications in connection with the new works on hand, the Land-surveyor this day marked them off. Already a large number of soldiers have been busy carrying on earth in barrows.

March 26th.—Arrival of the flute *Pijnacker*, of Delft, with 104 men. Left the 9th December. Had, thank God! no deaths or sick.

March 27th.—*The coaster Bruijdegom leaves for Saldanha Bay, taking with her Corporal Pieter Siegrvriet and five soldiers, in order to take repossession of that place, according to Resolution adopted by Council under the presidency of Commissioner Goske. The instructions to the Corporal will be found in the letter book.*

Death of Michiel Bleecksmits, a miner, who had been ill for some time.

March 28th.—Hard at work at the fortifications, which advance considerably. A large quantity of stone has been broken, and is lying ready.

1671.

March 29th.—A ship anchors during the night and fires 5 guns. Presumed to be a foreigner, and, as far as we could judge, it carried a red flag.

March 30th.—The officers of the vessel that had arrived, on landing, stated that she was the *Vogelstruys*, despatched from London to Bantam on the 13th November. She had had no deaths or sickness and only required water, which was allowed her, as well as permission to buy refreshments.

April 1st.—Arrival of the *Stermeer* of Hoorn with 125 men. Left on the 23rd December. Had 2 deaths, and brought, thank God! only 4 sick. Shortly afterwards arrived a small English frigate named the *Phoenix*, from Bengal, *via* the coast of Coromandel, and destined to England. Only called here for fresh water. Allowed.

April 2nd.—Fourteen persons landed from the *Pynacker* in order to strengthen the garrison. Death of *Pieter Muller*, of Maagdenburg. He had arrived here in the *Geeroonde Vrede*.

April 3rd.—The *Vogelstruys* leaves with a stiff S.E. breeze.

April 4th.—Arrival of the *Delfshaven* of Delft. with 155 men. Left on the 9th December. Had lost 3 men; brought no sick worth mentioning. The *Phoenix* also leaves.

April 5th.—Sunday. Usual services. In the evening a dirty and stinking mist arose from the sea and clouded the sky.

April 7th.—Lieutenant Coon returns from Hout Bay, and reports that he had found everything there in good order. The sheep dying from some sickness on Robben Island, the sloop was sent thither to bring some to the Cape for the outward bound vessels daily expected.

April 9th.—The officers of the *Delfshaven* having touched at the Island, reported that there was a great mortality among the sheep there. Accordingly the *Grundel* and the open boat were sent thither to bring back a load of those animals, not only for the daily expected outward bound ships, but also, in order to prevent more deaths, if possible.

April 10th.—Arrival of the flute *Wimmemum* from Batavia the 31st January. Had on board as skipper *Adriaan Drom*, and as vice skipper *Isaac Fonteijn*. At the request of the commander, who was indisposed, both were invited to dinner at noon of the same day by the merchant and second person *Sieur de Cretzer*. After dinner, whilst a glass of wine was being drunk and a pipe smoked, it happened that in fun the skipper *Drom* and vice

skipper Fonteijn commenced to play at fisticuffs and that without any reason whatever Drom became angry, and after exchanging a few words drew his sword threatening and lungeing at the said Fonteijn more than once, who not being so hotheaded, avoided the threats without defending himself, but however, much this Drom was admonished by the Merchant, Sieur de Cretzer and his servants to beware of committing any molestation at his house, he, instead of listening to such good admonitions, proceeded with his continual annoyance and finally made a lunge at Fonteijn who was standing next to de Cretzer; the weapon passed through Fontein's clothes without however wounding him. De Cretzer, however, who was in the act of rising from his seat, was wounded by the weapon. Feeling himself wounded and seeing how vehemently he was bleeding, he became so furious that at once he wanted to attack the skipper with his sword, but he was prevented by the servants who were present, who at the same time thrust the skipper into the passage (ganck) and forced the sword from de Cretzer's hand, detaining him inside. Shortly afterwards the surgeon was fetched to bind the wound, which once more beginning to bleed very much, de Cretzer was seized with renewed fury and vengeance to such a degree, that he once more jumped up, and seized a small 'landerlue' rapier (degentie), with which he came outside his room, and finding skipper Adriaan Drom standing there in the passage, stabbed him so badly in the left breast, that the latter, struggling forward five or six steps, fell down and died. But though immediately after this became known, the gates were closed, and a search was made for the Merchant de Cretzer, the latter managed to escape from the fort. At the same time his house was closed and sealed, and three parties were sent on foot and on horseback to capture him. They, however, returned late in the evening without success, so that no doubt, as darkness set in, he must have hid himself in one or other lurking place.

Some time afterwards, the body of the dead skipper having been examined, it was found that the weapon had entered his left breast, through the pericordium and entered the heart, naturally inflicting a mortal wound, truly a sad misfortune, and a deplorable mishap to the consternation of everyone.

April 11th.—Commissioners sent on board the *Wimmemum* to put seals on the property of the late skipper, whose body was interred this afternoon at 4 o'clock in the New Church. 12th. Departure of the *Delfshaven*, *Pynacker* and *Stermeer*. The *Grundel*, *Voerman* and open boat bring some sheep from the Island.

April 13th.—The Merchant de Cretzer summoned by bell and edict to purge himself within twice twenty-four hours of the crime

committed by him, on pain of being declared in default, and further steps taken against him according to law. 14th. Isaacq Fonteijn appointed to succeed the late skipper Drom.

April 15th.—Isaacq Fonteijn installed on board the *Wimmenum*, but not without opposition, as may be read below.

April 22nd.—Hard at work with the new fortifications, which are progressing considerably.

April 24th.—The N. W. wind prevents the *Wimmenum* from leaving. The newly appointed skipper Fonteijn lands and complains of the wanton disobedience and stubborn murmurings of many of his officers, which he had experienced for some days, and especially this morning, especially from the chief mate Sijmon Christiaensz ; the new mate Isaacq Spelder, and the chief boatswain Jan de Wolff. He accordingly hesitated to go to sea with them. Thereupon these three persons were summoned on shore, examined, and personally confronted with Fonteijn, when it was found by us also to be unadvisable to let them to go sea with that vessel. Accordingly they were ordered to remain on shore under arrest, with their accounts, chests and clothing, the Fiscal being instructed to take legal proceedings against them.

Arrival during the afternoon of the flute *Osdorp* of Amsterdam, with 123 men. Had left in January. Had 3 deaths ; brought no sick.

April 25th.—The vacancies filled on board the *Wimmenum*. Jan Brittal was made chief mate. He had served some years here as skipper on the *Voerman*. A mate of the *Bunschoten* was appointed junior mate, and the boatswain of the same vessel, boatswain. We trust that the vessel will sail more safely with these men. With a strong S. Easter she leaves.

April 28th. — Very cold S. E. weather. The sailors warming themselves with discharging rice from the *Bunschoten*. 29th. The *Voerman* dispatched with some timber to repair the dwellings at Sald : Bay. She also takes a boat to be used there for transferring such cattle as may be bartered, to one of the Islands.

May 1st.—Fifteen men landed from the *Osdorp* to strengthen the garrison. 3rd (Sunday), the *Osdorp* leaves.

May 5th.—For some time we have overlooked the laziness and stubbornness of the soldiers in their daily occupations, but as they abuse our kindness, we have to-day, in order to deter others, sent 4 of them to the Island, to work there ‘ad opus publicum,’ and make them more tractable.

May 6th.—As the garrison has been considerably increased by

the successive drafts from the ships, and off and on the soldiers are complaining that they are unable with the little food money allowed them, to provide what they require for their maintenance, the Commander submitted to the Council, strengthened with the burgher Councillors and some of the most civilized (geciviliceerste) burghers, the reasons which had induced him to strengthen the garrison, and on the other hand, the complaints of the soldiers, so that it would be necessary to re-introduce the old custom regarding the slaughtering of cattle, that these poor people might be able to buy something for refreshment and their needs. Decided that the burghers shall, pro rata, be allowed to kill 250 sheep weekly, which shall be sold in the basar to the garrison, and at such a price as fixed by the resolution.

May 7th.—Ascension Day.—Arrival of *Het Kasteel van Medemblik* of Enckhuijzen. Had left on the 8th Jan. with 204 men. Lost 4, but brought no sick.

May 8th.—Two convicts escape from the Island in a small boat. Having landed on the opposite shore, they walked hither, and informed us of various faithless acts of the superintendent, Jan Zacharias, in selling sheep to our own and foreign ships. This will be investigated, the convicts being kept under arrest.

May 13th.—The Fiscal proceeds to the Island to investigate the charges and establish proper order. For that purpose he is accompanied by Corporal Hans Michael Calembach, who shall take the place of Zacharias, should it be deemed necessary. The two convicts had likewise to dance thither.

May 15th.—Drafted 30 soldiers from the *Medemblik* to increase the garrison. This afternoon preparation service was held (Friday), as next Sunday the Holy Sacrament will be administered.

May 16th.—Return of the Fiscal from the Island, bringing with him the Superintendent, Jan Zacharias, whose place has been filled by Corporal Calembach, and not without weighty reasons, in consequence of various fraudulent actions committed by the former, for which the Fiscal will prosecute him.

May 17th.—Sunday. Celebrated the Holy Pentecost. 18th. The *Medemblik* leaves. 19th. Arrival of the flute *Grietenbroeck* of Enckhuijzen. Left the 8th Jan. with 78 men. Had 3 deaths. Had called at Falmouth, where 6 men deserted.

May 20th.—Arrival of the ships *Tidoor* of Zeeland, and *Ternaten* of Amsterdam. Left Holland on the 8th Jan. : the first with 221 men, of whom 3 had died. She brought no sick. The second had 261 on board, of whom 3 had died. She brought 2 or 3

671.

sick. This vessel brought the merchant, and counsellor of justice, Robbert de Vicq and family, who were lodged within the Fort. Storms had forced both vessels to remain four weeks in English harbours.

May 21st.—Pleasant weather, greatly facilitating the works at the fortifications. Towards evening we received the distressing news that the yacht, *De Voerman*, which had gone to Saldanha Bay with some supplies for the garrison there, had on her return, in consequence of the violent winds and its bad sailing qualities, been thrown on shore about the Vondelingh's Island, with the loss of all her anchors, where she was completely shattered, but without the loss of any lives. Further particulars will be obtained when the officers arrive. The same letter also stated that the Hottentoots in the neighbourhood were still very tough in bartering cattle, demanding too much tobacco and other things. The trade will therefore have to be suspended until they are more reasonable.

May 23rd.—The messenger who brought in the news of the loss of the *Voerman*, sept back to the bay with two men, a wagon and 8 oxen, in order to endeavour to collect some of the goods saved from the wreck, and bring the same hither. The *Bruijdegom* will also leave for the same purpose. The *Grundel* arrived from the Island with a number of sheep.

May 24th.—Arrival of *Het Wapen van Zierikzee* of Zealand, with 143 men. Had left on the 10th Jan. Had no sick or dead. 26th. Arrival of the flute *Uijdom* of Amsterdam. Had left the 8th Jan: with 121 men. No dead or sick.

May 27th.—One hundred thousand "klinkerts" landed from the *Grootenbroeck* in order to be used for the borders of the water-course, instead of Cape bricks.

May 29th.—Letter received from the officers of the flute *Isselsteijn*, which had, by contrary winds, been obliged to anchor in False Bay for fresh water and cattle for refreshment. Had found none of the latter however, and therefore asked the Commander to send them some refreshments. Had left the Texel on the 8th Jan: (Letter signed by Albert Cool).

May 30th.—Sergeant Jeronijmus Croese provided with tobacco and copper, and sent to False Bay, in order to barter some cattle from the neighbouring Hottentoots, and so provide the *Isselsteijn* with meat.

June 1st.—One hundred men drafted from the ships at present in the bay. 2nd. The *Isselsteijn* requires some salt, as the butler had used up the ship's supply for salting down the meat obtained.

Two pack oxen sent with 400 lbs. of salt, but after an absence of 3 hours the men returned stating that they had met Croese who had told them that a tun of salt had been discovered in the vessel and that therefore it was unnecessary to send any.

June 3rd.—As, in spite of all the efforts of the assayers and miners, hitherto no minerals have been discovered, and there does not appear any probability of any being discovered, and as the Directors have lately instructed us, that in case of non-success, the assayers and miners were to be sent on to Batavia; it was decided to act accordingly, with the hope that they may have better success in India. They therefore embarked before dark.

June 6th.—The four ships leave for Batavia. 7th. Letter from Rob: Island stating that in consequence of the failing pastures the sheep were daily dying off. Decided to despatch the *Grundel* and the two rice flutes at once thither to take on board as many sheep as they could carry. They return on the 10th with a large number of sheep.

The lion kills in broad daylight one of the freemen's cattle below Table Mountain, but on the screams of the herd, he left his prey untouched and cleared. 11th. To day the lion made another attempt, killing in sight of the herd one of the Company's milch cows, devouring it.

June 12th.—As the Directors, in their last general despatch, mentioned that they had expressly accepted some freemen in order to be sent hence to Mauritius, and as they have arrived in the *Ternaten*, we have, in accordance with our resolution, considered the expedition to that Island, and decided at once to fit out the flute *Bunschoten* for that purpose, and load her with one year's supplies for that Island, as usual, so that, when she has landed the newcomers, she may proceed to Batavia with a cargo of ebony.

June 13th.—The gun trap set for the lion found this day to have had no result, the bird seems to be somewhat too clever.

June 16th.—The ship *Grootenbroeck* leaves for Batavia. In accordance with instructions of the Directors in their despatch of the 5th September last, it was decided to send the flute *Sandlooper*, which is getting too old for these waters, to the Mayotte Islands for a cargo of slaves, but as the skipper and other experienced persons are of opinion that no slaves will be obtainable there, the flute was ordered in that case to proceed direct to Batavia and land its little cargo there.

June 17th.—The *Bruijdegom* returns from Saldanha Bay with some of the cordage of the *Voerman*, two two-pounders and other articles.

1671.

June 18th.—The garrison diligently working at the fortifications.

June 19th.—The *Bunschoten* leaves for Mauritius, and the *Sandlooper* for the Mayotte Islands.

June 20th.—As the pastures on the Island are failing, the *Grundel* was despatched thither to take on board as many goats as she could catch, as those gluttonous animals are very injurious to the sheep there in their search for food.

The four refractory soldiers, sent thither on the 5th were also ordered back, as we trust that they have been taught better obedience.

June 22nd.—Some packets and goods taken out of the stores to be aired and distributed amongst the garrison on account. 23rd. The *Grundel* arrives from the Island with 38 goats and the report that the mortality among the sheep had considerably ceased, and the grass had grown uncommonly for the animals left there. A certain temporary assistant of our cooper, a soldier named Coert Schreuder, seems, whilst tapping off some leaguers of arrack in the Company's store, to have secretly swallowed so much of the liquor that shortly afterwards, having reached his quarters, he was found an hour later dead behind his chest, no doubt smothered in his drunkenness. Truly a ridiculous thing to be so devoted to the greedy Bacchus as to imperil both body and soul at the same time.

Towards evening the burgher councillor, Wouter Mostaert, reported that a lion had in broad daylight destroyed two of his best cattle, and although we did not refrain on various occasions to set traps for these "birds" of prey (roofvogels) their wickedness has continually frustrated us.

June 24th.—As the fugitive merchant, Cornelis de Cretzer, notwithstanding his having been publicly summoned by bell on the 13th April last, was still in hiding, he was to-day once more cited to appear within 3 times 24 hours, and to purge himself as appears from the edict.

June 25th.—The burgher Smient reports this afternoon that a lion had in broad daylight killed a young milch cow near his house situated about half a quarter of an hour's distance behind the Fort. 27th. Fine weather. The soldiers hard at work at the Fort.

June 29th.—About noon, through the carelessness of some of the Company's slaves, a fire broke out in the kitchen of the large garden here, but as it was discovered in time, and the air was calm, it was quenched without having done much damage.

Shortly afterwards the Superintendent of the "Schuer" informed us that a lion had again in broad daylight, and in sight of the herd, destroyed and partly devoured two of the Company's cattle. These audacious "birds" seem to have reached the pinnacle with their vexation, and will one day or another have to pay heavily with their blood for these delicacies (delicatesse), as various courageous volunteers have offered themselves for hunting them.

July 4th.—This morning at 11 o'clock Cornelis de Cretzer was for the second time cited to appear.

July 5th.—During the night a horse of one of the burghers, grazing near the Company's stables (Paarde stal), was torn to pieces by a lion. A gun trap was laid in the evening near the carcase.

July 6th.—During the night the lion returned to the carcase of the horse, but as he came too near the gun he found himself deceived, and was so hit in the brain pan, that he died immediately on the spot. He was brought into the Fort this morning and viewed with particular pleasure by the residents. The man who laid the trap is to receive the reward of the Company, as well as that of the burghers.

July 7th.—Arrival of the *Outshoorn* of Zealand. Had left on the 30th May with 212 men. Lost six and brought three sick. Also of the French ship *St. Jan*. Had left the Island Groy in Brittany on the 7th March with 150 men and 26 guns, and in company of the ship *Soleil* from which she had parted in a storm, &c. She was destined to Surat on behalf of the French Company, and would be followed by six other vessels. She had on board Mons. Blot, who would, with the title of Director-General, have, on behalf of the Royal Company, the control in those parts. Allowed her water and refreshments, as well as a permit for 12 sheep and some garden produce granted to the freemen, for which they most highly thanked us with a compliment.

July 10th.—A boisterous night with continuous rains, so that various boats were thrown on shore and divers burgher residences collapsed. 12th. Same weather still, so that the old horn work and its embankments are becoming so completely soaked, that we are getting afraid of an accident.

July 13th.—Same weather. The lions taking advantage of it, nearly destroyed one of the Company's mares, and in the presence of the herd, flung the foal over his shoulders and carried it with him towards Table Mountain. The earthen walls of this old little fort are giving way entirely in consequence of the weather, and fall asunder like meal, yea! so, that it seems as if the Fort had undergone a siege, and breaches had been made in it.

1671.

July 14th.—The rain fell so heavily (over gulsigh) during the night that everything seemed in danger of being destroyed by the water. The sluice of the little Canals, unable to carry off the water, made the latter rise so suddenly, that the residences within the hornwork had water in them up to the knee, to the great loss of some.

The gate of our inner Fort, being saturated by the continuous rains, threatens to fall, and would have fallen already, if not propped up in good time. Two sentry boxes of brick on the points of the ramparts also tumbled over. The causes of this great distruction (ruine) are partly the bricks baked here, and partly that they have been laid not in lime, but in clay, so that they draw water into them like sponges, and make all buildings constructed of them, crazy. Our walls have this night been rained down nearly to a level flat, and whatever has remained, is more hanging than standing, threatening every moment to tumble down. In order to put every thing straight again, our new works, which remained sound during all this weather, will be much retarded.

July 15th.—The bad weather, thank God! abating. 16th. Fine weather during the day. At night the storm broke loose again. The Director on board the French ship sent a letter on shore to the Commander by his Lieutenant, in which, as he was on the point of departure, he mentions that in consequence of the daily bad weather, he had not had the honour to land and call on His Honour, but that he felt grateful for the refreshments allowed him, &c. (The letter is given and signed "On board the ship *Le St. Jean*, this Wednesday the 15th July, 1671. Blot, Director-General of the Royal Company of the East Indies.) The Commander replied verbally that the visit would not have been unacceptable, but as it was impossible, he wished him a happy voyage.

July 17th.—Very boisterous weather with heavy tempests from the north. The freemen's boat nevertheless arrives from Sald. bay with a rich haul of fish, which will be of great service for our large garrison.

July 18th.—Rained again almost unnaturally during the whole night, so that the S.E. corner of the parapet tumbled down. For the rest the whole fortress is very dilapidated, and almost dangerous to stay in any longer.

The French Director sent us another note informing us that two of his men had deserted, and were in biding on shore, and requesting that should they make their appearance after his departure, to keep them in confinement, and send them out in the

following ships. The letter was written in rather an offensive style. (Letter given.) 19th. The Frenchman leaves without firing a single gun.

July 20th.—The *Oudthoorn* leaves. Busy repairing many ruins within the fort caused by the heavy rains. The French deserters having made their appearance were placed in confinement in order to be delivered to the expected French ships, as requested by the Director.

July 21st.—Fairly good weather with a N. breeze. The stores and depôts which had hitherto, after the escape of the merchant De Cretzer, been under nobody's control except that of some commissioners, were to-day entrusted to the merchant Froyman-teau, who shall henceforth have the charge of them. 23rd. Busy with masoning up the collapsed works in and outside the fort. 24th. Busy taking stock in the stores.

July 25th.—Bartered four sheep from the neighbouring Hottentoots. The merchant De Cretzer "ex Superabundanti," summoned for the fourth time to appear, &c., on pain of forfeiting all exceptions, defences and "beneficia" with which he might otherwise somewhat help himself.

The female slave of a certain burgher was this day delivered of twins, the one procreated by a negro and the other by a Hollander; a rare occurrence; and being a different (*verscheijden*) conception, we could not omit mentioning it.

July 27th.—This morning the soldier Carel Hamerlingh was found mortally wounded in the Corps du Garde in the new fort. Those who have been in his company the night before were questioned, and Johannes Hendricx of Bruges, was discovered to be the culprit. He was at once apprehended.

July 28th.—As the natives both here and at Sald. Bay are very unwilling to part with their cattle, and bring us nothing of any importance, Sergeant Jeronymus Croese, provided with the necessary merchandize, was despatched on a 7 or 8 days' journey to endeavour to barter some cattle, as our stock is running very low, and there seems no probability of the Hottentoots bringing us any.

July 29th.—Pleasant weather, with a S. E. breeze. As De Cretzer did not comply with the summons, the Fiscal was permitted to sell publicly his inventoried and sequestrated property in presence of Commissioners, &c. 30th. Croese leaves with 10 men on his expedition.

July 31st.—Pleasant weather. Busy with repairing damages caused by the rains.

1671.

The homicide Jan Hendricxe having been tried yesterday, was condemned to death. To-day he was informed by Commissioners to prepare himself in a Christian manner for execution to-morrow.

August 1st.—The condemned prisoner was at 11 o'clock this morning brought to the place of execution, and after he had prepared himself in a Christian manner, was shot. After that he was coffined and buried at the side of his victim; so that everything proceeded regularly.

August 2nd.—Sunday. One sermon preached by the Rev. De Vooght, who has again been restored to fair health.

August 3rd.—Fine weather continuing. Works at the new fortifications progressing. 4th. Commissioners proceed to Hout Bay to take stock of the cattle there, and report. The *Bruydegom* leaves with supplies for Sald. Bay.

August 5th.—Arrival of the new flute *Cuylenburgh* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 22nd April with 138 men. Had no deaths. Brought 4 sick. 6th. Bartered 4 cattle and 1 calf from the Hottentoots. 7th. Arrival of the Hooker *de Goudvinck* of Delft. Left on the 18th March with 19 men. Lost one. Sergeant Cruse returns with 268 sheep and 68 cattle, all well conditioned. In the afternoon those of Captain Houthebeen's Kraals also brought 53 sheep.

August 10th.—The Hottentoo Captain Cuijper and some of his men arrived at the Fort and offered the Commander six choice and beautiful oxen, in case he were willing to assist him with some armed men against his inland enemies, who had by force taken most of his cattle, and his many wives. When however we refused to comply, he offered the animals in barter. A lion shot at Hout Bay and brought to the Fort. He was considerably larger than the previous one. 11th. Obtained 2 oxen from the natives. A certain burgher from the country brought in, in his wagon, a Hottentoo bound, and complained that from mere wantonness the latter with many others, who had escaped, had cut the throat of one of his sheep. He was detained for further examination.

August 11th.—Our supplies being discharged from the *Goudvinck*. 13th. Some Hottentoots, supposed to be relatives of the incarcerated one, offered the Company two beautiful and delicate cattle as a ransom for the prisoner. They said that the crime had not been committed by the prisoner, but by other Hottentoots of a strange kraal under another chief. They were told, as usual, that they were to bring in the culprits, and if not, we would hold the prisoner responsible as an accomplice. With this answer they left.

August 14th.—Arrival of a French Hooker, as they themselves said, unbaptised (ongedoopt), but called after her Captain, Mons: Barbeau. Had left Brest on the 15th March, with a flute carrying 40 guns and another vessel. Called at the Canaries and St. Jago, with express orders to *rendezvous* at the Cape, and after having refreshed, to proceed in company to Madagascar.

August 14th.—The two French deserters, fearing punishment, succeeded this evening, favoured by the darkness, in escaping over the walls. 15th. A search instituted, but without success.

August 16th.—News brought from the redoubt Kijkuijt that during the night, a whale, deceived by the tide, had been suddenly left on shore. Many curious people went out to see it during the afternoon. It will be boiled down to-morrow.

The friends of the incarcerated Hottentoo again importuned us with the offer of two fine cattle and 4 similar sheep for the redemption of the prisoner. After investigating the case, it was found that only his innocence could be observed, whilst the insolence was not of such a nature as described.

August 17th.—The *Cuylenburgh* and *Goudrinck* leave. The inner gate, which had suffered so much from the unusual rains and been propped up, was partly broken down as far as was deemed necessary, in order to be properly built.

This evening two wagons were despatched to fetch the blubber of the whale, and carry it to the Fort. 18th. Obtained some sheep from the Hottentoes of Cuijper's Kraals. The wagons returned with a large quantity of blubber which the sailors at once set to to boil. 19th. The masons busy at the gate. The sailors busy boiling oil until the evening. Four halfaums obtained. 22nd. The soldiers hard at work at the new fortifications; and stock-taking proceeding.

August 23rd.—Arrival of the Hooker *De Lyster* of Rotterdam. Left the 18th April with 17 men. Had no dead or sick. The Sald: Bay boats bring in a large quantity of fish (salted).

August 24th.—A most necessary bridge below the Fort, suffering from age, being repaired and strengthened by the masons with stone at each end. Other repairs to be also effected, in order no longer to be endangered during the N.W. Monsoon. For some days an unusual number of whales (Noord of Zuijd Capers) was observed in the bay, making a great blowing, the like of which no one can remember.

The Frenchman in the bay had her flags flying the whole day, and fired five guns in the afternoon, in honour of the birthday, as they said, of their Sovereign.

1671.

August 25th.—In accordance with the Resolution adopted under the Presidency of the Hon: Com: Goske, that with an eye to the probable rupture between our State and the Crown of France, a permanent Hooker should always be kept ready, in order, should anything occur, to be at once despatched to Batavia, we have kept the *Grundel* here for the purpose, but as she requires repairs, we have decided to retain the newly built *Lyster* for the purpose, and despatch the *Grundel* to Batavia with 17 men and 4 months provisions, in order to be repaired there. The coal and iron being discharged from the *Lyster*. The Saldanha Bay boats bring loads of fish.

The Commander, having been indisposed for a long time, and now, having recuperated somewhat, drove out to the Company's pleasure house Rustenburgh, in order to investigate matters there, and have a little recreation.

August 27th.—Bartered 4 sheep from the Hottentoots. 28th. The mate of the French hooker *Barbeau* lands to bid farewell in the name of his chief. 28th. Bartered 10 sheep from the Hottentoots. 30th. The Frenchman and the hooker *de Grundel* leave.

September 1st.—Stock being still taken. Obtained 3 sheep from the Hottentoots. 2nd. As the rainy monsoon is nearly over and probably no more heavy showers may be expected, preparations are being made to build up the tumbled down walls of the Fort once more. Some were therefore set to dig for clay and others to ride it on, trusting that the new work will be more permanent than the old, which is continually causing us new trouble.

September 3rd.—All the provisions landed from the *Lyster*, given her for her voyage to India, as it is required for our big garrison. Left supplies on board for one month and some trifles.

September 4th.—Preparation service, as next Sunday the Lord's Supper will be celebrated.

September 5th.—Arrival of *Het Wapen ter Goes* of Zealand. Left on the 9th May with 146 men. Lost ten. Brought three sick. Called at St. Jago and 14 days ago spoke the hooker *Pagodeth*.

September 6th.—The Lord's Holy Supper celebrated.

September 7th.—Some freemen reported to us yesterday that the burgher Herman Dircksen, of Spangeren, had 3 hours before daylight gone out to look for some reeds for his wants. He left alone with his gun for the veld, but not having returned for a long while, they had, for love of him, been on the search, but only near the Wynberg, 3 miles away from the Fort, had found his hat

and tobacco box, as well as his gun. This leads us to conclude that he has been killed by some wild beast, and the more so as his gun was discharged. No spoor or traces of blood were, however, visible.

September 8th.—In consequence of the fruitful (groeyzaam) weather, and the abundance of grass also on the Islands, 4 oxen were sent to Robben Island, to be used there for carrying on stone and shells. The Superintendent was ordered to take better care of them than was shown to their predecessors.

September 9th.—Those of Captain Cuijper's kraals brought us for barter 14 cattle, 2 calves and 24 sheep, all in good condition. 12th. Busy repairing the old fort, and working hard at the new fortifications. 14th. Fine rain for the crops.

September 15th.—As the Company's stock of cattle is rapidly increasing day after day, it was decided to notify to the burghers by the Messenger of the Court not to graze their cattle in the kloof to the westward, behind the fort, between the Lion and Table Mountains, as that tract of country has for the present to remain for the exclusive use of the Company's cattle, as was customary ere this. At this time of the year the pastures there are the best.

September 16th.—Arrival of the *Burgh van Leyden*. Left on the 31st May with 309 men. Lost 30 and brought 40 sick. She brought us letters from the Seventeen dated 15th May to the Commander and Council, mentioning that having considered the weak and indefensible state of their possessions here, they had decided to take in hand once more the fortifications left so long in abeyance, and that every effort was to be made to collect at the works a good quantity of stone, lime and other necessaries, as well as timber. That, however, the works were to be delayed until their Honours had received the report from the Commissioner regarding the state of affairs here, and which was expected by the first vessels, when at the same time an experienced engineer, master mason and other artisans for that voluminous work might be expected.

The second ship was *Het Wapen van Middelburg*. Had left on the 3rd May from Zealand with 163 men. Lost 15 and brought as many sick.

The third vessel was a French Hooker named *St. Denis*. Left Portus de Louis in Brittany, on the 6th March, and the River of Nantes on the 17th April with 28 men. Destined to Surat. Lost one. Had 14 or 15 sick. Allowed her water and refreshments on the usual conditions.

Certain burghers who had, with permission, been some days in the interior for the maintenance of their families, having returned, reported that the Chucoquaas and Kenuquaas had had a great

1671. battle, and that the latter had obtained the victory, and captured a very large quantity of cattle; and had told them that if we visited them with tobacco and copper they would be willing to barter. This will be borne in mind.

September 17th.—The *Bruydegom* takes a new flagstaff and some repaired wagon wheels to the Island, with notice to the overseer of the intention of the Directors to commence building the fortifications, so that he was to do his best to send over as many shells and blue slabs as possible. 18th. Departure of *Het Wapen van ter Goes*.

September 19th.—Decided by Council, in accordance with the report of the burghers (see 16th) to despatch Sergeant Jeronymus Cruse on Monday with 13 soldiers and a selection of goods to the Kenuquaas. Good news received from the Island regarding the abundance of grass there. 21st. Cruse and his companions leave.

September 24th.—Busy landing our supplies from the home vessels, and working hard at the new fortifications.

September 25th.—During these pleasant days we have been drilling some of our inexperienced soldiers, whose turn it was not to labour at the works, making them fire off some blank cartridges that they might accustom themselves to these matters.

Informed this morning that 3 lions had been seen at the homestead of the burgher Wouter Mostaert, in the country. Each had carried off a sheep from the troop. The unusual and bold intrepidity of these animals during the late rainy season has been surprising. In the meanwhile no efforts are spared to trap them.

September 26th.—The freemen's boats arrive from Sald. and St. Helena Bays, who report that they had had a good catch of fish, as well as of sea cows.

September 27th.—The same dirty weather from the N.W. with cold rains; no boats could pass between the ships and the shore. Some were washed on shore and wrecked. The boat of the *Middelburgh* shared this fate. This morning we were informed that Sergeant Jeronijmus Cruse, who had left for bartering cattle on the 21st last, had arrived at the cavalry stables ill, and that his companions were approaching with a considerable number of cattle and sheep. 28th. Fine weather for field and garden, which have suffered much from cold. The sick of the various vessels having recovered, were sent on board.

September 29th.—The "landgangers," prevented from further progress inland by the illness of Cruse, arrived with 54 fine cattle and 310 sheep; but as for the reasons stated, they had not been able to visit the Kenuquas, who had obtained the victory and

invited us to trade with them, but only the Cochoquas, who had been vanquished, we shall, on the first occasion, resume the trade and very likely find good business.

September 30th.—To our regret the overseer of the Company's cattle reported that a tiger had from two kraals destroyed 9 sheep of the Company last night.

Arrival towards evening of the hooker *Pagadeth* of Rotterdam, with 17 men. Lost none. Her cargo was for the Cape, and consisted of iron, lead, coal and tras (cement).

October 6th.—Departure of *De Burgh van Leyden* and *Middelburgh* to Batavia. Our boats return from the Island with blue flags and shells for the new fortifications. The garrison busy repairing the old Fort and constructing the new one.

October 7th.—As the *Lijster* had already brought us what we required, we did not deem it necessary to discharge the cargo of the *Pagadeth*. She, therefore, left on the 8th for Batavia.

October 12th.—The officers of the French Hooker *St. Denis*, which had been detained here by her many sick, landed to thank the Commander for the refreshments enjoyed, and to bid him farewell. Nicholas Barensky, a soldier, who arrived here in the ship *Het Wapen van Zierikzee*, absented himself 8 days ago from the Fort, after having bid farewell to his comrade. Hitherto he has not returned, so that it is presumed that in despair he has proceeded inland, and been devoured by a wild beast; the more so, as from inquiries made among the residents and colonists, no one has any knowledge of him or his proceedings.

October 13th.—The Frenchman leaves. Notwithstanding Cruse had, in his last barter, brought us a good number of cattle, it was decided to send out once more the sergeant Pieter Cruythoff, an experienced traveller, with the necessary wares for the purpose.

October 14th.—Fine calm weather. The soldiers drilled, and made to fire at each other with blank cartridge. Cruythoff leaves about 9 a.m. with 12 strong men, wares and provisions for the interior. God grant him a successful barter. The fish brought by the free fishermen taken over as usual for the Company by the pound. 15th. The most inexperienced of our soldiers again exercised in arms. The hot fevers, accompanied with wild delirium, have for some time "occupied" some persons here, and though mostly all have recovered, towards evening our chief surgeon, Jan Hol, of Harderwyck, died. He had in that quality arrived here in the *Tulpenborgh*, and landed, as we were in want of medical aid. He left a sorrowing widow and infant. 16th. Death of a Company's slave of the same sickness, aged 16 or 17 years.

1671.

October 18th.—Sunday. Divine service in the morning. In the afternoon, as usual, the ordinary Parade was held of our Military under two distinct standards (vaendels). They are already forming a considerable corps. 20th. Fine weather. The soldiers busy at the fortifications.

October 21st.—Continuation of the same pleasant weather. In the afternoon the Commander, for his pleasure, drove out to Rustenburgh, and returned in the evening. 23rd. The very hot weather succeeded during the night by a fruitful rain, which was very welcome to the garden crops. 25th (Sunday). Very cold, with continuous rains, very strange at this time of the year, but favourable for the gardens and fields.

October 28th.—Arrival of the flute *Beemster*, skipper Adriaan Bastiaensz :—Had left on the 22nd June last with 160 men from Amsterdam. Buried 14 at sea, and brought 40 sick. In her endeavour to tack towards the anchorage, she grounded on the E. shore. She at once threw out an anchor, and intended to cast out another with the boat, in order to warp her into deep water again, but this was frustrated by the three surgeons and some sailors and soldiers, who through fear of the danger, had jumped into the boat and loosening the tackle had drifted away. It was therefore necessary to fire two guns for assistance which, thank God! was rendered successfully; for with the help of our boats and men and the rising tide, the vessel was refloated without suffering any damage, but with the loss of 3 anchors. The skipper having reported matters to the Commander, returned on board with refreshments, in order to bring his vessel to the proper anchorage.

As it was reported yesterday that some fraudulent transactions had been committed by two of the Company's cattle herds in the Hout Bay, by selling some cattle to a certain freeman there named Frans Gerritz: of den Uijthoorn, the latter was to-day cited to appear here, and provisionally imprisoned. At the same time his herd and three of the cattle sold from the troop were brought in by the Fiscal, and the aforesaid servant was incarcerated. This will also be done in the case of the two Company's cattle herds, who have also been summoned. The Fiscal will make a preliminary examination and proceed without any connivance against the offenders, as it is considered that such matters are of consequence and may cause serious injury to the Company.

October 29th.—Heavy S. Easter. The *Beemster* blown to sea, fires a gun; afraid that some harm has befallen her. The *Bruydegom* sent out to her with 12 strong soldiers and refreshments, as she might be in need of both.

This morning two soldiers were sent out to search along the

shore, in order to find out whether there were no signs of the boat, in which the men had surreptitiously left the *Beemster* during yesterday night. Returning in the evening, they reported that they had carefully searched the beach, but had only found two oars about two hours walk from this on the opposite shore, which are presumed to have belonged to the boat.

The cattle herds charged with the alienation of cattle were brought to the Fort, and were separately confined, that they might have no communication with each other.

October 30th.—Lovely N. W. breeze. The *Beemster* arrives with the *Bruydegom*, *Lyster* and the sloop. They reported that the latter, when the *Beemster* had struck, had been blown to Robben Island with 12 persons, and as the *Beemster* had also anchored there, they had together reached this in company. In the afternoon the sick of the *Beemster* were landed, and conveyed to the Hospital.

The aforesaid burgher, Frans Gerritsen, having been further examined in presence of Commissioners, voluntarily acknowledged that 16 or 17 days ago he had given to some unknown Hottentoots 3 lbs. tobacco and a pot of rice, on condition that they were to barter 3 head of cattle in the country and bring them to him. This was done the next day, but after 2 or 3 days, he became afraid that it might become known to other burghers not well disposed toward him, so that by making a few presents to the Company's cattle herds in Hout Bay, he succeeded in exchanging them for three other similar beasts of the Company. The herd and his servant confirmed this statement.

The soldier, Claes Barentsz : (of whom it was mentioned on the 12th instant, that he had gone inland and not yet returned, so that we feared that he had been killed by a wild beast) was brought back by a burgher. He stated that he had passed his time here and there among the mountains and in caverns, and lived on wild fruit all the time.

October 31st.—The Fiscal proceeds on board the *Beemster* to enquire into the flight of the 12 persons with the boat. Returning in the afternoon he reported that he could not discover any evil purpose in their act, which had only been committed through sheer fright and the thoughtlessness of the common sailors, who were mostly all inexperienced, and had never been in such danger before. The matter will, however, be kept in view. The boat at the same time brought us some more sick of the *Beemster*.

November 1st.—Sunday. Heavy showers. Our usual Divine Service held. 3rd. Bartered 8 sheep from the Hottentoots. 5th. Unbearably hot weather. The men busy with the new fortifications and the repairing of the old ones. One of the points of the atter completed.

1871.

November 6th.—The 14 masons sent us by the Directors with the *Beemster* were landed to-day and exchanged for 14 of the garrison.

November 7th.—Notwithstanding all practicable means adopted for the protection of our cattle from wild beasts, the latter do not appear to fear them much, on the contrary they seem to have grown more furious, for to-day two misfortunes occurred to our great regret. The first was that a lion killed 8 beautiful sheep out of a troop grazing in the cloof during the day, and sheltered at night in a strong stockade. The second was that a horseman who had gone out to shoot some game, was unexpectedly attacked by a tiger, and bitten in the arm. He was, however, just in time saved by his comrade who sent a charge of lead into the body of the brute which killed it at once. The carcase will be brought to the Fort to-morrow, and the reward paid to the shooter. The wounded man taken to the hospital and provided with every necessary. 8th (Sunday). This afternoon, after service the tiger was brought in. Such a big one had never before been seen here.

November 9th.—The newly arrived masons were to-day set at burning lime, whilst others were employed in bringing on stone for the new works.

November 11th.—The Commander having somewhat recovered from his continuous indisposition, and given proper instructions to all the officials, drove out to Rustenburg, the Company's pleasure house, accompanied by his family. The weather was pleasant with a N.W. breeze. He intends to stay there a few days, in order to inhale some fresh air, for the place being so much further removed from the sea, it has often been maintained that it may help to throw off some of his "humours." 12th. The *Beemster* leaves. 13th. Fine rains during the night, followed by a pleasant day. The lime kilns set alight.

November 16th.—Another lime kiln started. Towards evening the Commander and family return from Rustenburg. His Honour felt much better and strengthened in health.

November 17th.—Stores and clothing sent to Saldanha Bay. The skipper of the *Bruijdegom* ordered, on his return, to call at Dassen Island, and bring us thence as many well fed sheep as he can accommodate. The *Lijster* to be despatched for the same purpose, as, in consequence of this dry and warm weather the pasturage on that Island must have been considerably parched up, and consequently become too scanty for such a number of sheep as are there at present.

November 18th.—With a weak N. breeze and vehement heat,

some of our most inexperienced soldiers were exercised in the handling of their arms. The others were kept employed at the works.

Whereas the above mentioned Frans Gerritsen of den *Uijthoorn*, has voluntarily and without the pain of iron or bonds or any threats, confessed that about 5 or 6 weeks ago, by means of some unknown Hottentoots, he had bartered from the Natives for 3 lbs. tobacco and a pot of rice two young heifers and a young cow, and that being afraid that it might be discovered by others, had two or three days afterwards by means of a present of six reals and some strong drink persuaded two of the Company's cattle herds at Hout Bay to exchange them for three similar ones of the Company's—and whereas the said cattle herds confessed to the deed, adding that both had also some weeks before the exchange took place, shot down a fat young cow in the veld, carried her home, salted her down and in course of time had nicely consumed it:—The Court of Justice was this day convened by the Commander, strengthened with his ordinary burgher councillors, which condemned the two cattle herds to be brought to-morrow to the place of Justice, bound to a pole there and with some cowhides on their heads to be severely whipped with rods, &c., and that the burgher Frans Gerritsz : shall witness the punishment with a fine of 400 Reals, as will be more fully seen from the sentences. 19th. Sentences carried out, everything went off in good order.

Arrival of the flute *Uydam*. Left Sunda Straits on the 24th September, and despatched hither from Batavia with a cargo of rice (152 lasts), arrack, sugar, wax and other necessaries, which are very welcome, as in consequence of the augmentation of the garrison, the rice rations have already been diminished and supplemented with biscuits. The vessel has to return at once as she is urgently required in India for certain expeditions.

November 20th.—Return of Sergeant Pieter Cruythoff from inland, bringing to our great satisfaction 126 exquisite and mostly all young cattle, and 276 similar sheep. He had been about 50 miles (Dutch) away from this, and found the natives fairly inclined to trade.

November 21st.—Towards evening a burgher woman came to complain that a lion had killed one of her best milch cows, and that her husband, having about six weeks ago, in company of another burgher gone into the interior, in order to endeavour, for the sustenance of his family, to kill some sea-cows, had not yet returned, so that she feared that some accident might have befallen him. This would certainly be a heavy blow to her, as the cradle has for some years never been at rest in that family, and the coffin never been required.

1671.

November 22nd.—Sunday. The usual Divine Service piously celebrated, and afterwards the customary parade held.

November 23rd.—As the Company's cattle troop has been much augmented by the last barter, we have given some to the most industrious freemen at their urgent request and for the usual price of f12, on condition of restitution, that they may use them for agricultural work, and thus complaints and grievances be ended. 24th. Busy repairing the old fort and working at the new large kiln.

November 25th.—As the harvest is approaching and the roads have been much cut up by the rains, the Fiscal and some Commissioners proceed to the country to have the repairs effected by the country people in good time. 26th. The *Lijster* leaves for Dassen Island for a cargo of sheep for the vessels expected. She took with her the three lately punished convicts in order to land them on Robben Island, to be employed there for some time.

November 27th.—Yesterday's S. Easter turned again this morning into a N. Wester. According to the ordinary annual observations, this lasts thus long, and though pleasant, is considered to cause much sickness by throwing up the vile and stinking sea vapours. Accordingly our hospital is very full, and all the surgeons have their hands full. The big lime-kiln set on fire.

November 28th.—This morning some emissaries from Captain Cuijper reported that the two burghers, referred to on the 21st, had, for no reason which we could discover, been most miserably massacred by some Ubiquas (a numerous, wild and roving tribe, armed with bow and arrow and only living on theft), who had carried off their six draught oxen and burnt the wagon; adding that these Ubiquas had committed the crime at the instigation of a certain other captain named Gonnema, who is described by our travellers from experience as a very vile and faithless barbarian. How the matter will be further dealt with, time will show after proper enquiry.

Some cattle and sheep bartered this evening from the neighbouring natives.

November 29th.—The Hon. Commander Pieter Hackius, having during the greatest part of his government here been suffering from continual indisposition, has during the last few days not been free from it, and especially during the past night, in consequence of the continuous high fever, which attacked him so severely that we have little hopes of his recovery, and the more so, as being aged and weak in body, he has during the last few days not been

able to take any nourishing food, and is at the same time suffering so many pains, that he is altogether delirious and speechless. We trust, however, the best from God's Almighty hand.

The S.E. wind began to blow strongly towards evening so that we trust that the unhealthy air will be somewhat purged.

November 30th.—News received from Saldanha Bay that the *Bruijdegom* dispatched thither on the 17th with supplies, had arrived there on the 22nd in a distressed state, having during the passage sprung such a leak that had it not been for the continuous pumping, she would have gone to the bottom (in 't cabeljauws ruijm souden gevaren hebben). The letter also asked for various articles for repairing her.

The Hon. Commander Hackius is beginning to slip away from us completely, and takes no longer any notice of the world, so that every moment his death may be expected.

December 1st.—The Hon. Hackius, having become weaker since the 23rd of last month, finally, by God's unalterable pre-ordination, departed this life at 12 o'clock last night, to the universal sorrow of this African settlement, which will also cause great changes in many and various affairs of the Company. All the material required for repairing the *Bruijdegom* sent to Saldanha Bay.

December 2nd.—The unusually violent S.E. wind seemed to have gone to bed last night, but arose this morning just as angry, so that no boats could venture out.

December 3rd.—The weather somewhat calmer with varying breezes. This evening at six o'clock the Hon. Commander Hackius was, with the usual funeral honours, and followed by all the colonists, everything in regular order, buried in a stately manner in the new Church. God Almighty grant the dead body in the last day a blessed resurrection, and comfort and assist those left behind by him.

December 5th.—Towards evening Lieutenant Breitenbach (in accordance with yesterday's resolution), accompanied by some experienced travellers and burghers, who understand agriculture, left for Hottentots Holland, in order thoroughly to explore that famous and fertile region, and have it laid down in a chart by the land surveyor, Jan Wittebol, who accompanies them, that full information may be obtained for the expected Commissioner, and their Honours at home. In accordance with the latest instructions from Batavia, the Lieutenant was also directed to look for a suitable roadstead in False Bay, near which we might take possession of the ground before any other nation; also to mark down any prominent mountain facing the sea, in accordance with the wishes of their Honours on the subject.

1671.

December 6th.—Sunday. Two services as usual, and afterwards the parade. 9th. Pleasant weather from the west. Arrival of the *Bruijd* from Dassen Island with 60 $\frac{1}{2}$ aums train oil. The quartermaster reported that the Hooker *Lijster* had left that Island with 100 sheep, and as this vessel may have been becalmed between the two Islands, and the sheep on board may be in want of food, the boat was sent out with a large supply of greens in order to meet her and so refresh the hungry animals, but as the wind was followed by a calm and turned, she was obliged to return.

December 11th.—Towards evening Sergeant Cruse submitted a letter to the Council from Lieut. Breitenbach at Hottentoots Holland, in which he notified that, after arrival, he had found that tract of country more than desirable (onverwenschelijk ; ? overwenschelijk) and that, accordingly, he had carefully explored it, but that he could not so quickly bring on paper its situation and configuration, as he might have wished. . He had therefore been obliged to remain there a few days longer, so that he required more provisions, and the more so, as the "Overberg" Cape Hottentoots had visited him and were inclined to barter cattle, so that he hoped to make a rich traffic.

December 12th.—Sergeant Cruse leaves for Hot. Holland with the supplies, and a letter filed in the letter book. The lovely weather continues, so that the farmer can with special zeal swing his sickle among the ripe corn. At the same time, in consequence of the favourable weather, and under God's blessing, an opulent vintage may be expected.

As the absence of the *Lijster* make us anxious, a soldier was the day before yesterday sent out along shore as far as opposite Dassen Island, to see whether that Hooker was still anchored there. Returning this evening he reported that he had proceeded to the spot, but had seen no vessel anchored off that Island.

December 13th (Sunday).—Two men sent overland to Saldanha Bay to find out whether the Hooker had been compelled by contrary winds to make for that harbour. In that case the Superintendent was ordered to land and depasture the sheep there. and afterwards send them overland, that is, if he deemed it expedient. His report is most anxiously awaited. The usual Services and Parade.

December 15th.—Fine weather for the husbandmen to cut down the corn and gather it into the garners. Towards evening, the wagon, which had been sent with material to Saldanha Bay for repairing the *Bruydegom*, returned, and mentioned that they had seen the *Lyster* safely anchored off Dassen Island. Very likely the north wind has not been so violent there as it was here. 16th. Full moon ; change in the weather ; a fine rain, most welcome for the field and garden fruit.

December 18th.—This morning, very early, it came to our ears that a certain Hottentoo girl, about 24 years old, who had, since her early childhood, been respectably educated here by civilized burghers, carefully taught the Dutch language, and trained in burgher manners, had, without our being able to discover any reason, hanged herself in the sheep pen of a certain burgher by means of her “cabaij” band. An inquest was held on the body by the Fiscal, in presence of Commissioners, but no wounds were found on the body, so that she died from suffocation.

During the afternoon, Sergeant Jeronymus returned with his companions from Hottentoots Holland, bringing with them 52 fairly good cattle and 148 similar sheep, which had been obtained there without loss of time, and as the voluntary offer of the Africans. Lieut. Breitenbach and Surveyor Wittebol had proceeded to Bay Falso, so that on their return we expect a thorough written report on that territory.

According to resolution of the Council, the body of the female Hottentoo was towards evening dragged by a donkey to the gallows, and there, as a loathing of such abominableness, placed with the head in a fork, and hanged between Heaven and Earth, as will be further seen in the Criminal Roll.

December 19th.—Lieutenant Breitenbach and Surveyor Wittebol return from False Bay, and report that they had found apparently a good and safe roadstead for the ships, but only brack-water, some firewood, but no foodstuffs or ground fit for agriculture, as will be seen more fully in a separate report connected also with the opportunities of Hottentoot Holland, to be drawn up for Batavia.

December 20th.—Two Commissioners leave for Robben Island to count the sheep, and publish a placeaat to establish order among the convicts there, as we have been informed that some of them were behaving in a wanton and disobedient manner by opposing themselves against the Superintendent. The day of the Lord was religiously observed by frequenting His Holy House. 21st. Return of the two men sent to Saldanha Bay on the 13th. They reported that the *Lijster* had not been seen there by anyone, and that the carpenter was very busy repairing the *Bruijdegom*.

December 22nd.—The Commissioners return from Robben Island, and report that there were 316 healthy and strong sheep on that Island, among them 60 wethers fit for slaughter; that there was still sufficient pasturage for the lambing season; that there were shells in abundance, and that they had left such orders that henceforth everything would proceed without squabbles.

December 24th.—At last the *Lijster* arrives. Had been detained by contrary winds, and compelled to return to Dassen

1671.

Island until yesterday, when early in the morning she took on board 80 well fed sheep and made for this bay. They arrived in a healthy condition, and were at once landed.

December 25th.—We celebrated with lovely weather, but a strong S.E. wind the remembrance of the Nativity of our Saviour Jesus Christ.

December 27th.—Sunday. Preparation service having been held yesterday morning, the Holy Sacrament was this day administered. Bartered 4 cattle and 4 sheep from the Natives.

December 28th.—Intolerably hot and oppressive weather. More material sent overland by wagon to Saldanha Bay for repairing the *Bruijdegom*. The Superintendent ordered to hurry the repairs, as we are much in need of the vessel.

December 29th.—The freemen's boats bring 38 $\frac{1}{2}$ aums of train oil, which were bought for the Company at the usual price. Fourteen sheep bartered from the Hottentoots, who were regaled with a dram (zoopie) arrack.

Late at night we were informed that two wanton soldiers, named Christoffel Zweck of Bremen, and Frederick Symonsen, in a half drunken state, had outside been fighting with knives, with the result that the latter had had his throat nearly severed by the former, but not alone that! A third person, the husbandman before whose door the fight occurred, had, in his kindness, endeavoured to intervene and separate the parties, but had been shot by the same Zweck with a musket charge of shot in his chest, so that his recovery is doubtful. The perpetrator was at once searched for, and when found, incarcerated. The patients were properly attended to by the surgeon.

December 30th.—Towards evening a privileged innkeeper, Steven Janssen, reported that at his house a certain soldier, named Jan Demant of Dantzich, who arrived here this year in the *Tidoor*, had, without his knowledge, with some soldiers swallowed such a quantity of arrack, that being overpowered by that hot drink, he had been smothered in his drunkenness; a deplorable thing to hear that this little place is subject to so many wanton sins, notwithstanding all rigorous enacted examples (*gestatueerde exempelen*).

In the usual evening meeting a written report on the state of Hottentoots Holland and Bay Falso was submitted by the Commissioners, who had, some time ago, been deputed to inspect those places. It is as follows:—

"Written report on the configuration and further qualities of Hot: Holland in a certain bay situated in Bay Falso, submitted by Lieut: Coenraad van Breitenbach and Surveyor Jan Wittebol to the Hon: Council of the Fort 'the Good Hope.'

"On our arrival at Hottentoots Holland, we took pains, in accordance with the Resolution of the 18th December, carefully to inspect that territory, and after having spent some days in that manner, we found that pleasant country surrounded on the N.E. and S. sides by high rocky chains of mountains, and on the W. by the Waters of False Bay, forming an area of hours. From the aforesaid range of mountains there flows from the East a very pleasant river which creeps through the most beautiful fields of this country, discharging itself into False Bay. On the right side, or towards the southern mountain range, the country is bisected by a much smaller, and in summer not considerable little river, originally flowing from the larger one (which to distinguish the latter from the smaller, we shall call the river Breitenbach). On the other side of this Breitenbach River runs a similar rivulet, but takes its origin from a marshy ground situated below the slope of the range, and has on the seashore the same mouth as that of the Breitenbach. On the eastern side of the latter is a certain hilly mountain fairly high above the level of the land, starting from the rocky mountain ranges, and ending about hours at the said False Bay. Having thus far described the form of that territory, as it is shown in the chart made of it, we shall now report the qualities of that place as fit for cultivation.

It affords a certain promise for the production of grain, wine, tree fruit, vegetables and other similar growths, by showing fat, productive soil, and by its favourable situation; for the most fruitful fields (lying on both sides of the ever flowing and tree covered Breitenbach,) are so well sheltered by the hilly mountain range abovementioned, and the trees on the banks of the river, that the injurious winds can do little or any harm to the above-mentioned fruit.

It will be difficult to calculate in what quantities the fruit, especially grain and wine may be raised there, as the zeal of the husbandman and a good or bad season, may either increase or diminish them, and as all places and fruitful lands are liable to the latter (bad season), we can only say that with good industrious farmers in the aforesaid Hottentoots Holland more grain (which is the most important) would be raised than here at the Cape from the same number of morgen, as it is well known that the cultivated land here can annually produce. grain, from which a rough calculation can be made what quantity could be

Louren

Gordon

1671.

raised annually there from.... morgen (which may be easily found there well situated for the purpose. After a few years, wine could be pressed there in large quantities, as the aforesaid hilly land and mountain (landsbergh) affords an abundant and well situated area for the purpose. And should the abovementioned produce not be sufficient to make the place attractive, the abundant increase of the cattle, which the abundant grass pastures clearly promise, would incessantly make it so. Fuel in sufficient quantities will be found in the mountains, but little or nothing for the building of houses. The farmers, however, might provide themselves with a granary and a primitive dwelling.

We saw an abundance of "hartebeesten" there, both in the mountains and in the plains; partridges, pheasants and other similar game, which is very abundant. The seashore, as well as the mouths of the rivers give good hopes for fishing, which some burghers have already ascertained by the multitude of harders and braems lately caught in their nets there.

Regarding the distance, it is certain that a loaded wagon, drawn by 4 or 6 oxen, can during a summer's day do the journey thence to this, and hence thither, as we have experienced during our stay there, but as this might be rather expensive as regards the conveyance of grain to this, or supplies thither, a vessel might be employed for the purpose, as there is a certain sandy bay there behind the mountain range, in which any cargo carrying vessel could safely anchor, and a boat easily land, as the mate Jan Brittal found ere this when there in the little yacht *De Voerman*, so that for the information of others, he made a little chart of it.

And although this territory is strongly defended on all sides by nature, both by the sea and the mountains, it will be necessary to defend some passes against the Hottentoots, by the erection of 4 or 5 redoubts. Thus that place would be so secured that none of those Africans squatted around it (die omliggende Africaners) would be able to pass undetected, but in case of attacks, could all be kept out of it.

Regarding the garrison required for the redoubts, the heaviest need not exceed more than 5 or 6 men, and the others would not require more than 2 or 3.

Having thus far described the qualities of Hottentoots Holland, as far as we could observe them during our stay there, we shall now mention how on the 17th December we explored the shores of False Bay as far as the IJsselsteijn Bay, without however having discovered any advantages for the Company, except that in the aforesaid IJsselsteijn Bay, as far as we could see, any ships, in case of bad weather, or for other reasons, making for that Bay, might during the winter season safely anchor in it (the S. E. Winds during summer blowing open-jawed into it), as experienced by the ship *IJsselsteijn*, but the necessaries for refreshing the ships

are not so abundant there, as the skipper of the said vessel appears to have asserted, for no fresh water is obtainable there except with great trouble, and though the ships might be easily provided with it during the rainy season, there is, the whole year through, no fuel obtainable, except what the ships require during their stay there. Nor are there any vegetables there, or lands fit for raising them. Regarding the abundance of fish, as we had no experience on this point, we can say nothing about it, but regarding game, both large and small, it is certain that a good hunter will find his satisfaction.

On the south side of the said IJsselsteijn Bay a certain mountain range separates that bay from another much more spacious, and though the ships may be protected there from the winds during the season mentioned, it would be safer for them to select the first named, in order to avoid the danger caused by a certain blind rock lying right in the middle of the bay.

Having ascended the aforesaid mountain range, we found on the top a suitable place for a little watch house, on which a flag might be hoisted on the arrival of any vessels, to serve as a beacon. In the same way both bays might be kept in possession.

Having mentioned everything that fell under our observation whilst inspecting that territory, we shall now end with the prayer to Almighty God that He may let those places serve for the good and prosperity of the Company, the satisfaction of the residents and your particular praise, that His Adorable Majesty may be more and more glorified with thanksgivings for these and all other benefits. This wish and desire your well disposed servants."

(Signed) } C. VAN BREITENBACH.
 } J. WITTEBOL.

In the Fort "the Good Hope,"
this 31st day of December, 1671.

December 31st.—Nothing singular occurred. With a S.E. breeze and pleasant weather this last day of the year was spent, and God thanked for all His mercies.

Kept by me. (Signed) H. CRUDOP, Secretary.

Compared with the original.

In the Fort "the Good Hope,"
this 18th day of April, 1672.

(Signed) H. CRUDOP.

1672.

1672.

January 1st.—On this first day of the year God the Lord was praised and thanked in the midst of His congregation for His undeserved mercies with which He had blessed us during the past year, and earnestly beseeched that it might please His Majesty long to continue them to us. Pleasant weather during the whole day.

The burghers would, as usual, have come under arms for parade, but as we are at present in the thickest of the harvest, which can brook no delay, it was postponed to a more convenient season.

This evening we had to learn to our regret that a certain free-man's servant, Lourenz Cornelisz: of Gottenburgh, had by Hendrick Coster, of Minden, also in service among the freemen, in a most treacherous manner, and without previous quarrel, been most dangerously wounded in two places, so that his life has been almost despaired of. The delinquent managed to escape under favour of the twilight, but no effort will be wanting for his capture.

January 2nd.—Fine weather, most welcome for the husbandmen to gather their wheat into their garners without any loss. . .

January 6th.—The farewell dinner given to the officers of the flute *Uydam* leaving for Batavia.

January 8th.—Our sailors busy at the new fortifications, now pretty well decayed (*bestorven synde*) which were "planted" with the lightest of our cannons. 9th. The same favourable weather for the harvest continuing.

January 10th (Sunday).—Discovered this morning that the fork on which the female Hottentoo had been hanged had been taken down and fallen over. Careful inquiry failed to discover the author. During the afternoon the mounted guard brought in five wanton Hottentoots tied to one another with ropes and charged with having attacked and seized a certain burgher shepherd in the veld near the Cavalry stables, searched his pockets, and robbed him of everything they contained. They were also on the point of carrying away with them a large portion of his troop of sheep, but the mounted guard had followed them with their horses, and recovered the booty from their thievish hands. The day of the Lord religiously kept.

January 11th.—Departure of the *Uydam*. During the afternoon some Hottentoots brought us, nominally for the redemption of their 5 incarcerated comrades, 8 beautiful young cattle and 8 similar sheep, but they had to return unheard, as the wantonness of that nation is daily becoming more extravagant, so that an

exemplary punishment is required as a deterrent to others, and the more so, as the prisoners belong to the tribe of Gounoma, by whose doings last year two of the burghers had been so cruelly massacred.

Towards evening, in order to carry out the sentence, the above-mentioned female Hottentoo was again lifted on the fork ; whilst a shepherd reported that a tiger had again destroyed a sheep in the cloof. The shepherd had accordingly set a trap-gun.

January 12th.—Early this morning the aforesaid shepherd reported that the tiger, having during the night returned to the carcase of the sheep, has been killed by the trap-gun. He brought the skin with him.

January 13th.—As the harvest has mostly been gathered, and the corn garnered, all the residents were notified, in accordance with resolution adopted with the Burgher Councillors, to appear fully armed at the Fort. Accordingly about nine o'clock a.m., they presented themselves under their officers, a company of 93 strong fellows, when, according to order of the Directors, dated the 15th may last, the retiring officers were thanked on behalf of the Company for their services, and the Burgher Councillor Dirk Jansz: Smient was appointed Lieutenant, and the ex-burgher Councillor Hendrick van Suerwaerden Ensign. Three Sergeants were also selected from the most experienced and faithful men. These newly appointed officers were installed with the general acclamation of the corps that they would obey them, and after that, the latter, having joined the Military, formed themselves finely in line, and paraded, an already considerable body—a pleasure to behold such husbandmen furnished with such infallible weapons, handling them so dexterously. They were accordingly each provided with a glass of wine, and the officers in addition with a mouthful of food.

January 14th.—The Hottentoes, who were here with their cattle on the 11th, as a ransom for the prisoners, returned about noon with more cattle, but they had to do with the deaf. In the afternoon we bartered 3 good sheep from the neighbouring Hottentoes. 16th Our soldiers, having for some time been busy repairing, or rather reconstructing the S. E. point of this old Fort, finished their labours to day. We trust it will be more enduring now. Bartered 6 sheep from the Hottentoes.

January 18th.—The Surgeon reported that the burgher, Claes Vegtsman of Tyrol, who had arrived here in the *Batavia* in 1667, and on the 29th of last month, been wounded with shot in the chest by a wanton soldier, had departed this life. From a post

mortem examination held in presence of commissioners, it however appeared that he had died from a complication of diseases, and not from the wound. . . .

As it was a very fine day, some of our soldiers exercised themselves in arms. Bartered three cattle from the Hottentoots.

January 19th.—The Hottentoots offered us 3 cattle and 27 sheep for barter, but as some of them were not quite what they should be, we only bought 19 and refused the others.

January 20th.—The prisoner, Christoffel Sweck, perhaps troubled in mind, in consequence of the death of Vegtsman (see 18th Jan:), about 3 o'clock this morning succeeded in ridding himself of his bonds (we do not know how) and without anybody knowing it, escaped from his prison, having broken through the wall and the adjoining embankment, and having climbed over the latter, disappeared; and though the gate was at once opened and a search made by different parties, he has not yet been found.

And whereas the cutting through the earthen wall of the new fortification suggested by Commissioner Goske, as well as the S. E. point of this old Fort, have been completed by our soldiers, we have to day (in consequence of a promise already made during the lifetime of the late commander) given half of the garrison a cask or two of beer and a few sheep, as a recognition on behalf of the Company.

It is certain that hardly any wild animals can wean themselves from drinking; hence in the dry season they are daily forced to repair to certain permanent waters, where lions and other beasts of prey hide themselves, in order to attack them unawares, but when, after the rains, there is water everywhere, in pools and hollow rocks, they are not in want of any; hence lions and tigers not being able to surprise their prey, and declining to die of hunger, fall upon our tame cattle, as occurred to day after it had heavily rained the whole afternoon; for towards evening news was brought from Houtbay that a lion had again killed two of the company's oxen there.

January 22nd.—Desirable weather. To day, the other half of the garrison, which had been on guard (on the 20th. q. v.) were treated in the same manner (on beer and mutton).

January 23rd.—Of 39 sheep offered to us by the surrounding Africans we bartered 33. The others, being too poor and lean, were refused.

January 24th.—The Lord's Sabbath celebrated holily by the hearing and preaching of His Divine Word, after which the usual Parade was held.

The men of Gounema's kraals again appear at the fort in the

afternoon, in order once more to request the liberation of the incarcerated for a considerable number of cattle, which they had brought with them, but the smoke of their sacrifice was beaten down and rejected as unpleasant, so that they returned in the evening to their huts as wise as they came.

January 25th.—As it is to be presumed that in consequence of the threatened rupture between the Lily Crown (France) and our State, there may possibly be some anxiety regarding the calling here in safety of the return fleet, it was decided to send out the *Lijster* to cruize about off the coast and inform the vessels of the good state of affairs here. At the same time the master gardener was ordered to send on board the Hooker a quantity of vegetables and tree fruit, as a refreshment for the fleet.

Bartered 9 sheep and 2 cattle from the neighbouring Africans.
27th. The Hooker *de Lijster* leaves.

January 28th.—The fruit trees gave us abundant hopes of an opulent crop, but yesterday's S. Easter blew off a considerable quantity of the half ripe fruit, greatly to our regret. The weather was to day somewhat more merciful.

January 29th.—Fine weather in the morning. Towards evening the malignant garden plunderer began once more to blow out his cheeks to such an extent, and make such a noise, that much unripe fruit was torn from their mothers. This afternoon the sailors made a haul with the sein and obtained such a quantity of fish that the whole garrison and many freemen were abundantly supplied.

February 1st.—The boat of the Saldanha traders arrives with 30 half-aums of seal oil, collected at the various Islands. 2nd. Four months' supplies sent to Saldanha Bay for the garrison there.

February 3rd.—The friends of the 5 incarcerated Africans once more offered a considerable quantity of cattle and sheep for their liberation, which were, however, again refused, and they were made to understand that we intended very soon to make them feel otherwise, as the conceit of these vagabonds is becoming unbearable.

February 4th.—The open boat returns from the Island with a load of slabs which had been quarried there for the new works to be erected. Bartered 11 sheep and a heifer from the Africans.
5th. As the S.E. and N.W. points of the old hornworks have been repaired and the cannons restored to their former positions, the latter, having stood loaded for more than 10 months, were discharged.

1672.

February 6th.—A lingering illness (kwijnende sieckte) is commencing to lay low many of the garrison, and drag them to the cemetery. This morning we were told that 2 soldiers, who had entered the hospital yesterday, had died. The long absence of the Fatherland ships has made us feel the want of medicines very much.

Arrival of an English vessel, which saluted the Fort with five guns, which as usual, was replied to with one. She was on her way from England to Bantam. She asked to be allowed some drink water, which was granted. 7th (Sunday). During the afternoon the officers attended Divine Service, and after that returned on board. 8th. The officers, through one of their number, offered to take letters for us to India, which was, however, civilly declined, as we were daily expecting our own vessels. The "gentlemen" returned on board and towards evening the vessel left, which gave us strange thoughts. 9th. The *Bruydegom* returns from Sald : Bay, having been thoroughly repaired there.

February 10th.—The Council of the Fortress strengthened by the Burgher Councillors, passes sentence on the five Hottentots (see above). Three were condemned to be scourged and branded and work for 15 years on Robben Island "ad opus publicum." The two others who were not so guilty, but merely voluntary participators (conspirateurs) in the cattle theft, were to be thoroughly thrashed and serve as convicts on the Island for 7 years (see Criminal Roll and Book of Sentences).

February 11th.—After the sentences had been publicly read from the balcony, they were carried out on the place of execution, and the culprits were made to feel the result of their wantonness. In the meanwhile we bartered 7 good sheep from others of their nation. Arrival about midnight of the yacht *Gouda* from Holland. Had left on the 11th September last, and was bound to Ceylon. Brought but a few sick, and had a few deaths.

February 12th.—Arrival of the ship *Amersfoort*. Had left on the 12th Aug. last with 296 men. Had 72 deaths and brought 73 sick. Bound to Ceylon. Also of the ship *Dorth*. Had left on the 28th Dec. last. Had 7 deaths. Brought no sick. From the letters received from the Directors it appeared to our distress that affairs between us and the Lily Crown (of France) were gradually drifting towards a rupture, so, that without doubt the end will be open war, and we are made through all this circumstance and prudent.

The letters also mentioned that as successor to Commandant Hackius, the Directors had decided to appoint, with the rank of Governor and Councillor Extraordinary of India, the Hon : Isbrand Goske, and as second person, with the rank of Merchant

the Hon : Pieter Daey. Both are expected with longing. In the meanwhile we shall not fail in furthering the affairs of the Company in every way.

Arrival in the afternoon (1) of the ship *Crayensteyn*. Had left on the 14th Sept: with 225 men, (2) of the ship *Spanbroeck*, which had left on the 17th October with 101 men, and (3) of the ship *Voorhoudt* which had left on the 14th November with 80 men. They had hardly had any dead, and brought no sick. 14th. Arrival of *De Hollandsche Thuyn* which had left on the 11th Dec. with 310 men, also of the *Huys te Velsen* with 210 men, and of *Het Wapen van Ter Veer* which had left on the 11th do. with 113 men destined to Ceylon. A letter from the Amsterdam chamber to the late Mr. Hackins and received by the *Spanbroeck*, mentioned that their honours were not a little displeased with the officers of the flute *Sparendam* for taking on board a large and divers quantity of private goods, transferred on board their ship by a galiot in the open sea off Texel, and that they had heard that those of *Het Wapen van ter Gouw* were about to do the same thing. They were therefore pleased to authorize the Commander to search that ship, to open the invoices, and to do whatever else would assist in securing a careful inspection, as they consider it a matter of ruinous consequences to the Company. The Fiscal and two Commissioners from the Council accordingly boarded the *Gouda* (? *Wapen van ter Gouw*) but the officers flatly denied the charge. The holds however were opened and searched when 47 hogsheads of French wine were found, all of which were leaky, many being half empty; also 36 cases of brandy, but on opening and tasting them we found that an incredible number of bottles had been filled with salt and fresh water instead of brandy. Thus one cheat endeavours to cheat another cheat and both are cheated. The contraband goods were landed and provisionally deposited in one of the stores. 16th. Very busy landing our supplies from Holland. This evening we were told that a lion with unsatiated fury had killed a heifer of a certain burgher in the country. 17th. A certain amateur, by whose practice all the lions killed this year had come to their end, again placed his deceitful instruments at the carcase, and the lion yearning for it, returned during the night and found that it was to be his last bite, being shot dead (by the trap gun—mors dood). This morning he was brought into the fort.

February 18th.—The condemned Hottentoo convicts were to day conveyed to Robben Island, to serve out their time there.

February 22nd.—All the ships receive their despatch, excepting the *Voorhout*, kept back by necessary repairs, and the *Amersfoort* by her many sick. The *Huys te Velsen* also requires a few more.

1672.

days for refreshing. 23rd. Two wanton sailors of the *Velsen* having fought with knives, the one gave the other an ugly gash in the abdomen. The latter was at once taken to the hospital to be cured and the other to prison.

February 24th.—The 4 Batavia and 2 Ceylon ships leave. The *Hollandsche Thuijn* being a heavy ship, found the W. breeze too contrary, and had to remain. 26th. She leaves. 27th. A powerfully hot day. About 10 o'clock at night a lovely and fruitful rain fell, continuing until the morning. 28th. A lovely day after the rain (Sunday).

February 29th.—As the Directors had, according to their letter of the 15th May last, decided to continue the construction of the new Fort, and for that purpose instructed us to collect all the material for the purpose, as well as to pay wages to the workmen on the same scale as before, when the building was commenced, and as the lately arrived Fatherland ships earnestly direct us to carry on the works with all vigour, and according to the orders of Governor Goske, left here last year for Commander Hackius, which have by far not been complied with, we have, according to Resolution of the day before yesterday, and with the blessing of God, once more made a beginning with our soldiers.

March 2nd.—Return of the *Lijster*. She had cruized as far as Agulhas and sharply looked out for the fleet, but without success. Had accordingly decided to return.

March 4th.—Departure of the *Amersfoort* and *Het Huijs te Velsen*. 5th. The yacht *Voorhout* leaves. The *Bruijdegom* brings 20 wethers from the Island, and a letter mentioning that a certain malefactor there, named Andries Janson Vries (not sent thither for his virtues), had in a most treacherous manner stabbed one of his fellow convicts with a knife up to the hilt, so that they were very much embarrassed with the wound.

March 7th.—Arrival of *Het Hoff van Breda* of Enckhuijsen. Left the 11th November with 228 men, of whom 38 had died, among them the junior merchant Jan Direkxs Delenie, who had died three weeks ago. She brought more than 40 sick, whom we hope soon to restore.

March 10th.—The *Bruijdegom* proceeds to the Island to fetch the wounded convict (see 5th) as well as the delinquent, the first to be cured, and the other to be imprisoned.

This afternoon the junior merchant of *Het Hof van Breda* was, according to the promise made by the skipper to him on his death-bed when at sea, buried in the new church here.

March 12th.—The boat brought out for us in *Het Hoff van Breda* was carefully landed and stored for future use. 13th. The

Bruijdegom returns from the Island with the two convicts. 14th. It having been reported that a lion had destroyed 8 sheep at Hout Bay, the dispenser was sent thither to investigate the matter and make arrangements that it might not happen again.

March 16th.—The wind N. in the morning and S. E. in the afternoon. Company's affairs here successfully advanced, principally the building of the *New Castle*, as the daily wages make somewhat courageous workmen.

March 18th.—Arrival of *Het Sticht van Utrecht* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 26th October with 250 men, of whom 6 had died. Brought 7 sick; also of the flute *De Vliegende Swaan* from Ceylon in company of the *Swaenenburgh* and *Spaarendam*. The two latter had sent her ahead at about 150 miles to the East of the Cape to discover the situation here, as they were afraid that the French might have seized the Fort. In the latter case she was to notify it to the abovementioned two vessels, which were at once to make for St. Helena, whilst she was at once to proceed with the news to Ceylon. God, however, had granted us peaceful times, but we at once loaded the *Lijster* (lying ready for sea) with some refreshments, in order to go out and meet the valuable vessels, and welcome them on our borders with the glad news.

Bartered 10 sheep and an ox from Captain Cuijper. 19th. Heavy S. Easters, preventing the *Lijster* from leaving, and stopping all work. The boat of the *Sticht van Utrecht* blown out of the bay, and obliged to anchor on the outer roadstead, without any possibility of being assisted. Finally the *Vliegende Swaan* was blown from her anchors, and by good fortune succeeded in saving the boat as well as itself by means of other anchors supplied.

March 20th.—An inexperienced person would hardly believe what pleasant weather it was to day, compared with that of yesterday, so that we were not only able with great pleasure to celebrate the Sunday, but after service the ships' crews were able to take water on board.

March 21st.—Arrival of the flute *Swaenenburgh* from Ceylon. Had left on the 20th January. Had on board the merchant Sieur Johan Barra as admiral, to whom the flag was dipped, and convenient lodgings provided on shore.

March 22nd.—This afternoon the wife of the merchant Barra, who had died at sea about three weeks ago, and been provisionally buried in the ballast of the *Vliegende Swaan*, was taken out of her temporary grave and buried in the New Church.

March 23rd.—Arrival of the *Spaarendam* from Ceylon. Shortly afterwards arrived the newly built pinnace *Macassar*, which had left on the 10th December with 280 men, of whom 3 had died. She brought the merchant Albert van Breugel in order to reside here

1672.

as *Secunde*, and with the orders that if anything human had befallen Mr. Hackins, to take the latter's place until the arrival of Governor Goske, who would leave with his wife about Easter. To-morrow the new *Secunde* will be in state conducted from on board by Commissioners deputed by the Council and escorted into the Fort.

March 24th.—The Commissioners proceeded on board for the purpose above mentioned, but a S. Easter coming up, they were detained on the vessel the whole day. About 11 o'clock signals were hoisted in the cloof, after which a vessel tacked into the Bay, making us believe that with the flag at the foretopmast, she had on board the vice-admiral. Shortly afterwards a sloop landed at the downs (de duinties) and reported that the vessel was the *Ternate*, which with the *Tidoor*, &c. (ten vessels) as well as two hookers, the *Zeelandt* and *Goudtvinck*, with provisions for this place, had left the Straits of Sunda on the 20th December last. The *Ternate* brought the vice-admiral, Captain Schimmelpenninck, who, in consequence of the gale, was also obliged to pass the night on the *Macassar*.

March 25th.—At daybreak a vessel reaches the roadstead with the flag on the main mast. Three others had anchored on the opposite side of the bay, where they were obliged to remain in consequence of the S. E. gale.

About 7 o'clock the second person, Albert van Breugel, escorted by the whole Council, left his ship under a salute of some guns, answered and welcomed by those of ours.

After these ceremonies, a sloop was seen under the fire of all the guns, making for the shore and landing at the "Duintjes" in consequence of the vehement S. Easter. She brought on shore the Admiral, who walked hither and was welcomed by most of our guns and most pompously received by all our soldiers. He was the Hon : Councillor of Justice, Aernoudt van Overbeeck, Admiral of the Fleet, and Commissioner for this Residency, and had left Java in the *Tidoor*.

March 26th.—At daylight three vessels that had anchored on the other side of the bay arrived on the roadstead. They were *Het Wapen van Ter Goes*, *do. of Zeelant*, *do. of Zierickzee* and the *Voorsigtigheijt*. During the afternoon the *Goudtvinck* also anchored.

Very busy yesterday and to-day, landing from the *Macassar* all the woodwork sent us for the New Fortress.

March 27th.—Arrival of the return ship *De Gecroonde Vrede*, thank God! in good condition. The day of the Lord was religiously kept by the congregation, a considerable number attending the services.

ALBERT VAN BREUGEL,

March 28th.—During the afternoon the general public was called together by bell, when the commission of the Hon: Aernoudt van Overbeeck and that of the Hon: Albert van Breugel were read from the balcony, and general obedience to them was promised by acclamation.

March 29th.—Farewell dinner given to the officers of *Het Hoff van Breda* by order of the Admiral, in consequence of the irregular arrival of the return ships, as she has been detained here long over her time. The sailors of the *Macassar* busy loading the pedereros sent us. Not having any sailmakers here, and the *Bruijdegom* requiring new sails, we have taken one or two out of the ships to make what is wanted.

This afternoon the wife of the merchant Van den Brouck, who had died during the voyage, and been hitherto kept on board, was buried in the New Church.

March 30th.—Arrival of *Het Wapen van Rotterdam*. Our letters to Batavia handed to the officers of *Het Hoff van Breda*.

March 31st.—A violent S. Easter blew heavily during the night, so that it is miserable to see the boats which had been blown from shore lying helplessly at their anchors. No work possible at the fortifications.

April 1st.—The same S. East gale, preventing the anchored boats from landing. The men must suffer from hunger. No work at the New Castle possible.

April 2nd.—About an hour after sunrise the gale abated, and the boats were enabled to reach their respective ships. Return of the *Lyster*, sent out to meet the Return Squadron from Ceylon. The S. Easter had driven her to sea in a N. direction, so that she had lost all her sails and an anchor. She had met no Batavia or Ceylon return ships, but only an Englishman making for London *via* St. Helena.

April 4th.—About midnight after much lightning, a fruitful rain fell. During the day a cool W. breeze blew.

April 5th.—Arrival of the *Delfshaven* and *Oostenburgh*. In the evening meeting, presided over by the Hon. van Overbeeck, some of the time-expired servants received their discharge to Europe.

And as the Company's slaves complained to the meeting of the vile and scanty food, as well as bad clothing received by them, notwithstanding their heavy daily labour, it was ordered henceforth to supply them once a week with fresh meat and twice a year with new clothes.

1672

April 6th.—The boat of the Saldanha traders arrives with fish, most welcome to the Company with its large garrison. In the evening meeting other time-expired men, who could not be persuaded to remain here, were allowed a passage home.

April 7th.—A son of the burgher councillor, Elbert Diemer, about 11 years old, was this morning in the Hospital, where, with a Hottentoo boy of about the same age, he had been eating a water-melon. After that they commenced pelting each other with the skins; this play, however, ended seriously on the part of young Diemer, who drew a knife from his pocket and stabbed the Hottentoo in his left breast, and then ran away, without anyone knowing whither. Truly a sad misfortune for the parents. If that happens in the green wood, what will it be in the dry?

April 8th.—The little wounded Hottentoo, having been removed to the Hospital, in order to be cured by the surgeon, was found this morning to have escaped. It is certain that other Hottentoots had removed him (*hem daer van daen hebben gehaelt*), most likely believing that with their natural knowledge, they might better cure him. During the evening sitting of the Council more time-expired men received their discharge, and others were re-engaged with an augmentation of wages.

April 9th.—Arrival of *De Geregtigheyt* of Enckhuysen. Had left on the 11th December with 198 souls of whom 12 had died. Brought 25 sick. Also of the flute *Grootenbroeck*, which had left on the 4th February in company of the *Goyland* as the second "return" home. Had had a very prosperous voyage. Shortly afterwards the *Goyland* also arrives. . . .

April 10th.—Towards evening a small flute arrives, which on anchoring, saluted with five guns. But as it appeared to us to be too late, we did not even reply, and the more so, as we could see that she was a Frenchman, the less of whom arrive here the more agreeable. The Day of the Lord religiously celebrated in His House, where a large congregation assembled.

April 11th.—The officers of the French flute came to greet the Admiral, and complained that they had already 10 months ago left Port Louys *via* Capes Blanque and Vrede for this place, but contrary winds had blown them to the coast of Brazil, where they were much in want of water, and burdened with many sick. Finally, thank God! they had reached the roadstead, and requested His Honour to permit them to obtain some refreshments and drink water. And as we have not yet received orders to the contrary, they received permits on the burghers (as was usual hitherto) to buy for their money, and that at the dearest rates (what they required), whilst they were also allowed to take in water.

April 12th.—This night the Junior Merchant, Daniel Troyman-teau, who arrived here in the *Zierikzee*, and in consequence of the misfortune of Cornelis de Cretzer, had been kept here by the late Commander Hackius, after a few days' illness died in the flower of his life. He had been acting as provisional Commander (since the death of Mr. Hackius, but after his death matters were found to be in great confusion, and the books quite white (not written up), so that we shall have our hands full again.

Arrival of *De Pijl*, destined to Mauritius. Had left on the 23rd December with 40 men, of whom one or two had died. Brought no sick. She brought the Hon. Commander Hubert Hugo and family. Hugo to reside on that Island as Commander. Commissioners escorted him in the sloop to the shore, where he and his were afforded suitable quarters.

To-day, stock-taking, which had been going on for a few days, by order of the Admiral, came to an end.

Arrival of the *Vrije Zee* of Delft. Had left on the 11th December with 254 men, of whom more than 54 had died. Brought 4 or 5 sick.

This evening, about 6 o'clock, "Magister" Troymanteau was buried in the new Church.

The master mason, his wife and three of his six children, sent us by this vessel, had died on the voyage. The three orphans will become the wards of the Diaconate and be properly cared for as much as possible.

As our cattle and sheep have been much reduced in number by the fleet now in the roadstead, so that nearly every slaughterable animal has been killed, and as the Hottentoots refuse to bring any to market, it was deemed necessary to dispatch Sergeant Cruythoff and a strong escort inland, in order to barter some cattle from the surrounding Africans.

April 14th.—Arrival of the *Prins Willem* and *Het Wapen van Middelburg*. Both had left on the 17th December last. The first from Hoorn with 268 men. Had lost 21 and brought 30 sick. The second came from Zealand with 316 men. Had 26 dead and brought 28 sick.

To-day the confiscated brandies and wines seized on the *Gouda* were sold by public auction to the highest bidders, and realized a fine bit of money.

Towards evening Sergeant Cruijthoff and party (cum soeijis) leave. God the Lord grant him good success.

April 15th.—Arrival of the flute *Wimmemum* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 14th December with 105 men. Had one death. Brought no sick. This (Friday) afternoon a preparation service was held, as next Sunday the Holy Sacrament will be administered.

1672.

April 16th.—Fine rains for the thirsty earth, followed shortly afterwards by a violent S. Easter.

April 17th.—Sunday. Departure of the *Macassar* and *Het Sticht van Utrecht* to Batavia. Holy Communion celebrated this morning with the remembrance of the resurrection of Jesus Christ. Afterwards the Hon. Jacob Sanderus, Rear-Admiral of the Fleet, and the Hon. Miss Joanna Linga van Lennep, daughter-in-law (? step daughter) of the late Commander Hackiiu were solemnly united in wedlock, after which the S. Easter began to blow so violently that various boats were thrown ashore.

April 19th.—Arrival of the flute *Ipensteijn* of Hoorn. Left 11th December with 53 men, destined to Ceylon. Had one death but no sick. 20th. Arrival of the *Jonge Prins* also of Hoorn. Left 11th December with 311 men for India. Had sixteen deaths, and only five or six sick.

Towards evening, according to annual custom, all the officers of the ships on the roadstead and of the fort, as well as all the most prominent (gequalificeerste) of the burghers, were invited by the Admiral to the farewell dinner, to drink a farewell glass to the prosperity of the Company.

April 21st.—The Admiral, Vice-Admiral, Rear-Admiral, the widow of the late Mr. Hackiiu, and other friends were busy packing their furniture and other goods, and transferring them on board, as they are to leave for certain to-morrow.

April 22nd.—At noon the Hon. Admiral van Overbeeck and suite embarked. The burghers were under arms, and the guns were fired as he left for the *Tidoor*. Arrival of the flute *Laren* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 15th December with 60 men. Had two deaths and no sick.

April 23rd.—The carpenters busy putting together the boat received in the *Zierekzee* for service at Mauritius, in order to be conveyed thither in the *Pyl*, which must be despatched without delay, as we are very anxious about the condition of that Island. 24th. Departure of the return fleet.

April 25th.—Arrival of the Danish ship *Magelos* from Choro-mandel *via* Bantam, and bound to Copenhagen. She delivered a letter of credence (Credentie) written by the Amsterdam Chamber at the request of His Majesty of Denmark regarding accommodation and refreshments to be obtained by her here. We shall therefore permit her to obtain all lawful and reasonable accommodation.

April 26th.—As it came to our knowledge that the skipper of the

Danish ship *Carsten de Regter* had formerly served the Company in a similar capacity in India, and to-day proceeded to the homestead of the burgher Wouter Mostaert, the Hon van Breugel, in compliance with the order of their Honours, dated 15th May, 1871, ordered the said Danish skipper to be seized by the Fiscal, and detained here until further orders.

In its evening meeting the Council decided that the action taken against the Danish captain was in accordance with orders.

April 27th.—About 9 o'clock a.m. a gun was fired and a flag hoisted on the Fort, to summon the respective skippers on the roadstead to meet the Council here. The case of the Danish captain having been considered, and the orders of their Honours considered and discussed, it was finally by a majority of votes decided to set him at liberty, as will be seen in detail in the Resolution book. As our supply of lime is running short, the large lime kiln was to-day once more packed.

Arrival of the flute *Opmeer* of Enckhuijsen. Had left on the 11th. Dec. with 49 men; destined to Ceylon. Lost 1 man. Had no sick. Also of the *Bruijd* belonging to some of the freemen with a cargo of salted fish and train oil. Brought letters from the overseers at Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island, mentioning the more than ordinary mortality among the sheep, and the unwillingness of the Africans to sell any of their cattle. No more than 80 sheep had been obtained from them, though there were good hopes that they would bring more, as the rainy season was approaching.

Cruythoff returns from inland with 60 cattle and 140 sheep bartered at the kraals (Negeryen) of Gounema. They are indeed a welcome supply.

April 29th.—Heavy showers, showing that the rainy season has set in.

This morning it was reported that a freeman in the country, named Willem Willemsen, had, by discharging his gun from sheer malice, mortally wounded a Hottentoot of Cuijper's kraal. The Fiscal and Commissioners were accordingly despatched to investigate the case.

April 30th.—Arrival of the *Nederhorst* of Amsterdam, with 40 men. Left on the 15th December. Brought—glory be to God!—no sick. Had met the return fleet near here, and spoken to some of the vessels. Five stowaways had already been discovered, and would have been transferred to her, but a strong wind suddenly arising, prevented this. The officers complained that their vessel had been so overloaded that lately during a storm they were compelled, in order to keep afloat, to throw overboard about 30 casks of lime.

1672.

The Fiscal having late last night reported that Willem Willemsen had escaped, and that the wound inflicted on the Hottentoo was mortal, it was by the bell at noon notified from the balcony, and in the usual manner Willemsen was cited to appear, and all forbidden to assist the fugitive in any way.

May 2nd.—Continuation of the cold wet weather. Some Hottentoes inform us that the wounded Hottentoo was dead. The Fiscal accordingly ordered to make further inquiry.

A wooden shed erected in which to store the timber received from home for the new Castle.

May 3rd.—The little French vessel, *L'Esperance*, having lain here three weeks, leaves to-day.

May 4th.—Departure of the *Prins Willem* and *Middelburg*. As the sheep on Dassen Island are beginning to die, and too many are there, so that more may die during this rainy season, it was decided to send thither the *Vliegende Swaen* and the *Bruydegom* in order to embark there as many sheep as they can conveniently accommodate, but as *de Bruydegom* must also visit Saldanha Bay to deliver supplies there, she shall, should contrary winds detain her at that Island, take on board as many sheep as possible, and land them at Saldanha Bay, whence they are to be sent hither overland. And as we have heard this year nothing from Mauritius, contrary to our hopes, and are accordingly afraid that some disaster may have befallen the flute *Bunschoten*, and that island in consequence placed in great distress, it was decided to-day to let the hooker, *de Goutvinck* accompany the *Pyl* thither, and with her supply the garrison there for another year. The *Vliegende Swaen* to remain here to be employed on one of the voyages to the N. or E. of this Cape.

May 5th.—The boat *de Boogh* sent hither in pieces from home, and ordered to be put together by the Hon. Hubert Hugo, will be ready in 8 days time and despatched in *de Pyl*.

May 7th.—Violent S. Easters, so that the whole Fort and all houses in it trembled. The Danish vessel leaves. Sent letters home with her.

May 8th.—Sunday. The S. E. gale increasing in violence, damaging the roofs of the houses about the Fort, especially that of the Church in the New Castle, so that it was necessary to postpone the usual morning services, and hold the afternoon one in the old Fort, in the large hall. 9th. The wind has now blown four days continuously, and shows no signs of abating, preventing the boats from landing, and retarding the works at the Castle, so that hardly any work was done to the latter this week or the week before. The Mauritius boat *de Boogh* so far finished that only its masts have to be fitted.

May 10th.—It is astonishing how unsteady the climate is here. This morning the S.E. went down and was succeeded by a welcome, pleasant, and warm day, so that we were able to continue the works rapidly.

As the supply of cattle has been seriously diminished by the large return fleet, and very little can be obtained from the freemen, it was decided, in order to have enough for the Easter ships, to send out another expedition under Cruythoff, who will to-morrow evening submit a list of what he requires. 11th. Busy repairing the roofs damaged by the S. Easters. Cruythoff submits his list. Ordered to select the required 18 volunteers, and without delay proceed to the kraals of Oedesoa and his neighbours, in order to barter cattle, principally cattle, draught oxen and cows.

May 12th.—A certain malicious fellow, Andries Jansz : Vries, who for his transgressions had, 10 months ago, been banished to Robben Island, and about 10 weeks ago, had inflicted most treacherously a very dangerous wound on a fellow convict by stabbing him in the left shoulder, from which the patient has hitherto been laid up, was to-day condemned to be publicly scourged, branded with a red hot knife on his back, and banished on the Island for two years longer.

Johannes Fort, who in January last year had for various offences with his accomplices been sentenced on the 10th of that month, but had that same night escaped from prison and stowed himself away in one of the return ships, having once more enlisted at home in the Service, and landed here, leaving his ship to depart without him, was yesterday arrested, and ordered to be sent with all the papers in his case to Batavia to be tried there, as he asserts that he had received pardon at home from their Honours for his previous offences.

The *Lyster* returns from the Island and reports that the gale had also done great mischief there. The kitchen had been blown down and the dwelling house and sheep shed so injured that it would be necessary to remove them to a more sheltered spot, if no total ruin is to take place. Proper provision should therefore be made in good time. Fine rain at night, very welcome to the husbandman for ploughing. Cruythoff leaves.

May 14th.—About noon Andries Jansz : den Vries underwent his sentence, and the burgher Willem Willemsen was, for having committed homicide, once more cited by bell and the affixing of edicts.

May 16th.—The Hottentoo Captain Cuijper arrived this morning with 2 or 3 of his "grandeess," in order, as usual, to beg for a little tobacco and a dram (een tabacque met een soopje), but they

received nothing, and were told that instead of coming to beg they were to bring cattle to the market. This evidently did not please him. Fine weather, so that we were able to land bricks, lime, &c.

May 17th.—Violent S. E. gale. Many of the boats driven on the rocks below the line.

May 19th.—As there was a certain cooksmate on the *Pijl* who knew how to distill brandy, we yesterday and to-day made a trial with 2 half leaguers of the worst Cape wine and $\frac{1}{4}$ do. of lees, which were twice rectified, and found as excellent as might be wished. Three ankers of very delicious brandy were produced. In course of time and with an opulent cultivation of the vine some profit might accrue to the Company from it.

May 21st.—The men of the garrison busy landing lime, bricks, &c, from the small vessels in the bay, in order to give them an early despatch, so that we are sanguine that the yacht *Laren* will be ready to leave in the beginning of next week.

May 22nd.—Sunday. The usual Divine services. Lovely weather. Letter received overland from Saldanha Bay with a troop of . . . half bred and 37 Hottentoo sheep bartered there. It mentioned that the *Swaen* and *Bruijdegom* had arrived there on the 12th from Dassen Island with 149 sheep, of which some had died and 14 were considered unfit to be sent on. He had kept them there and asked for a further supply of provisions, &c. 23rd. Discovered this morning that the boat *de Boogh*, put together here, had during the night, at high tide, been carried to sea. She was followed up by boats, &c., and finally brought to an anchor near *de Pijl*, when her mast was shipped before evening.

The sheep from Dassen Island were found to be very poor, which is contrary to the usual experience, so that it is to be presumed that the Island had been overstocked. 24th. A most uncomfortably hot day, with a pleasant breeze from the sea, growing stronger after sunset accompanied by a heavy mist. The landing of coal, lime and clinkers continuing. 25th. The mist followed by a heavy rain from the N.W. Arrival of the little boat *Marcken* of Amsterdam with 47 men. Had left on the 17th October, *via* the Islands Corisko for St. Thomas, in order to obtain slaves for this place. Her officers reported that they had arrived there on the 6th February last, but in spite of all their efforts to procure some slaves at St. Thomas from the rulers there, they were unable to obtain any, as the latter would not let them trade for slaves, or permit them to obtain water or fuel for their money, unless they, as before, entered the bay with their vessel and anchored under the guns of the forts; but as this had been expressly forbidden in the Instructions of the Principals, they did

not approve of it, as from inquiry among some of the residents and others, the inhabitants and rulers of the said Island had no abundance of slaves, whilst those that were there, were mostly all Christians, and the rest so highly priced, that none could be obtained for less than 80 or 100 reals, who besides might not be sold by the burghers without a previous license from the "providoor" or senators. And as the officers, as already said, refused to anchor their vessel under the guns, notwithstanding their repeated request to do so, they decided to leave on the 9th of the same month, and proceed to Annaboâ, in order to obtain there some cuttings of the Manive, &c., according to orders from home, for this place and Mauritius. On the 18th they arrived there, but obtained no slaves, only the cuttings and other fruit trees from the Governor. On the 26th they left for Ascension, which they reached on the 15th March, and where they found but little water, much less fuel or any refreshments, only some cattle (vee) and a multitude of turtle (schildpadden), so deeming it unfit for a refreshment place, they left on the 22nd for this place, where they arrived without having accomplished much.

The officers also mentioned that lying at anchor near "Caap d' loop," they had spoken a flute ship named *De Jonge Prins* of Hoorn with a cargo of 400 slaves, whom the officers said they had obtained in the Gulf of Guinea, and intended to take to the Carasoo. Also a French flute, named *Sancte Francisco*, also with slaves on board, of whom 150 had been buried at sea. As far as it appeared they must have been stolen on the Coast of Guinea or elsewhere. At Ascension, they had also spoken three English return ships coming from St. Helena from Surat, and proceeding to England. The officers informed them of the aggressive attitude assumed by some 12 or 13 French ships in the Bay of Surat against our ships, and that they intended, with the assistance of the Portuguese, to make an attack on Coutchyin, in order to conquer it, which had also lately been communicated to us from Ceylon. During the one or two days they remained there, the English had provided them with a considerable number of turtles. They all left in company, and what further happened may be gathered in detail from the Journal of the officers, delivered to us, and deposited in the Secretariat.

Return of the *Swaantje* and *Bruijdegom* from Saldanha Bay via Dassen Island. They had intended to take in another load of sheep, but the sea was so rough that they did not dare to delay there and had to make straight for this bay. On Dassen Island, before their departure, they had counted 494 half bred sheep, and found the pastures poor, with little for the animals to eat.

The seamen who had a credit balance, received their pay.

May 26th.—Ascension Day. As the minister was ill, the

1672.

precentor read a sermon in memory of the Ascension of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

May 27th.—Commander Hugo proceeds on board, in order to make every preparation for his departure, so as to leave with the first favourable breeze.

May 29th.—The Lord's Holy Sabbath celebrated, by the explanation of the Holy Gospel from the "postil," as the minister was ill. In the afternoon the usual Parade was held within the old fort. 30th. Departure of the *Jonge Prijs* and *Laeren*, also of the Mauritius vessels *Pijl*, *Goudvinck* and *Boogh*. It was astonishing to see how the *Pijl* shot ahead, but followed with not much less speed by the *Boogh* . . .

May 31st.—The jetty having been much damaged by the rolling of the heavy water casks of the ships, five carpenters of the Ceylon ships were landed to repair it, as otherwise the heavy seas at this time of the year might completely destroy it. All the lime, clinkers, &c., landed from the *Nederhout*.

June 1st.—All busy landing clinkers from the *Marcken*, which were brought in barrows from the beach by the soldiers and sailors and conveyed in wagons to the shed below the new Castle.

June 2nd.—Farewell dinner given to the officers of the Ceylon ships, who were at the same time entrusted with despatches to the Hon: Governor Rijkloff van Goens at Colombo.

June 3rd.—Fine rains for the husbandman, as it is getting rather late for ploughing, and may mean a late harvest.

As the little boat *Marcken* has returned without any success in its attempted slave trade at St. Thome, and at present is not required here, the more so as the season for a second voyage to the North from this towards the Grundelbay is almost past, and she is too big for the purpose, and would therefore be also too expensive, it was decided to send her on to Batavia next week.

On the other hand it was resolved to despatch the little vessel, *De Vliegende Swaen*, along the East Coast, in accordance with the lately received instructions from their Honours, and to provide her with a small cargo and such instructions as she will require. The Sergeant Hans Michael Calmbach of Robben Island and some soldiers will embark in her for greater security, as will be seen from the instructions given them.

As our draught oxen have hitherto been mostly employed in conveying stone, and are now once more to be yoked to the plough, two members of the Council were again commissioned to endeavour to make an agreement with the burghers regarding transport, in order to report to the Council to-morrow, with the

hope that the burghers have thought better of it and will be found more tractable than before.

June 4th.—The men of the *Lijster* caught at noon near their vessel a fine, large and living eland, which had been chased into the sea by the Hottentoots behind the sand downs. It will be good food for them.

The commissioners deputed to communicate with the burghers, reported that they found them very civil and willing, only they could not be induced altogether to abandon the old system for a new one. Finally however they had entered into a provisional agreement, which was submitted in writing. It being accepted by the Council, they will next week commence to bring on the stone, so that we may vigorously proceed with the mason work of the point begun.

June 5th (Sunday).—The Holy Pentecost was celebrated with one service. The precentor being a candidate for the ministry (proponent) preached the sermon, as our minister is still ill in bed, and very little hope of his recovery is given.

June 6th (Whit Monday).—The precentor again preached, and thus the festival ended. During the afternoon to our consternation it was reported that the coal in and under the smithy had taken fire. At once it was removed, and the fire extinguished without any damage.

June 7th.—Departure of the Ceylon ships. Busy the whole day discharging bricks from the *Marcken* and storing them in the new shed. It being very calm weather, the soldiers were employed at the new Castle, removing the soil and continuing the mason work. 9th. The showers this day often compelled the workmen to look for shelter.

June 10th.—The Fiscal, assisted with some commissioners and burgher councillors, left for the country as soon as the gate was opened, in order to inspect the roads and passes, and have the necessary repairs made. For that purpose every freeman was yesterday directed to send a man this morning to the Company's "Coorenschuer," Rustenburg, for the aforesaid repairs, subject to such fines as have been decreed of old.

The *Marcken* completely discharged of its clinkers, iron, and deals, so that she can leave with the first wind. 11th. Busy stock taking. Our shore boat which had suffered much from landing bricks, cannons, iron, &c., and become leaky, was hauled on shore for repairs.

June 13th.—The *Lijster* proceeds to Robben Island with provisions, the Fiscal and the master carpenter as well as the successor of the Superintendent. The Fiscal is to inspect affairs

1672.

there, and give the necessary instructions for repairs, and the removal of the dwelling house, kitchen and sheep shed. On his return he is to report. He is also to instal the new Superintendent and send his predecessor hither, that the latter may leave in the *Swaentje* to-morrow.

June 14th.—The *Marcken* ready to leave for Batavia. The assistant, Hendrick van de Olimp, was taken out of her to be employed here at the books. 15th. The *Marcken* leaves. The fine weather has enabled the workmen to progress with their work on the new point, whilst the others were employed in quarrying stone.

June 18th.—Return of the *Lijster* from the Island with the Fiscal, the master carpenter and Sergeant Hans Michael Calmbach. The Fiscal reported that the Superintendent's dwelling and kitchen of the men had been covered up to the window sills with sand, caused by the violent S. Easters, which blowing against the gables of the same caused the sand drift. And in order not to abandon the buildings as useless and leave them as mole hills, it would be highly necessary to remove them to the north side of the Island, where they would be safe from the sand and wind, and the more so as the soil there is not to be despised, and with a little trouble would yield fresh water. This spot as well as a considerable portion of the rest of the Island, will apparently be very suitable for the cultivation of the grape. He had also found this little island, on account of the chains of reefs and the heavy surf, unapproachable except at the east side, where there was a little sand bay which afforded a tolerable landing, so that it would be necessary, without delay, to construct a small battery there, armed with a few small guns which could command the whole roadstead, and further N. and S. two large guns, in order to check an enemy that might unexpectedly wish to surprise us. The Island would thus become a considerable support to enable us to drive any hostile force from the roadstead. The aforesaid sergeant (Calmbach) embarks in the *Swaantje*. 19th. The *Swaantje* leaves. 20th. The works progressing. 21st. Bartered two young cattle and two sheep from the Gounema Hottentoos.

June 22nd.—As according to old custom, about this time of the year, a burgher councillor has to be elected in the place of the retiring one, this morning, after previous nomination of a double number, Elbert Dirkse Dicmer was elected by a majority of votes as successor to Wouter Mostaert retiring. He gratefully accepted office and took the usual oaths.

At the same time the vacant ensign's place in the burgher militia, caused by the death of Hendrick van Zeurwaerden, was filled by a certain famous (gerenomeert) burgher, Harmen Ernst

de Gresnigh, at present Sergeant in that corps. Accordingly next Sunday, when the burghers, as ordered by the Company, will, for the third time this year, hold their Parade within the Fort, he will be introduced to his Company and receive his authority.

June 23rd.—Bleak windy weather with continuous showers, so that the earthen walls of this old Fort are seriously injured, and the dilapidated and soddened walls of the buildings inside of it, also suffer, having long before this threatened to collapse. This would have happened already, if, in our opinion it had not been prevented by the making of a stone water course. Our sailors busy clearing up the store houses and collecting all the useless articles in them for removal. Their work shows that the administrators, who had been here before had been very slovenly and careless.

June 26th (Sunday).—Cloudy weather in the morning. Fine sunshine in the afternoon, when the Burgher Militia appeared in the Fort under arms for Parade. A company of 90 well looking and smart persons. After they had been exercised with our soldiers, standing in two divisions, and a new ensign had been accepted by acclamation, and a salute had been fired, they were dismissed, and in front of the Lieutenant's house each presented with a real of eight according to the Company's orders.

June 27th.—The men hard at work at the New Castle, and quarrying stone. Further stock taken to discover the true condition of the Cape (business), and make up the books. 28th and 29th. Heavy N.W. storms, so that on the 30th the waves washed away some of the large stones of the water course, and made the whole somewhat shaky, so that the whole must be repaired to prevent further damage.

July 2nd.—Some almond branches shipped in the *Lijster* for repairing the sheep shed on the Island. As the increase of the sheep is from time to time becoming greater, the dispenser (who at present has the superintendence of the same) and the Fiscal were commissioned to proceed to Houtbay in order to count the number of cattle and sheep there, as well as the increase, and to see what might be done for repairing the sheds and harbouring the lambs, as well as preventing the frauds of the shepherds in not reporting the exact number of the increase, and their alienation.

July 4th.—Bleak and very unpleasant weather with heavy continuous showers and vehement N. winds, which caused a great rush of waves, and on shore various leakages in the houses, and destruction of the walls of the old fort, so that the workmen could advance but little with their work.

1672.

As Sergeant Cruijthoff, sent seven weeks ago on a barter expedition inland has not returned, and the time has expired, and whereas he has no doubt been detained by the swollen rivers, so that he may be in need of provisions, especially strong drink for his men, it was decided in the evening meeting, to send some well known Hottentoots obtainable and persuadable for the purpose, to meet him, with various provisions for the solace of himself and his men. The Hottentoots to report the result.

July 5th.—Same boisterous weather. The lion seems to seize the opportunity. As rumour hath it, yesterday evening, at a musket shot's distance from this fort, near a freeman's house, the spoor of a lion was found in the latter's garden. Every one therefore, especially the herds in the veld during the day, should be on their guard, and bring their cattle home in time before dark.

Whatever trouble was taken, and promises made to induce certain Hottentoots to go in search of Sergeant Cruijthoff, all excused themselves on account of the high waters and their neighbouring enemies, whose territories they would have to cross, so that we shall have to think out another expedient.

July 6th.—Two gallows deservers, participators in the treachery in the ship *Het Huis te Velsen* in 1668, at the time excused by fate from being hanged, and besides other punishment, sentenced to 25 years' banishment, having for the diversion of the rest of their living accomplices been placed on Robben Island and at Hout Bay, did not seem capable of enjoying the luxury of their good days any longer, as, unmindful of their previous punishment, they had, a few days ago, having previously quarrelled with him, in a fit of drunkenness, stabbed the gunner, first in the inn, and afterwards further attacked him in the public street. The Court having accordingly adjudicated the case, they were condemned to be brought to the place of execution, the one to be severely scourged there, and the other to receive 100 blows from the Caffers, and further to serve, each, in chains, in addition to their former sentence for five years, *ad opus publicum*. This sentence was properly carried out about 11 o'clock.

As the day before yesterday we already feared that in consequence of the delay of the Sergeant Cruythoff, some misfortune might have befallen him, we were to-day, in consequence of rumours spread by some of the neighbouring Hottentoots, made to believe that he and two of his men had been murdered by the Sonquas (a tribe from which (bij dewelcke) the Company had in 1669 obtained a considerable number of cattle as booty), and that the rest had escaped. This added to our fears, so that at once we resolved to despatch 4 or 5 volunteers and some fit soldiers, assisted by two experienced land travellers, inland, in order, should they meet any other Hottentoots, to make inquiries. At

present we consider it a mere idle rumour, but God grant that it be not followed by a limping messenger.

July 7th.—The men selected for searching for Cruythoff leave about noon. The masons busy repairing the water course.

July 9th.—Letter from the Superintendent at Saldanha Bay mentioning that the Hottentoots in his neighbourhood were very averse to cattle barter, so that he had not been able to procure more than 117 sheep and 7 cattle from the small captain, who was lying with his kraal near the Company's Lodge.

The shepherds on Dassen Island reported that the sheep were multiplying there fairly, but that on the other hand many were also dying, as no rain had as yet fallen, as much as the thirsty little Island required.

July 10th.—Sunday. A very cold and windy day from the N.W. with rain. Our minister, who had been ill for a considerable time, preached his first sermon this morning.

July 11th.—Early this morning the slaves were set to cleaning the water tank, that on the arrival of the expected ships, the water, which is running into it, and has become muddy on account of the rains, may the sooner be clarified.

July 15th.—Letter received from the Overseer on the Island, mentioning that he required material for the erection of the kitchen, &c., and that the boat employed for conveying shells from the shore to the vessels, was old and becoming unfit for use. This inconveniences us considerably, as we cannot let this work stop, and we are destitute of other craft, and on account of the heavy surf at this time of the year neither the *Lijster* nor the *Bruijdegom* can be employed for the purpose. He also requested some vine cuttings and seeds for the garden, and another draught ox to replace the dead one, that the span might work alternately in bringing together the shells, slabs, &c. All this will be sent him at once.

July 16th.—Vehement N.W. tempest imperilling the safety of our vessels. A certain African of the tribe of Gounema, having arrived to visit some of his relatives here, assured us that our Sergeant Cruijthoff and his companions had been met by him on their return journey, and that they had already arrived at Soeswaes land, about 7 or 8 days distant from this, but that some of them were beginning to get ill. He did not, however, know what they had obtained. The last sad news is, therefore, evidently not true, so that our anxiety has been completely removed, whilst we trust that the six persons sent out to meet him have by this time found him, and solaced the sick with the provisions which they took with them.

1672.

July 17th.—Continuation of yesterday's stormy weather, so that the thatch of the New Church was considerably damaged and completely soaked through. Accordingly Divine service was held this afternoon within the old Fort.

July 18th.—During the night such a violent tempest raged, that this morning lamentations over the losses sustained were heard in all directions. Not only the Company's tile kilns, but also other buildings of the burghers and the Company, as well as the wooden rails around the gardens were thrown down and levelled with the ground. At the same time we also saw on the beach near the Watchhouse *Het Houde Wambuis* (the wooden Jacket) and the Salt River two fairly large whales washed up, which had thus met their end. It is surprising that the little vessels on the roadstead succeeded in riding out the storm. Their safety, however, God be praised! was seen at daylight, when they were still safely riding at their anchors. 19th. The storm continued till 3 or 4 o'clock this afternoon, when the sea went down a little, so that with difficulty the sloop of the *Lijster* could reach the shore with the skipper, who communicated to us the great misery and danger he and his men had endured, that they had lost their best anchor and cable, and had only the daily one left, which, if also lost, would cause the loss of the vessel. Unfortunately, though we had anchors, we had no cables in store suitable for his vessel, so that we had to send him back to his vessel with the hope of better weather and with renewed courage.

Some burghers, greedy of gain, having heard of the washed up whales, had, in spite of the danger of falling into the hands of the Fiscal, and the continuance of the tempest, feasted their eyes on the carcasses, and commenced to cut off some of the blubber and drag it away. Having been informed of this, we forbade them to do so, and removed the bodies from the spot in order to be melted down for the Company. The Fiscal was also ordered to investigate this bold proceeding.

As the time is approaching for again supplying the garrison with clothing, with which they are soberly provided, the placcaat which is usually published before distribution of supplies and pay, (*goede maenden*) was read at 11 o'clock to the public, and all were verbally and with severe threats warned to beware as much as possible of selling or buying what was being distributed for the requirements of the body, as we found that a number of avaricious burghers have a masterly way of coaxing the poor men out of their own, and buy it for little or nothing, so that afterwards they suffer great want, and we are continually to hear complaints; hence we are determined without distinction of persons to proceed against all offenders.

July 20th.—The Hooker recovers her anchor, but the cable had been chafed through in so many places, that it had become worthless. It is, therefore, evident that there must be rocky ground elsewhere in this Bay. The skipper also reported that he had not been able to find the buoy laid down to mark the proper anchorage for ships arriving, so that it has evidently drifted away.

July 22nd.—The tempest continuing, so that, as before, we dreaded the collapse of some of our buildings and the walls of the Fort. In the morning, however, no serious damage was observed, only the old earthen walls had been sinking away, so that we retired the guns from the points, that they might be relieved of the weight.

Towards evening, to our joy, a soldier, one of the six, sent to meet Sergeant Cruijthoff, reported that the latter had been encountered near the Boter Rivier and that this night he intended to camp at the Groote Kuijlen, on this side of Hottentoots Holland. He had done good business, and bartered 170 cattle and nearly 400 sheep. All his men were still in good health, so that we hope to see them here to-morrow. Truly a better result than we had imagined.

July 23rd.—Sergeant Cruijthoff, his companions and cattle arrived at noon at the cavalry stables (ruijter stal), but had to remain there, as the Liesbeeck River, in consequence of the rains, had become so swollen, that it had submerged the bridge. We trust that to-morrow it will be sufficiently low.

We also trust that the new moon, which promises better weather, will enable us to progress more rapidly with our works, than was the case last week.

July 24th.—Sunday. Same weather. One service in the morning, and usual Parade in the afternoon. Towards evening Sergeant Cruythoff and his men arrive safely with 178 cattle (mostly young) and 375 fairly good Hottentoot sheep, bartered by him in the interior from the Hessequaes, Soeswase and other tribes. He had not had the least evil encounter with the Hottentoots inland, so that the stories about him were merely idle rumours.

Under the protection of Crujithoff, a certain captain of the Soeswas appeared here, named Claas, accompanied by some of his people, who in Hottentoot fashion came to greet us in the name of his tribe, and request us to make such provision as would enable them and other African tribes to come down to us, without being molested, in order to sell us some of their cattle. They were still carrying on the war with Captain Cuijper, who had endeavoured to compel them to part with their cattle to him, so that he might exchange them to the Company. This proposal

1672.

they had however summarily rejected, as he had only his own profits in view; he accordingly would not permit them until to-day a peaceful passage through his territory, so that the traffic had hitherto been stopped. Further they promised to remain at all times the Company's good friends and neighbours, and requested that we might permit him and those with him to pass the night in the Fort, in order to be safe from their enemies, the Cape Hottentoots. They were told that we would give them our reply at their departure, and that in the meanwhile we would make such arrangements, that they might until that time remain safely in the Fort.

July 25th.—The Hottentoo Emissary renewed his request to-day and offered that if the Company supplied him with a few small presents of copper, tobacco, beads, &c., laden on a pack ox, and escorted by one or two Dutchmen as far as the boundaries of his country, and a month hence sent Sergeant Jeronymus Croese with merchandise for bartering cattle at their kraals, the Company would obtain more than 400 cattle, and double that number of sheep. We replied that as regarded the presents asked for, we would consider the matter, but that it would be much more serviceable and pleasant to the Company, if they came themselves with their cattle to the Fort, as they had at first offered to do, and if they were afraid of doing so, on account of their enemies, they were merely to inform us of their approach by means of a few Hottentoots sent in advance, when we would send out some men to meet them, so that they could safely reach us with their cattle. This suggestion they readily adopted and promised to carry out. In the meanwhile the Emissary and his companions were presented with a bit of tobacco and a dram (soopie) of brandy.

July 26th.—As the weather is favourable, some masons were set to work on the embankment at a brick (? stone) water furrow, similar to that behind the "cat" (rampart) and the Commander's house, around the armoury, the more so as the walls on account of the heavy rains, have in various places sunk away and burst from each other, having been completely soaked through, so that it was perfectly certain that they would in time collapse entirely. This we hope to prevent by the means adopted.

The fine weather also enables the hooker to discharge her cargo of shells.

July 27th.—As the Sousequa Captain, Claes, had yesterday asked his demission, and once more repeated his request, it was in the usual evening meeting decided to grant it and regale him on some presents of little value, as well as to lend him a pack ox for carrying the same as well as two horsemen for his protection as far as the boundaries of his country (Soeswaeslant), with the hope that the country will once more secure good profits among them

and other African tribes and that his faithful promises will be fulfilled. The present consisted of 5 lbs. Brazilian tobacco, 30 copper head chains, $1\frac{1}{2}$, "mas," glazed beads, 10 lbs. stave copper, 4 pints brandy, and 100 lbs. rice.

July 28th.—The buoy which had broken away from its moorings during the storm was this morning discovered washed up near the watch house, "Kijekuijt," whence it was taken off by our large sloop. As it is much damaged, it will have to be repaired.

The Hottentoots who had yesterday already received their despatches, but had until now been hanging about at the Fort, and here and there obtained another dram, left towards evening with two of our mounted men.

July 29th.—The *Bruydegom* despatched with supplies to Robben Island. She is to continue her voyage thence to Saldanha Bay to endeavour to obtain a cargo (of fish) there for the Company's slaves, for if the fishermen fishing there and at St. Helena Bay do not send us soon a good catch, we shall be compelled to feed the slaves on pork and meat, which would be too expensive. In the afternoon some shepherds grazing their flocks on the high mountain range, reported that they had seen a ship at sea tending to Hout Bay. Afterwards we were informed that she had been lost sight of, so that it is possible that having sighted land too high, she could not approach with the present wind and had accordingly put back to sea, in order to find the right Latitude of the Cape. 30th Vessel arrives, but on account of the S. Easter could not reach the anchorage. The Fiscal and skipper of the *Hooker* proceed to her in the sloop, and according to a signal agreed upon, the ship before dark discharged some guns, to inform us that she was an outward bound and in a good state. 31st. The Fiscal lands and reports that she was the flute *Saxenburgh* of Amsterdam, and had left on the 16th April last with 110 men. Had lost one man who had fallen overboard. Brought no sick worth mentioning.

She reported that the dark clouds which had so long been threatening, had at last burst into a tempest of war between the Kings of Great Britain and France, respectively, on the one, and our State on the other side, and that the first named nation by attacking, seizing and bringing into port some merchant vessels and ships of war, destined to convoy the former, had lit the torch of war, which he had afterwards publicly declared; the same thing was done shortly afterwards by France, without our as yet exactly knowing what hostilities the latter has also committed.

Shortly after the Fiscal had communicated the above, the officers of the *Saxenburgh* landed and brought us the principal despatch from the Directors, which not only confirmed the above, but also mentioned that our lords and masters had been ordered

1672.

by their High Mightinesses in Patria, to commit on their authority every act of hostility against those two nations, as is more fully mentioned in their letters of the 12th and 13th April last.

And as we are also ordered to keep the *Saxenburgh* and *Cattenburgh* here until further orders, and send the news on to Batavia by one or other hooker, the skipper of the *Lijster* will be ordered to prepare for the voyage as quickly as possible.

August 1st.—Supplies for the Cape landed from the *Saxenburgh*.

August 2nd.—The two horsemen who had left on the 28th last with the *Soeswas* Captain return, having escorted him and his people to beyond the Hottentoots Holland Mountains, where they parted from them. During the past night a violent south-easter blew, accompanied with heavy rain and hail, so that we feared for the ships as well as the buildings in this old Fort. Wind continued the whole day. 3rd. This morning the gale moderated somewhat, and the sun broke through, though rain and hail fell off and on.

After consultation with the burgher councillors, it was decided to send the Town Messenger to-morrow to the country in order to notify to all the freemen that they were to appear at the Fort on Saturday in order to render an exact account of their arms, that we might be able to make further provision on this subject.

August 4th.—The hooker *Lijster* victualled for 3 months. After the usual evening prayer, it was decided in Council to abandon Dassen Island during this war time, and remove all the sheep, more than 500, from it, lest they might fall into the hands of the enemy which might have some designs on this place. Moreover on account of its distance that Island is not of much service to the Company, so that even in time of peace, and when the Hon: Hackius was still alive, the question of abandoning it had already been considered. The *Bruijdegom* will therefore be dispatched thither for removing the sheep, and with instructions to the overseer at Saldanha Bay, to request the free burghers there or at St. Helena Bay, to assist for a reasonable payment in the removal, and convey the animals either to Saldanha Bay or hither, without however neglecting their fishing.

August 7th (Sunday).—To our astonishment we discovered this morning early that three evil disposed soldiers, who had been imprisoned for their crimes, had escaped through an airhole of the prison protected with iron bars, and retired inland. To search for them and notify the fact to the country people, the provost and six soldiers proceeded into the country on horseback. The day of the Lord spent in the preaching of His Holy Word, as usual.

August 8th.—The escaped soldiers as usual summoned to appear, and all residents warned at their peril not to harbour or in the least manner assist them, but on the contrary to deliver them up. The freemen's boats arrive from St. Helena Bay with cargoes of fish, which in the present scarcity are very welcome as food for the slaves. Letter also received from the overseer at Saldanha Bay who writes that the Hottentoots are very backward in bringing cattle for sale, so that he had only bartered 70 sheep and 5 cattle.

August 9th.—As the *Lijster* is kept back by contrary winds, and we are enumbered with a great number of convicts on Robben Island, at Houtbay and here, so that they may be seized with the idea that it is good fishing in troubled waters, and in these war times cause mischief by escaping or hatching conspiracies, it was decided to order the ships' officers, when passing the Island, to take on board thence for Batavia three of the convicts there.

August 10th.—The fugitive soldiers were to-day again summoned by edict and bell, from the balcony, as the Provost had not been able to discover them in the country. It is feared that they will, by stealing and plundering, make the roads unsafe.

August 11th.—Some artillery necessities, such as carts and incomplete gun carriages, landed from the *Saxenburgh*. 12th. More goods landed from the *Saxenburgh* and stored in the Church and new shed of the Castle.

Fine weather after the N.W. gales and heavy seas. Two of the fugitives, repenting what they had done, and preferring punishment to the ever present fear of being captured, met the ex-burgher Councillor Wouter Mostaert near the latter's residence and requested him with his safeguard and intercession to be conducted back to the Fort. This having been promised them, they arrived here at 9 o'clock this evening, and declared that they had been seduced by the third one to escape, as he had assured them that they would be able to maintain themselves sufficiently in the country; but a few days later, experiencing the contrary, they had parted from him, and did not know where he was at present.

14th. A violent N.W. gale, threatening destruction to the Hooker *Lyster*. 15th. Same weather. After evening prayer three guns were heard from the sea. 16th. As this morning early the Hooker was not to be seen, it was concluded that she had fired the guns to notify that she was leaving. The Hon: Breugel and 2 members of the Council ride out to the country to notify the Hottentoo Captains, Cuijper and Schager, that they with their kraals were to retire from these valleys, as they had come too near with their cattle, which had consumed the grass in every direction. The natives, however, were found on their arrival to have already left.

1672.

August 17th.—Same fine weather as yesterday, greatly refreshing the crops and gardens, and enabling us to continue the works.

August 18th.—This morning a court was held to try the returned fugitives and other malefactors, among them a pick pocket named Jan Jansen, of Dordrecht, a loan servant here, and Heyn Dors, of Hamburg, who arrived here as cooksmate in the *Py'*, who had broken into the Company's store and robbed it. Each one was punished as he deserved, as will be seen from their respective sentences.

As the privileged wine tappers have requested, that in the present scarcity of wines, they may be accommodated at a reasonable price with some casks of Liege beer, shipped for this place in the *Saxenburgh*, it was resolved for good reasons to grant their request, and sell them the casks at 40 Belgian dollars (40 B. drs.), trusting that by having done so, we have done no disservice to the Company.

August 19th.—The Fiscal and a member of the Council proceed on board the *Saxenburgh* to see that she hoisted her flag as a mark of respect for this residency, and also to be present at the filling up of 4 casks of Liege beer which are to be landed. The S.E. wind compelled them to pass the night on board. 20th. They land about noon this day. The execution of the sentences passed on the convicted was suspended for a future opportunity.

August 21st (Sunday).—Lovely weather. Rest from all work, and Divine Service held. 22nd. Continuation of the fine weather, promising rapid growth to all the field and garden crops which had so long suffered from the overwhelming rains and bitterly cold weather, and refreshing the cattle as well as the human bodies which had for some time been suffering from various evil attacks.

August 23rd.—It is to be deplored that the brute creation should in certain cases be preferred to the human. This morning offered us another example for our abhorrence in the person of a sailmaker named Roeloff Jansz: of Dronthem, who arrived here in the *Saxenburgh*, and who yesterday had swallowed (ingurgiteert) so much strong drink in a tavern, that it almost did not look like the doings of a human being; however, depending on self-conceit and wrong power, he proceeded to the jetty to look for the sloop. It is accordingly surmised that by stumbling he must have fallen from the jetty on to the beach and lay there without motion, so that he must have been smothered in his sins, for no marks were found on him externally or internally.

August 24th.—The N. monsoon seems to be leaving us, as daily lovely S.E. breezes prognosticate a change of climate,

which now earnestly urges the husbandman to cultivate his fields and prune his fruit trees, which, should this favourable weather continue, promise shortly an abundance of refreshments.

August 25th.—Same weather. A large quantity of fish appearing near the shore, our sailors and those of the *Saxenburyh* threw out the seine, and in two or three hauls drew on shore such a large number as served as an agreeable change in the diet of the men.

August 26th.—Friday. Preparation service held this afternoon, the labourers, however, being kept to their work. The buoy having been repaired, was again placed in its old position.

August 27th.—The execution of the sentences passed 3 days ago was carried out to-day at 11 o'clock. Having been informed that the third fugitive was living unobserved somewhere in the country, we at once despatched the provost and some armed soldiers thither, who brought him in late at night, and provided him with other lodgings.

August 28th.—Sunday. The Lord's Supper administered after the morning service, and a thanksgiving service held in the afternoon.

August 29th.—Reported that a lion had yesterday destroyed an ox of a certain freeman. This makes us fear that the ox which is missing at the granary has most likely been destroyed in the same way.

August 30th.—In order to model this place according to home conditions, the question was discussed of what defence and resistance we were capable against any European power. Accordingly, in a general meeting convened this morning, various points were considered, and regulations framed provisionally until the arrival of the long expected Governor Goske. (See Resolution of this date.)

This afternoon the Hon. Van Breugel and some members of the Council drove out to behind the Lion Mountain and its approaches, in order to inspect the latter, as well as the sea shore, as enacted by resolution, and to make such provision as to prevent the landing of an enemy.

August 31st.—Early this morning the Fiscal proceeded on board the *Saxenburyh* to land 3 more casks of Liege beer out of her, as well as 25 sailors who are to be employed on throwing up entrenchments.

Two other Commissioners also left on horseback for Hout and False Bays in order to arrange a system of signalling from the high mountains at those places, to notify the approach of strange ships.

1672. — September 1st.—The sailors, drafted yesterday from the *Saxenburgh* for throwing up some defensive works, were to day sent to the rear of the Lion Mountain, in order to-day to do so there provisionally, and the Surveyor was also despatched thither in order to mark off a small fort at a small bay there, in which during fine weather two or three sloops might land.

The Commissioners return from Hout and False Bays, and report that they had found and examined various spots at those places for signalling purposes. The matter will be considered in our Saturday's meeting.

September 2nd.—In accordance with the resolution of the 30th of last month, that a general muster should be held of all servants of the Company and freemen capable of bearing arms, about 9 o'clock this morning the drum was beaten for the rendezvous, and after all the military and other servants of the Company had come together under arms outside in the hornwork, they were led by Lieutenant Sieur Breitenbach in regular order outside the Fort, and properly arranged in five companies behind the houses of the freemen on a level plain, where they were placed in battle array, each Company being provided with a small field piece. In the meanwhile the burghers also marched out to our men in good order from their usual meeting place, and joined them, when the Hon. Van Breugel and the members of the Council and burgher Councillors with . . . horsemen, consisting altogether of . . . horses, also arrived at the rendezvous, and after the whole corps had been thoroughly inspected and exercised with their firearms, &c., and had for a distance been led on in battle array, they were dismissed, and retired in proper order, and the men of the garrison were treated to a dram (soopie). To the surprise of many rather a small than a large body of courageous fellows among the burghers and Company's servants put in an appearance. It was to be regretted however that many untrained burghers, badly supplied with arms, had to join the Company's workmen in the performance of their exercises, and being very little versed in these matters, readily gave the soldiers the precedence. However we shall endeavour from time to time, without interfering with the usual work, to exercise these persons in the use of arms, as well as provide the unarmed burghers and their dependents with proper arms.

The little vessel, *De Vliegende Swaen*, having been obliged to put back through stress of weather, arrived here to day, and reported that she had encountered unusual tempests and continual adversities, and besides sprung a serious leak. Most of her crew had also fallen ill. She had accordingly been prevented from reaching the neighbourhood of Cassava, and after wandering about 2½ months, could not proceed higher than Punte Premiere. Accordingly finding that the voyage was barren of results, the Council

had decided on the 24th July to return to the Cape. On the 22nd August, being prevented by contrary winds from reaching this Bay, she had anchored under Dassen Island, where the Superintendent showed the officers our written order to take on board from time to time all the sheep there, and convey them either to Saldanha Bay or to the Cape. They therefore decided to take on board 110 half-bred sheep and transport them to Saldanha Bay, which was fortunately done, and she accordingly arrived here safely afterwards, delivering to us her Journal signed by all the officers. It appears that Almighty God will not as yet be pleased to favour our frequent expeditions to these regions, but His Majesty remains heartily thanked for having saved this vessel and her crew from so many dangers and disasters, and brought her safely back.

September 3rd.—Heavy rains, welcome to the crops. The Council, with the burgher Councillors again discuss the condition (constitutie) of this place, and decide as minuted in the Resolution-book. Amongst others it was decided to divide the burgher militia into two corps, and to appoint as lieutenant to the Second Corps, with an eye to the present war, Wouter Mostaert, ex-burgher councillor, and as Ensign Jacob Rosendael. As usual the subalterns will be elected by the corps itself.

September 4th. (Sunday).—Cold bleak rainy weather. The usual divine services held.

5th September.—Ensign Coon and burgher councillor Smient proceed on horseback to Hout Bay to arrange that all the wood cut there for palisades is brought hither in wagons of the freemen, in order to be used at the New Fort for closing the open portion between the curtains.

The sailors who, with some soldiers, had since the 1st inst. been busy erecting a small battery behind the Lion Mountain, have made considerable progress, so that they will soon be finished unless prevented by the rain.

The spring tide this afternoon brought a high water flow and heavy seas which struck with no small force and noise against the wooden jetty and the stone watercourse, seriously damaging both, so that many planks were washed away, and a great deal of work will again be necessary for the furrow.

6th September.—Arrival of the hooker *Loery* after an unexpectedly long voyage. Left Rotterdam on the 16th April last with 19 men, of whom 2 had died. The rest were well. She reported that our daily expected Governor Goske would leave with the country's fleet, which would not sail before the 30th June or 1st July, which has once more deferred our hopes some weeks.

The hooker busy taking in fresh water. The masons constructing a new lime-kiln, and the soldiers conveying earth to the new Fort.

7th September.—As the burgher councillors have offered at the last meeting, in the name of the public, to erect with their own means and men the small battery to be marked off on the spot on which the demolished redoubt “Duijnhoop” had stood, and to commence as soon as the wood is brought in from Hout Bay (which offer had been gladly accepted), a small fort was to-day planned, and the construction taken in hand by the burghers, which greatly relieves our garrison.

It had also been decided to take the hood off the watchhouse “Het Houte Wambaas” (Wambuis) situated between the aforesaid battery and the new Fort, also the platform on which, ere this, some cannon had been planted, and which could from where it stood cover the roadstead, but not the flat shores on its flanks, and to make it considerably longer and place it on a firm stone foundation, as well as further strengthen it by filling it in with soil, and after that place some small guns on it so as to command the whole beach and hinder an enemy from landing; and as through age it has been considerably weakened, it is believed that by removing its heavy roofing, it will be much relieved and the better able to bear the cannonading.

September 8th.—Same stormy weather, which, however, did not prevent the burghers from proceeding with their work at the fortification, or our men from continuing at that behind the Lion Mountain and the New Castle.

September 11th (Sunday).—Fine sunshine with a S.E. breeze. The skipper of the *Loery* ordered, after the forenoon service, at once to settle his affairs, came for his despatches and immediately proceeded on board to take advantage of the favourable breeze. This was done, and he was soon on his way to Ceylon.

One of the Company's herds residing in the lately erected kraal behind the Steenberg, informed us that a lion had devoured 2 or 3 sheep there, but had been entertained with a musket in such a manner that shortly afterwards he succumbed. The usual premium will be paid to the shooters.

September 12th.—Sent some clay to the Island for repairing the kitchen there. The dispenser and some adjuncts from the Council proceed to the country house (Iusthuijs) Rustenburgh, in order to frame an exact return of the Company's grain there and at the “Schuer,” that in our distributions we may depend on it.

September 13th.—The quarrying of stone having been stopped for some time, the men were once more put to the work at the

New Fort, in order to connect the completed sea point with the new section by means of an earthen curtain, and thus close it at the waterside, as it is judged that there is lying ready for use as much stone as the masons require.

As our stock of wheat was yesterday on examination found to be very low, some Commissioners were sent to the country in order to warn the agriculturists to deliver to us at the fixed price all the corn which they have been keeping back in order to dispose of it among themselves contrary to the Company's orders, and that all contravening this order will be proceeded against.

September 14th.—Two Dutch soldiers and two Hottentoots bring in from Saldanha Bay 134 half-bred sheep landed there by the *Swaentje* from Dassen Island, and 117 Africander ones bartered from the Hottentoots at the Bay. They were in fairly good condition. The Superintendent in his letter informed us that 2 lions had in his presence carried off some cattle from the kraals, so that when counted in the morning 5 sheep were missing. The next morning when the sheep were being herded near the house by two Hottentoots, the two lions returned and killed three head of cattle. Hearing the screams of the Hottentoots the men at once rushed to the spot and chased away the lions. The skins were at once taken from the carcasses and conveyed inside. Whilst doing this the brutes returned, compelling us to retire, and carrying off the flesh to the bush. Two trap guns were accordingly set for them towards evening, both of which were discharged by them. The one was well hit, so that he died, but in consequence of the thick bush and the number of holes in the rocky mountains, he could not be found. The other one became so afraid that he did not dare to escape over the sandy downs, but swam through the bay to the "Schapen" Island and thence to the eastern shore, and when the sheep were taken off that Island 8 were missing, and when a search was made, the footprints of the lion were discovered as well as 4 dead sheep, so that he very likely devoured the 4 others.

Regarding the bartering of cattle, the Superintendent declared that he had done what he could, but that from the three small Kockoquas kraals in the neighbourhood he had not been able to obtain more than 40 sheep and 4 cattle, and from the rest of the Hottentoots of this bay 140 sheep and 10 cattle, of which he had sent 117 sheep to the Cape, as well as 7 cattle, retaining 13 to be sent on later. . . . The meat of the three cattle killed by the lions was (with the hides) delivered to the Quartermaster of the *Bruydegom*, in order to be salted down and conveyed to the Cape.

As the Superintendent, Pieter Siegfriedt, had heard that war had been declared between France and the States, he wished to know how he was to act in case any French vessels visited the Bay, as his instructions only referred to times of peace.

The freemen are not wanting in zeal in throwing up a certain embankment at the Salt River; the sailors of the *Saxenburgh* are equally busy in making a similar fort behind the Lion Mountain. Both are nearly finished, which is a great satisfaction to us.

The signal flags to notify the approach of foreign ships were also sent to their destination.

To-day we began to remove the hood from the watchhouse called the "Houte Wambaas," according to Resolution of the 6th instant, and fortify it properly against an enemy.

September 15th.—The quarrymen to-day commenced the earthen curtain between the Seapoint (already finished) and the (new) section, but as they required some material which could only be prepared to-morrow, they did not advance rapidly.

September 16th.—As the buoy in the bay had on account of the weakness of the chain and anchor been once more thrown on shore, it was again properly repaired, supplied with stronger ground tackle and placed in its old position.

The burgher battery was completely finished to-day, and accordingly crowned with a green wreath. Later we shall consider in what manner it shall be armed.

And whereas the new Fort has not yet been furnished with the necessary provisions for human sustenance, it was decided to clear some small houses near the Church, formerly used for storing the material of the workmen in, and now occupied by the master mason and others of his trade, in order to store in them the aforesaid articles, so that in case of an attack by an enemy, which may Almighty God prevent, they may be of some use to us.

September 17th.—The *Bruijdegom* returns from Saldanha Bay with 16 casks of fine salted breams, harders, and other fish, for the slaves and convicts. Thus a large quantity of pork and meat will be saved.

September 18th.—Sunday. Violent south-easter, which blew down the flagstaff.

September 19th.—To our great surprise we were told this morning that the escaped and recaptured vagabond, Johan Tenger, had once more put into practice his schemes, and by means of secret assistance, had rid himself of the fetters on hands and feet, and during the past night escaped over the walls and fled inland, where he will no doubt be more careful in hiding himself than previously, and as trouble may be expected from that rascal, another edict once more summoning him to appear, was issued by bell from the balcony, and the public were warned under severe penalties from harbouring him.

September 20th.—Six cases of French brandy having been seized by the watch on the beach, and claimed by no one, notwithstanding the Public Notice, were by resolution of the Council declared forfeited, and after two had been handed to the Fiscal as his share, the rest were publicly sold at Rds. 35 each—one-third was given to the Fiscal, and one-third to the informer. The rest went to the Company. This afternoon the Hon: Van Breugel and some Councillors drove out to the country to inspect the burgher battery, as well as the corn granary and the “Rondebosje.” They returned in the evening.

As a certain inn keeper had sold off some casks of Liege beer, and made a good profit from them, so that he had asked for four more, Commissioners were sent on board the *Saxenburgh* to take that quantity out of her, as well as some provisions, such as biscuits, Spanish wine, &c., which we are in need of. A portion was landed during the evening.

September 21st.—In our council meeting, held usually every fortnight, assisted by representatives of the burghers, three freemen appeared, who earn their living by cutting fuel for the Company. They complained of the loss suffered by them yesterday when their little house in the forest was laid in ashes with all their effects. They could not tell the cause, but greatly suspected the escaped convict Johan Tengens, and as they had been bereft of all that they possessed, they urgently requested to be provided with clothing and food on credit, offering as security their earnings to be paid in monthly until the whole has been refunded. The Council decided according to the maxim of the Company to make the advances, and to subtract the amount from their earnings as circumstances permitted.

September 22nd.—The Hon: Van Breugel drove out to the back of the Lion Mountain to inspect the earthen battery there, now completed.

Just vengeance may for a time connive with evil doers, whilst fate supplies pleasant help for the purpose, but she never refrains from vindicating herself, or objecting to be a tool to the wheel of fortune. This the prison-breaker Johan Tenger experienced, who had hitherto hidden himself about the Lion Mountain, where he met a certain herd, whom he asked to go to the New Fort and request his late comrade, a soldier of the garrison, to meet him during the evening at a certain spot, as he had to tell him something of importance. This the herd undertook to do, the fugitive promising him half a dollar for his pains. He thereupon left, but the herd, having more discretion than the fugitive, and still mindful of the punishment suffered by him about two years ago for a somewhat similar offence, reported the matter to the Council, and

undertook to trap the bird. The net was accordingly spanned by the Fiscal, assisted by some armed soldiers, guided by the said herd, so that with very little trouble the bird was caught, and about 9 o'clock in the evening brought into the Fortress and placed in a safe cage from which he cannot easily escape.

September 23rd.—As the outward bound flute may be hourly expected, and the flagstaff has been blown down, so that no proper signals can be hoisted, which the approaching vessels may consider suspicious, it was decided, as no suitable native spar was at hand, to erect a fatherland mast. This was done to-day.

September 24th.—The prisoner Jan Tenger being examined, stoutly denied the theft of sheep formerly confessed by him, saying that he had stolen no more than one sheep, and that he had merely confessed to the theft of the two others in order to screen the freemen who had harboured him, and he did not wish to divulge their names by being brought to the torture, with other similar subterfuges, which however deserve no credit, and will be later on properly investigated.

September 25th.—Sunday. Divine Service twice. As usual, after the second service, Parade was held within the Fort. Weather warm and calm.

September 26th.—The mechanics busy at repairing the “Houten Wambaas,” and doing their daily other work, whilst the soldiers were busy at the construction of the Castle.

September 27th.—The *Swaantje* despatched to Dassen Island for sheep. In the evening meeting it was decided to place two four-pounders on the battery behind the Lion Mountain, two six-pounders on the one at the river, and three ten-pounders on the watch house “Houte Wambaes,” and garrison them with a few men.

September 29th.—The Hon. Van Breugel proceeds to Rustenburg to see what progress the carpenters have been making there at the felloe before the house, and to make a general inspection. He returned in the evening.

1st October.—If we are to believe a superstition general among the lower class here, (het gemeene volck) that when on Saturdays or Sundays many sea winds are blowing, and misty dark clouds appear, such weather generally brings vessels in—in that case our hopes would be infallible, not only because that kind of weather has been with us since yesterday, but is still continuing.

The Hottentoots brought us an old lean cow, which we refused as she was worth almost nothing.

ISBRAND GOSKE.

1672.

October 2nd.—Sunday. Vessel in sight. After the morning service Mr. Van Breugel and some Councillors proceeded to the back of the Lion Mountain to have a good look at her. On his return he ordered the open boat to be filled with vegetables and sheep as refreshments for the new arrival, which, however, in consequence of a S. E. breeze which had sprung up, was unable to reach the roadstead. The Fiscal was accordingly sent on board, and from a preconcerted signal (the firing of a few guns), we were informed that she was the *Zuijd Polsbroeck*, having on board Governor Godske and the family of Sieur Breugel, which caused great joy, and as the S. Easter had subsided a little, His Honour and two Councillors proceeded on board. Shortly afterwards, however, the wind once more commenced to blow furiously, so that there was no chance of landing, and accordingly the soldiers and the burghers, who had been under arms, were dismissed towards evening. At ten o'clock, however, some guns were fired by the *Saxenburgh*, and an hour later two sloops reached the jetty, contrary to expectation bringing with them on shore the Governor and the Secretary. During a temporary calm, they had left the *Zuijd Polsbroeck* and safely reached the land. The vessel had left Amsterdam on the 30th April last, and had called nowhere. She had lost 18 men and brought 60 sick.

October 3rd.—The Governor orders the quartermaster of *de Bruydegom* to take on board a quantity of water and refreshments for the *Zuijd Polsbroeck*, which had on account of the wind retired to Robben Island. He also took a written order to the Superintendent on the Island to provide the ship daily, as long as she remained there, with refreshments and sheep. Afterwards the Governor went to inspect the new Castle. In the meanwhile the merchant, Sieur Breugel and the councillors who had accompanied him had left the vessel, and after a long and difficult row, finally landed behind the Lion Mountain, and afterwards reached the Fort, so that the number of the Council is once more complete.

In the evening the Governor was present for the first time at the Council Board, and after having briefly explained the character of his office, and why he had been sent hither by the Directors, he was once more welcomed, and promised the respect and obedience of all the members, with the wish that he might have a happy administration. Thereupon he ordered that on Wednesday next, all the burghers were to be summoned to a general meeting in order to appear under arms together with the military, and be present at his induction.

October 4th.—The S. Easter still preventing the *Polsbroeck* from reaching the anchorage. By order of the Governor all the

1672.

carts sent out from the Fatherland in various ships were put together so as to undertake the fortification works with more zeal. At the same time a quantity of clinkers, which for want of room, had been packed below the newly made Sea Point on the beach, were removed to within the Fort, where they would not be exposed to so many eyes and hands.

October 5th.—S. Easter continuing. About 10 o'clock the drums were beaten for the rendezvous, within as well as outside the Fort among the burghers, and shortly afterwards the soldiers, followed by the burghers, appeared fully armed before the Governor's residence, when His Honour was introduced to them all by the merchant, Sieur Breugel, and accepted with general acclamation. Then three salvos with muskets were fired, and after that, some guns, when the various officers were treated to a glass of wine, and the garrison with a dram (soopie), and thereupon dismissed. The workmen were excused from work, and excepting making up the books, &c., nothing of importance was done.

October 6th.—The S. Easter continuing. The Governor goes round inspecting everything.

October 7th.—The *Polsbroeck* reaches the anchorage and salutes the Fort with a few guns which were replied to. Two of the freemen's boats arrive from St. Helena Bay with salt fish.

The Governor engages some 30 Hottentoots who were generally running idle near the Fort, to carry on earth for the new one, on condition that they were to receive two full meals of rice daily, a "soopie," and a bit of tobacco. They at once set to work.

October 8th.—Busy balancing the books. Four more casks of Liege beer landed from the *Saxenburgh* for the privileged tappers. The boat sent to the *Polsbroeck* for some furniture of the Governor, and of Sieur Breugel.

As usual the garrison ceased working this (Saturday) morning, and the Governor had them exercised in arms, as working the whole week at the fortifications, no other time was left them for the purpose. They accordingly also received their full day's pay.

October 9th (Sunday).—After the second sermon the usual Parade took place, and the Governor personally inspected the fire and side arms of the men, and gave orders for the repairing of such as were unfit for use.

October 10th.—Fine rain from the N.W. Bartered 5 fine sheep from the Gounoma Hottentoots. After evening prayers, it was decided in Council, in accordance with secret orders from the Directors, brought hither by the Governor, to detain the *Polsbroeck* here, and transship her cargo for Batavia into the *Saxenburgh*.

October 11th.—The little *Vliegende Zwaen* arrives, and reports that she had transferred 133 sheep from Dassen Island to Saldanha Bay, and would have made more trips for the purpose, but that they had encountered such a severe N.W. gale behind them, that they had not dared to do so, so that she was obliged to make direct for the Cape.

Some ships' carpenters landed from the *Zuijd Polsbroeck* in order to put together the large sloop received from home, as through want of other servicable craft she is much required.

The boats busy transferring the cargo of the *Polsbroeck* into the *Saxenburgh*.

October 12th.—In the meeting of Council, which takes place with the burgher Councillors every fortnight, it was on the proposition of the Governor, in order to prevent many suspicious doings, decided to introduce the old custom to make an exact return every month of the cattle of the freemen. Accordingly the Fiscal and the burgher Councillor, Sieur Diemer, shall next Friday for the first time take session for the purpose. And that no one may plead ignorance, or leave his home at that time, the court messenger shall even to-day be sent out with a written notice, warning all freemen to make and submit on the day mentioned a list of the number of their families, slaves, lands, &c., so that the Commissioners may be served with thorough and good information.

Weather so cold and rainy that little or nothing could be done to the fortification works.

October 13th.—Heavy downpours during the night. The boats cannot transship the cargo from the *Polsbroeck*. The soldiers only able to carry on some earth to the new Fort. The masons compelled to desist from work during the forenoon. In the meanwhile the sailors warmed themselves by removing the rice from the outer store to the one adjoining the shop (winkel) within the hornworks, as it has to be emptied completely for storing other coarse and voluminous goods for which it is very convenient.

The Commissioners who will sit to-morrow, receive a deed of interdiction forbidding all from cutting off the ears of the sheep, and any longer keeping such whose ears had been previously cut off among their troops, on pain of forfeiting the same, as it has been found that such suspicious practices do not tend to the welfare of the public.

October 14th.—The Fiscal and the burgher Councillor Diemer, commissioned to make the burgher returns, return to the fort, this evening with an exact list which shewed that there were 64 freemen and 53 Dutch servants (knechts), the largest number of whom was provided with muskets, cutlasses and swords. Their

1672

cattle consisted of 6,172 half bred sheep and 486 draught oxen, cows and calves, 38 horses of which 24 were trained for the saddle, and 109 pigs. Among the sheep was a large number, whose ears had been cut off, yea! nearly whole troops marked in such a manner as was not at all desirable. Besides the 64 freemen, they had also returned 39 married women, among the latter some widows, in all blest with 65 children. There were also 63 male and female slaves with their children, so that compared with previous years there seems to have been a fair increase.

October 15th.—Heavy S. Easter. The bay unnavigable for boats. The neighbouring Hottentoots of Schacher's kraals brought us five sheep for sale, which we bought. Provisions weighed and prepared for the garrison at Saldanha Bay. The *Swaentje* to convey them thither and after that transfer the rest of the sheep on Dassen Island to the same bay.

October 16th.—In the afternoon the soldiers on the *Polsbroeck* are landed. Eighty all told and in fair health, but mostly undrilled, who will be in need of much exercise. After the second service, the drum was beaten for the common parade, and the *Swaentje* left for Dassen Island, taking with her the sergeant Pieter Daey with orders to him and the skipper from the Governor that as soon as the sheep had been removed from Dassen Island to the Bay, they were to sail to St. Helena Bay to investigate its suitability for ships, as well as the quality and fertility of the soil, and thus take in the whole character of the place, making a small drawing of it, with a written description, and sending it to us in the form of a report, that we may be able to see what the place really is, which is commended so highly.

Arrival over land in charge of 2 soldiers and some Hottentoots 125 sheep transferred from Dassen Island to Saldanha Bay. Seven had died on the way.

In the evening meeting it was decided, as ordered by the Directors, to take possession of the Hottentoots Holland, and for that purpose to send in advance thither Sergeant Cruydhoff with 12 or 14 men, in order to erect there a dwelling house and stables, as in consequence of the want of pasture for the Company's cattle, which is from year to year becoming poorer in this valley, we shall be obliged to depart thither with most of our cattle. In the meanwhile we shall also endeavour to realise the Directors' object by despatching thither for agricultural purposes some of the colonists resident here, as soon as an opportunity offers, with the hope that when once the work is commenced, it will make good progress. . . .

October 17th.—A stiff W. S. W. breeze, but more Northerly on

the roadstead. The soldiers exercised in arms, and the sailors busy putting in order the rice and equipment stores, and taking in water, &c., for the vessels.

October 18th.—Hard weather during the night from the W. S. W. with rain, which continued the whole day. The *Vliegende Zwaan* obliged to return to Table Bay in consequence. She had left for Dassen Island the day before yesterday, but been becalmed off Robben Island.

As for reasons the works at the new fortifications have for some time been suspended, the military were as usual exercised under arms. The rain however often hindered them.

Sergeant Cruythoff, appointed to take possession of Hottentoots Holland, proceeded thither to-day with bag and baggage.

October 19th.—Same severe weather. Arrival of the ship *Vryheyt* from Amsterdam. Had left the 6th June in company of the hooker *D'Egel*. Had one death, and brought 2 sick. In their letter of the 3rd of the same month, the Directors mentioned that not only the French and English Fleets had united, but that our Fleet had also gone to sea, and had placed about a mile of water between itself and the enemy, so that every moment a battle might be expected, whilst the officers of the *Vryheyt*, which had in consequence of adverse winds, been obliged to tack about in the N. Sea for two days, had heard a heavy cannonading, which has been very likely the threatened battle. God grant that the next ship may bring us the result. The officers also reported that the flute *Pattenburgh* had been spoken eight days ago under the land here. She had many sick, and already lost 14 or 15 men. God grant her a safe arrival here.

October 20th.—The two soldiers who arrived here on Sunday last with the ship from Saldanha Bay return thither with a letter to the Superintendent there, ordering him to be quicker in sending hither the sheep transferred to him from Dassen Island, and not to keep them longer than two days in order to rest them, as the death of the seven can only be ascribed to the poor and changed pasturage in the said bay.

As the *Vryheyt* has on board 300 casks of mum for India, many of which are worm-eaten and half empty, it was decided to transship them into the *Saxenburgh*; for that purpose two Commissioners will proceed on board to-morrow.

Contract made with the ex-burgher Councillor Mostaert, who undertakes to supply fuel for the large lime kiln at Rds. 105 for each furnace. This will be a cheaper arrangement for the Company than if it collected the wood itself.

October 21st.—N.W. breeze. The soldiers drilled. Court of Justice held this morning, when the vagabond and prison-breaker

1672

Jan Tenger, of Maagdenburgh, who arrived here last year in the *Buuren* as soldier, was condemned to be scourged, after that his side-arms were to be broken before his feet, and finally he was to be expelled from the service, and with a halter round his neck and a sheepskin on his head to stand a whole day exposed under the gallows, and after that to be ironed for 10 years, and serve as a convict at the public works, with confiscation of all the pay which he still has to his credit. The sentence to be carried out to-morrow.

The *Bruydegom* being old and very much worn, is hauled on shore for repairs.

October 22nd.—Arrival of the hooker *D'Egel* with 21 men. Had left Enckhuysen on the 6th June and brought a healthy crew.

October 23rd (Sunday).—Arrival of the flute *Cattenburgh*, of Zealand. Had left on the 23rd May with 222 men, of whom 16 had died. Brought 60 sick, who will overcrowd our hospital not a little. Brings information from the Committee for Secret Affairs at the Hague that the hooker *Bulckensteyn* had been captured by the English, and we were in her stead to send another small vessel direct to Surat with copies of the letters sent in the *Bulckensteyn*. After the usual afternoon Parade within the old Fort, the Governor, accompanied by some Councillors, proceeded to the house "Rustenburgh," in order to inspect its condition, and the adjoining garden, and on the way thither also the little burgher fort at the Salt River.

October 24th.—Arrival of the *Vliegende Swaen* from Dassen Island with 133 sheep. The N.W. wind however too strong for the animals to be landed.

Our soldiers once more exercised at the usual rendezvous, but a heavy shower obliged them to desist, and return to barracks. A portion of them are engaged quarrying stone close below the old Fort and near the houses of the freemen, where there is a good hope of obtaining a fairly large quantity.

October 25th.—The sheep landed from the *Swaentje*. The ship's carpenters busy at the new sloop on the stocks, and with repairing the boat of the *Polsbroeck*, which had been seriously damaged in the last gale.

October 26th.—As we have at present no vessels for fetching shells, the one being repaired, and the other employed in transferring the cargo of the *Polsbraeck* into the *Saxenburgh*, some of the slaves and convicts from India who are unfit for any other work, were sent to the beach behind the Lion Mountain in order to gather together all the shells washed up there, in order to be used, even should the quantity not be much, for our present needs.

Twenty half-aums of brandy and some casks of biscuits and meal were landed from the *Cattenburgh*.

During the afternoon the soldiers of the *Vryheyt*, more than 80 in number, fairly healthy and armed men, appeared in the Fort for exercise. They were found to be very unpractised.

October 27th.—The *Swaantje* returns to Dassen Island with supplies. She will convey the rest of the sheep there to Saldanha Bay, and also takes orders for the Superintendent, Pieter Daey, to journey thence overland to St. Helena Bay in order to explore that part of the coast.

The Hottentoo, Captain Schacher, and some of his dependents appeared at the Fort, in order as usual to obtain a bit of tobacco and a dram, but he was refused as an impertinent and shameless beggar.

October 28th.—The *Swaentje* leaves. The soldiers of the *Cattenburgh*, 43 in number, landed to-day, a poor and miserable lot, and moreover entirely unpractised in drill.

October 29th.—The hooker *Egel* selected to convey to Batavia the letters brought by the *Cattenburgh*. (See October 23rd.) To avoid falling into the hands of the enemy, she will make straight to Ceylon or the Malabar Coast, as the monsoon, which would enable her to pass east of the Maldives, is over.

October 30th (Sunday).—The Day of the Lord kept in a Christian manner. During the afternoon the usual Parade was held.

October 31st.—Departure of the *Saxenburgh* to Batavia. Some Hottentoes of Gounema's kraals and relatives of the five convicts on Robben Island this day offered the Governor ten beautiful choice head of cattle as a ransom for the five, but they could obtain neither audience nor their wish.

November 1st.—Sergeant Hans Michiel Calmbach, who had formerly been Superintendent on Robben Island, sent thither in the open boat to bring back some shells, and to inquire whether there was a certain kind of stone on that Island from which lime might be burnt.

To-day was brought in the skin of a lion shot by the Company's cattle herd at Hout Bay, for which he received the usual reward. This undaunted bird of prey (rooffvogel) had dared during the night to creep over the roof of the said herd's hut into the kraal, and there destroy 4 head of cattle, which however he had to pay for with his life.

Our works are progressing. The little vessel on the stocks will be launched in a few days' time.

1672.

A large number of evil disposed soldiers, when the usual signal was given by the bell at one o'clock to return to their work, gathered together under the gate of the hornworks, with the intention of obtaining before going to work, and according to custom on this first day of the month, their board money and rations of rice. And when the Sergeant ordered them to leave the place and go to their work, as the distribution had been postponed until 4 o'clock, they together objected to it, and called out that they first wanted their rice and board money. But as such a threatened tyranny might finally end in rebellion, two or three of the fellows were, by order of the Governor, arrested by the Lieutenant, and the rest driven from their position. These will by further examination have to point out the principal ringleaders, that the latter may be punished as a deterrent example to others.

November 2nd.—In order not to let the earthen walls of this old fortress collapse entirely, and be converted into a rubbish heap, and to keep it in a posture of defence as much as possible so long as the new Fort remains uncompleted, it was decided to-day to let some of the garrison dig out some new earth and others bring them on in carts to the aforesaid little Fort, as we intend again, like last year, to cover the two ruined points and curtains with an earthen wall, the workmen only to receive one "mutsje" (liqueur glass) of arrack each for their work.

So many shells have been gathered behind Lion Mountain that we were able to set alight one of the smaller kilns.

A certain notary, who had arrived in the *Vryheyt* with his family, and wished to remain here was at his request admitted as such by the Council, in order to practise among the freemen, as well as for the Council. The solemnisation will follow latter on.

November 4th.—The boat returns from the Island with the Sergeant (see November 1st), and brings some of the limestone, with which a trial will be made.

The new boat, the *Oyster*, is now so far finished that she will soon be launched. The Fiscal and Dispenser to proceed to Hout Bay to-morrow to count the cattle, and see what is occurring there and at the Steenberg.

November 5th (Sunday).—A woodcutter brings in the skin of a nearly full-grown tiger, shot by him yesterday. He receives the usual reward.

Whereas some days ago two soldiers, named Arent Reoloffsz: and Frans Cuijper, have without any reason absented themselves from the Fort, and we have been told yesterday that they broke into a freeman's house in the country, from which they took a musket, some powder and lead, a bag of rice and a kettle; the Fiscal, being about to leave for Houtbay, is charged with

investigating the matter carefully, with authority that should he fall in with these vagabonds, and they should offer resistance, to wound them with shot in the legs; having beforehand however done his utmost to get them into his hands with kind words.

November 6th (Sunday).—The hooker *Egel* leaves. After Divine service the usual Parade was held. Some Hottentoots arrive with sheep from Schacher's kraals. The barter deferred until to-morrow.

November 7th.—The Commissioners return from Hout Bay, and report that affairs there were in a satisfactory state, and that the number of cattle there was (?), for which the pastures there were still fairly abundant. They had however not been able to obtain any news about the soldiers who had deserted, but had ordered the woodcutters there, as well as the herds at the Steenberg, not to render them any assistance whatever, but to endeavour to capture them. This they had promised to do. Some sheep brought in by the Hottentoots for barter were refused as too poor and bad.

November 8th.—The *Swaentje* returns from Saldanha Bay, where she had been cleaned. Before that however she had conveyed thither 146 sheep from Dassen Island; 19 Hottentoo sheep bartered there had died.

Sergeant Pieter Dhaey also returned with her, and submitted the following

REPORT

regarding the constitution of St. Helena Bay, Bergh River, and adjoining territory, whither he had been ordered by the Hon: Goske to proceed, in order to explore those regions. This he effected on the 3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th November:

Primo.—I sounded the bay all along its southern side, observed on land on the same side, as far as the mountains which are situated about a mile from the river, all the points and inlets, and laid the whole down in a chart herewith submitted, but the higher I ascended the river the smaller it became. All around were sandy flats, covered with cripple bush.

Secundo.—The river has a narrow entrance, 40 or 60 roods in breadth, with a low beach on either side of 40 or 45 roods, over which the sea, as well as the river, flows at high water. On the N. side, behind the low beach, there runs along the river, about 30 or 40 roods in breadth, and a quarter mile long, a sand-down of 20 or 24 feet high, having on the South the river and on the North the sea, and suitable for the erection of a Fort before the river. The latter runs in a sinuous course through low land

1672.

from one to three feet high, and is surrounded, as it were, with a dyke. These low lands have mostly brackish soil, consisting partly of clay, partly sandy clay and brown earth, with beautiful grass and reed lands, which were still damp and wet. All these low lands are in the rainy season covered by the river, and we observed that the dry reeds had been washed on shore to a height of fully five feet. There are also divers salt pans there, containing beautiful white salt, which comes to perfection during the dry season. The breadth of the river is very unequal. In front the mouth is certainly the narrowest, higher up there is a very broad reach, and after that the river is about 20 or 30 roods broad, and further 10 roods and less. Above, it runs fairly quickly; below, it has ebb and flood from the sea. During the rainy season the water right into the bay is fresh (soet), and in the dry season about as much as five miles upwards salt. At present I found one mile salt, after that brackish, and two miles further on sweet water.

Tertio.—On the N. side there is a very large plain, fully 10 miles broad, as far as a certain mountain range, behind which the Namaqua Hottentots are encamped, as pointed out in the chart, though not placed at the proper distance. This plain seems, like the S. side, to be sandy and covered with cripple bush.

Quarto.—There is no remarkable quantity of shells in that bay from which to burn lime, but stone fit for quarrying, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles distant from the river in the mountains. For ten miles up the river no timber was to be seen. Thus passed on the above date in the year 1672. Cabo de Boâ Esperanca.—(Signed) PIETER DAER.

This afternoon Corporal Laurens Visser and another horseman were despatched to Hottentots Holland to inspect the place, and see how everything was going on there since Sergeant Kruythoff had taken possession, as we fear that as we have not heard anything from him, notwithstanding that he had been strictly urged to notify his arrival there three or four days after it occurred, some misfortune may have befallen him.

November 9th.—The old Fort being repaired, and men busy quarrying stone. A small shed erected, in which to store the lime to protect it from the weather and being carried away clandestinely from the kilns.

November 10th.—Two soldiers who had the day before yesterday arrived here with sheep from Saldanha Bay, sent back thither with a letter to the Superintendent, urging him to continue the cattle trade with the Hottentots.

Corporal Laurens returns from Hottentots Holland with a letter from Sergeant Cruythoff, mentioning that everything was in a

desirable state there, and that he had already begun building a kraal and dwelling-house. The kraal had been placed on the N. side, 128 yards long and 50 yards broad, and the house would be 56 feet long and 20 feet broad. The timber for the kraal had been cut in the river, and suitable timber existed in the forest also, which would become serviceable when more houses are being built. The fields were in the same flourishing condition as had been witnessed before. This the oral report of the corporal confirmed. The reason why the sergeant had not, according to orders, notified his arrival, was that he had requested a certain freeman who was on his way back from a seacow hunt, to mention it at the Fort.

November 11th.—The new vessel, the *Oyster*, having been launched two or three days ago, was provided with mast, sails and rigging taken from the *Polsbroeck*. Three of our residents having a few days ago proceeded to the “Bergh Rivier” to shoot sea cows, came to-day to complain of the hostile treatment received by them from the Hottentoo Captain, Gounema and his tribe, on the first day of their arrival there. The said Captain, accompanied by 40 or 50 men of his kraals, armed with assegays, arrows and bows, had come upon and robbed them of rice, powder and lead and tobacco, yea! even of the pot of food standing on the fire, with the threat that if they only uttered one word against their doings, they would cut their throats, besides committing other acts of hostility. To-morrow these persons will be more fully questioned, when the affair will be further investigated.

November 12th.—During the afternoon the men were exercised under arms; in the morning they had been busy with their usual work of quarrying stone, &c.

It having been reported that the three deserters were in hiding somewhere near the Salt River, a sergeant and some soldiers were despatched thither with the pretext of having been sent out to hunt, but with orders to look well around them for the vagabonds, and endeavour to capture them. They were unsuccessful however, and returned about 9 o'clock.

November 13th (Sunday).—The Lord's Day celebrated with two services, after which the usual Parade was held.

A certain free fisher having been accused of intercourse with the fugitives, was examined by the Governor, and found not quite innocent of the charge. He was accordingly threatened with the loss of his privileges, if he did not succeed in capturing them. That same evening he accordingly brought in one, and declared that he knew nothing of the other.

The fugitive having been examined, acknowledged, amongst other matters, the places where they had been in hiding, and

1672.

undertook to show them to us. Accordingly he was sent out this evening with the sergeant and some soldiers to endeavour to find and capture the other.

November 14th.—This morning, when the gates were opened, the sergeant and men returned, having been occupied the whole night in searching for the fugitive, but without success. They had found no one on the spots indicated, notwithstanding the recaptured prisoner had often whistled, and called according to the signalling arranged between them.

As the vessels have finished taking in water and ballast, and not to let the men remain idle, the latter were ordered, whenever the weather was favourable, to collect the loose stones on the rocks below the sanddowns and bring the same in the boats towards the jetty, whence they are to be conveyed in wagons to the beach, as they are very much wanted for the new fortification-works, thus to a great extent saving wagon carriage.

Arrangements made to put on the stocks the boat sent out in parts from home.

November 16th.—To prevent the harbouring and rendering of any assistance to deserters and fugitives, both Company's as well freemen's servants and slaves, in which the freemen have for some time indulged to an excessive degree (notwithstanding the rigorous interdicts which have from time to time been issued against it), it was decided to-day in Council to make all the freemen declare on oath that henceforth they will not render the least assistance or sustenance to such vagabonds, or give them any shelter, directly or indirectly, but on the contrary that they will do their best by every possible means to capture them and deliver them to justice, as we are of opinion that, except by this expedient, no other course is open to us to rid ourselves of this anxiety, as the service of the Company and the interests of the public urgently require it, especially at the present time, for various weighty reasons.

For this purpose a placcaat will at once be drafted forbidding every one, without exception, on pain of corporal or capital punishment, to harbour or feed any deserters, fugitives, or other evildoers, but on the contrary urging them to do their best to capture them. Thus we hope that this evil will once for all be uprooted, and every one urged to do his duty.

November 17th.—The boat *Oyster* has her trial trip in a S.E. wind, and is found to listen well to her rudder, so that she will be of great service with our changeable winds. In broad daylight to-day a lion attacked a herd of cattle at a farmer's homestead, about an hour's distance from the Fort, and devoured one. Truly a bold act in the presence of the herd and so near the homestead.

November 18th.—The placeaat affixed to-day with the usual solemnities, after having been publicly read from the balcony.

The surrounding of the old Fort with an earthen embankment is progressing. The *Bruydegom* is also being repaired.

November 19th (Saturday).—The soldiers, having worked until 12 o'clock, were drilled in the afternoon. Some of the condemned and some sailors, however, were kept at the works.

As last Wednesday the Council, assisted by burgher Councillors, resolved, in order to prevent the harbouring and feeding of the fugitives, to demand an oath from every resident in the settlement to refrain from doing so, and as 2 members were deputed in order to confer with the principal and most influential of the settlers, in order to obtain their opinion, the latter, not without reason submitted, though they had no personal objection to the resolution, that such an oath, especially among the common folks and their servants, would be taken much too rashly, as through a wrong compassionateness it (the oath) might be broken, if not directly by themselves, at least indirectly by theirs; and that besides, some through forgetfulness and disregard of what they might supply to such needy fugitives, not even fathoming the bottom of their conscience, might make themselves perjured and infamous. Hence it was decided, in consequence of this report, to consider it sufficient to leave the matter for the present in abeyance, and have the placeaat against the offenders carried out according to its contents.

November 20th (Sunday).—The two usual services. Parade in the afternoon. Letter received from Sergeant Cruythoff from Hottentoots Holland, stating that that territory was showing itself more and more fruitful. He had already, near the mountains, at various rivulets, and as far as the great Watershed, discovered nine thickets, in which he believed good timber existed for house-building. The kraal for the cattle had been made, also the dwelling-house except the thatch. He also asked for some necessary provisions, which will be sent to him by first opportunity.

November 21st.—Whereas, notwithstanding the rigorous placeaat issued against the fugitive drummer, Arent Roeloffsz., a few days ago, he has not yet made his appearance, it was this day resolved, by means of notices affixed everywhere, to declare him an outlaw, and to offer a reward of Rds. 25 to him who delivers him alive or dead into the hands of justice. Towards evening the Provost and some Caffers left for the country in order to spend 3 or 4 days in the forest and other hiding places of the fugitive.

November 22nd.—The men who arrived from Hottentoots Holland a few days ago return thither to-day with a letter to Sergeant Cruythoff to continue the work there with all diligence.

1672.

The rebels and mutineers mentioned on the 1st instant were tried to-day, and as many unpardonable deeds of great consequence in these troublous times were proved against them, four of them were condemned to draw lots for life or for death, and that the two who drew the lots of life were to be scourged and for a considerable number of years condemned to labour at the public works, whilst those who drew the lots of death were to be punished with the halter on the gallows. The 5th was to mount the "strappado" and the 6th to ride the wooden horse for three days.

November 23rd.—Heavy S. Easter, impeding the works at the old Fort, the earth brought on being blown away, so that the workmen could hardly keep their eyes open.

Some cattle herds brought us the skin of a lion shot by them last night, after having destroyed two heads of cattle, and eaten most of the meat before his departure.

The wife of the burgher Thieleman Hendriex told us to-day that her servant had been at the "Witteboomen" yesterday, where he had met and conversed with the fugitive drummer, and, on taking leave, had agreed to meet on the same spot to-morrow, when he would bring him some food. Time will show whether this will not lead to his apprehension.

November 24th.—The skipper of the *Cattendijck* reported that he had found at the Island St. Vincent a French buss named *St. Clement*, of Dieppe, about 30 or 40 lasts big, engaged in catching turtle. She was armed with two small guns and some muskets, and carried 16 men. For the reasons given in the resolution adopted on board at the time, she was not attacked as an enemy. But as this course pursued by the officers is not satisfactorily explained, the matter will be further inquired into.

About 2 o'clock in the afternoon the fugitive drummer was, by the management of a sergeant and 3 or 4 soldiers, who had been sent out for the purpose, captured in the thicket at the "Witteboomen," and brought into the Fort. He had surrendered voluntarily and without resistance, and still had with him the stolen musket and some powder.

November 25th.—This morning at 8 o'clock the Council of Justice met, in order to review the case of the criminals mentioned on the 22nd, and to notify to them the hour of their death, which was shortly afterwards done. At the same time they were given the services of the minister of the Divine Word to console and admonish them.

Letter received from the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, mentioning that the Soeswaas Hottentoots were encamped three hours beyond the Botte Rivier, and that, in order to comply with our instructions to fetch one of their captains, named Claas, he had

sent off two of his men. The letter was accordingly accompanied by 4 Hottentoots, of the aforesaid tribe, who, having been under the safeguard of some burghers, who had been out sea-cow shooting, had arrived at Hottentoots Holland, having been expressly sent by Claas to invite us to the cattle trade, as they were inclined that way and were abundantly supplied with cattle, which formed the greater portion of the articles brought with them.

November 26th.—At noon (12 o'clock) the execution of the criminals took place in proper order, two, having drawn the lots of death, were hanged, viz., Jeremias Brommelo, of Lingem, and Martin Clockenaer, of Straalsont, who came here as soldiers, the one in the *Generale Vrede* and the other in the *Stermeer*. May the Merciful God be gracious unto their souls. We trust that this example will be a deterrent to others, and cause no similar offence in future.

The soldiers on the ships, being mostly untrained, were drilled during the afternoon, and the rest of the men kept busy at the fortification works.

After sunset the bodies of the two men were taken down from the gallows, and buried behind the kraal.

November 27th (Sunday).—The usual services held, followed later by the usual parade.

November 28th.—The open boat proceeds to the Island for shells, and takes with her 2 soldiers condemned to labour there at the public works for some time.

The *Express*, which arrived here a few days ago from Hottentoots Holland, goes back to-day.

Decided in the evening meeting to commence a barter with the Soeswaas, and appoint for the purpose the provisional assistant, Jan van der Meursch, as commander, besides a corporal and 10 men, who will take with them such wares as may be deemed necessary.

November 29th.—The Soeswaas Hottentoots obliged to remain here in order to await the departure of the cattle barterers, as they are afraid of the Cape Hottentoots, so that they are not only hardly able to go outside the Fort, but dare not return home alone.

November 30th.—Council meeting held this morning, in which it was decided to carry out the exploit at St. Helena without delay, and to employ for the purpose the flute *Cattenburgh* and the little vessel *de Vliegende Swaen*, as no dependence can be placed on the arrival of the *Hellevoetsluis*. These vessels are to leave not later than 10 days hence. As chief commander of the expedition was appointed Jacob de Geus, skipper of the *Vryheyt*, with the title of skipper-commander (see Resolution).

1672.

As we find that the tanning business brings no profit to the Company, we have decided to lease it to a certain free shoemaker for f (?) per annum, against which he shall receive the hides of all the cattle killed by the Company, and sell them as he pleases. Accordingly the master tanner and sergeant, Jan du Pree, who has been purposely sent out for this work, shall be sent to Batavia via St. Helena, as he has nothing to do here.

Late in the evening two messengers arrive from Hottentots Holland and report that according to orders given to the superintendent there, they had found the kraals of the Caynouquas or Soeswaes at the "Botterivier," who were very anxious to trade. For that purpose they had come that distance. However, their chief, Claas, excused himself from accompanying them this time.

According to report, the Hessequas were also expected within a few days at the "Baccaley Plaats" (fighting place) about 25 miles further inland, who also were inclined to trade with us, so that to all appearances we shall have a good traffic. It is to be wished that we could obtain about 200 head of cattle, as this would considerably reduce the expense of transporting the stones for the new fortifications, and enable us to dispense with the services of the lazy self-seeking burghers.

December 1st. - This morning the travellers left with bag and baggage for bartering cattle. They intend to spend their first night at the "Ruyterstal." May the Almighty be their guide, and bring them back to us safely and with good success. Ample instructions have been given to the provisional assistant, the head of the party.

December 2nd.—First trip of the *Oester* to Robben Island to fetch some sheep. 3rd. The men drilled in the afternoon. 4th (Sunday). Usual parade after the services.

December 5th.—The men of the garrison falling ill. To-day there are 40 in hospital, a most unwelcome state of affairs in these war times.

December 6th.—The fugitive drummer and his mate tried to-day for burglary, desertion and theft. The drummer, Arent Roelofse, of Breda, sentenced to be hanged, and his mate, Frans Cuijper, to stand under the gallows with the rope round his neck, after that to be severely whipped, and riveted in chains as a convict for 12 years, with confiscation of pay, &c. Before noon the drummer was informed of the hour of his death, and the minister sent to him for exhortation and comfort. A Danish vessel anchored outside; as she may proceed to Robben Island, instructions were sent thither not to supply her with refreshments, but only with drinkwater if asked for. Care was also to be taken that no convicts on the Island escaped in her.

December 7th.—At 11 o'clock to-day, the sentences passed yesterday were carried out properly, truly a sad business, that such sights should be witnessed twice in succession in such a short time. We hope, however, that it will be the last.

Decided that as the wooden bridges and sluices round the Fort are continually requiring repairs, and cannot be dispensed with, to erect an arched bridge of stone, which will considerably economize expenditure.

December 8th.—Two men bring in 36 sheep from Saldanha Bay that had for some time been placed on Schapen Island. They had been bartered from the Hottentoots.

December 9th.—The violent S.E. wind having gone down, it was decided to despatch a sloop to the Danish vessel lying off Robben Island, to discover whether she came from India, as those resident on the Island might inform her of our designs on St. Helena, and she would be there before our fleet, and so inform our enemies of our intentions. Accordingly the skipper was to be asked whence he came, and if he replied "from India," then to go on board and invite him to Table Bay, where he would be allowed such accommodation and refreshments as the service of the Company permitted. But if he replied "from Europe," his vessel was not to be boarded.

The number of soldiers selected for the expedition to St. Helena was mustered to-day in order to be embarked.

December 10th.—The boat returns from the Danish ship, named the *Oldenburgh*, from the Fatherland. She had a long and disastrous voyage, and was burdened with many sick. Her merchant Johan Jochem Paulinet called on the Governor about two hours later, and delivered to him two packets of letters dated 15th January, 15th and 28th March, and 5th April addressed by the Directors to the late Mr. Hackius, the contents of which we had received long ago with other ships. The smaller packet contained copy of the printed declaration of the open rupture of war by the King of England against our state, sent to the Governor-General and Councillors of India. It was sealed with two seals, one of the Company and the other evidently that of the advocate Van Dam. It, however, appeared to have been opened, but we cannot believe that the bearer abused the confidence placed in him. He also submitted a copy of a deed of credence granted by our masters to His Majesty of Denmark regarding the reception and treatment to be offered to his vessels calling here, and dated the 30th March, 1672. It having been read, the skipper was allowed to buy from the freemen here as much cattle and vegetables as he required, and without any restriction whatever. The aforesaid merchant was also entertained at dinner by the Governor. The vessel had

1672.

a very unfortunate voyage hitherto. Having left the Zond with 154 men on the 23rd April last, she had lost 16 of them, and brought 50 here very sick indeed, so that the rest were unable to work her. We were accordingly requested to assist her with some men, in order to bring her up to the anchorage. Such assistance, they assured us, they would communicate to His Majesty, who would consider it a great act of courtesy. We had to reply, however, that our garrison was at present burdened with an incredible number of dropsical and other sick persons, so that often the Company's affairs could not be carried on as desired, but that if the condition of his vessel was really such as described, we would consider the matter and communicate the result to-morrow; and the more so as the S.E. wind was blowing so strongly that no boat could be sent off to the assistance of his vessel. This promise was thankfully received by the merchant, who after dinner left, with civil compliments, for the residence of a certain burgher recommended to him, in order there to inquire about some refreshments in the shape of cattle and vegetables. In the meanwhile, in spite of the wind, some soldiers were embarked in the ships destined for the St. Helena exploit. A remarkable courage and dauntless heart were observed among them.

December 11th.—The military embarked with bag and baggage and all further stores shipped into the *Swaentje*; and the farewell dinner was given to the fleet, which will leave if possible to-day. A westerly breeze springing up, the Danish ship *Oldenburgh* arrives on the roadstead and fires three guns, which are answered with one from the Fort.

December 12th.—The Governor and officers proceed at 3 o'clock in the afternoon on board the *Vryheit* to induct on board that vessel as admiral of the fleet the skipper-commander, Jacob de Geus, but as they were on their way, the S.E. wind became so violent that with the greatest difficulty they succeeded in reaching the vessel, which instead of being able to weigh, was compelled to throw out another anchor for her better security in such a violent tempest. This caused such labour to the crew that the ceremony had to be abandoned for that day.

A ship anchors under Robben Island; should she be from Batavia, she may be a great stay to us in our sober stock of grain and chief articles of food.

December 13th.—The fleet leaves. The Commissioners who were on board the *Vryheit* to witness the installation of the commander of the fleet, not being able to reach the shore, are compelled to board the Danish ship *Oldenburgh*, and pass the night on her board.

December 14th.—In the morning they landed dripping wet, with the information that a hooker was anchored behind the tail of the Lion Mountain. Shortly afterwards her boat landed, and reported that she was the *Gout Vineq*, which had left this on the 30th May last for Mauritius in company of the frigate *De Pyl en Boogh*, under the command of Commander Hubert Hugo. Having arrived in the S.E. harbour on the 8th July they had found the island in a most desolate state, and when the commander, George Frederick Wreden, had, on the 29th February previously, visited in a boat, built and called by himself *Vrede*, and accompanied by 11 men, some neighbouring islands in the interests of the Company, and attempted with 5 men to tack out of the Cronenburger harbour, he had been drowned. The other 5 men were saved, but the vessel itself, ballasted with 11 pieces of ebony, had been beaten to pieces on the reef. The officers of the little hooker had been instructed by the commander that if they arrived safely at the island they were to deliver their cargo to the junior merchant Wreden, but in case of his death to a certain lance-corporal named P. Philippe Col, who was leaving with them, and that if they could find employment there for the seamen, of which there was no doubt, they were to remain there until the end of September or the middle of October, but in case that officer had not yet arrived there (during that time) then to return to the Cape with such a return cargo as was at hand; in consequence of this, they delayed there a month longer, viz., to the 15th of November, but no one arriving, they left on that day and brought us 557 fine blocks of ebony, 114 goat, hart, ox and calf hides prepared in different ways, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. ambergris, 81 do. black, $20\frac{3}{4}$ lbs. “succini,” and various papers for our information, also two freemen’s families and one unmarried man, who, at their own request, had proceeded thither lately with the Hon: Hugo, with the intention of earning a living there, in accordance with the permission granted them by the Lords Principals. Very imprudently, and without instructions, the provisional commander had permitted them to leave and return hither under the pretext that they could discover no opportunity there of making a living. This has by no means pleased us, as they are of the sort that are only in our way here, and lead entirely disreputable lives.

It appears that the cutting of ebony is being continued with zeal, and that there is no doubt of this being successfully kept in hand, but agriculture seems doubtful, which however our Lords Superiors would so much like to see flourishing. We are anxious to learn what Commander Hugo may effect in this respect.

Further their communication contains nothing particular, except that before Wreden’s death some vagabonds had again absconded into the forest with the object of surprising and plundering the Lodge, and massacring all who would not listen to,

1672.

or assist them. They were, however, recaptured afterwards and the ringleader, named Maes Evertsz., of Harderwyck, was sentenced by the late Commander to be hanged and the others corporally punished. A portion of the documents in the case had been sent to us. For the rest the buildings required repairs, and other matters attention also, as after the death of the Commander his temporary successor seems to have let everything go wrong.

December 15th.—Arrival of the *Goutvinck*, but the *S. Easter* prevents her from discharging. Busy throwing up the earthen embankments of the old Fort. The newly-built boat, *Dr Schulp*, was launched, and found to be fine, tight, and well-finished.

December 16th.—The wind too strong for any outside work to be done; it is also injuring the fruit and ripe corn.

December 17th.—The wind veers round to the North. The vessel which had been lying so long below Robben Island arrives at the anchorage. A sloop lands from her, out of which stepped Commander Hubert Hugo, who was as usual welcomed by the Governor. Since his departure he had wandered along various coasts and places, but met with little, but it would be tedious to repeat here what is fully mentioned in his journal, both as regards the projected slave trade, as well as other matters, and the reasons of his return hither without having called at Mauritius. (See that Journal and the Resolutions annexed to despatches home, and marked N.) The sloop having at once returned on board, brought on shore 22 slaves, 17 women and 5 men, obtained at Madagascar. They were at once provided with food and clothing. The wind having prevented the work of finishing the embankments round the old Fort, the men were kept busy the whole of this (Saturday) afternoon, and some of the most inexperienced soldiers drilled.

December 18th.—A sloop arrives from the flute *Hasenbergh*, lying under Robben Island, with letters from Batavia. She had been despatched to the Cape with supplies, but been prevented hitherto by the S.E. winds from reaching the roadstead. Had left Batavia on the 10th October.

Decided to land the soldiers on board the *Pyl*, to cure them of their staleness (*outbackenheijt*). In consequence of a misunderstanding during the voyage between Commander Hugo and the merchant Nijhoff, they, as well as the crew, had, through want of the necessary supplies, been suffering much from hunger.

December 19th.—A portion of ebony landed from the *Hooker*, as well as 72 tusks obtained at Mozambique weighing about 3,515 lbs.

December 20th.—To our great consternation the chief surgeon

reported this morning that last night a certain burgher residing behind the Fortress had been run through with a rapier by the chief surgeon of the Danish ship *Oldenburgh*, named Jan Pietersz: of Carteminde; that the wound was dangerous, and might be mortal. The Fiscal was at once ordered to make the necessary inquiries, and apprehend the delinquent. At the same time two Commissioners proceeded to the house of the patient, in order to obtain further particulars, and the wounded man's statement. The offender not having made his appearance about 4 o'clock in the afternoon, an interdict was published from the balcony forbidding everyone, including those who have come here to claim our friendship, on pain of corporal punishment and a fine of Rds. 500, to hide the said Jan Pietersz: or harbour him in any way, and to promise the informer of his whereabouts a reward of Rds. 25; with an exact description of his person, stature, dress, &c. Boats were also forbidden to sail from the shore to the vessel, and a sentry was placed at the end of the jetty, and everything besides was done that might lead to his apprehension. Nevertheless towards evening the evildoer had not yet been found, so that the patrol was specially instructed carefully to watch the beach during the night, in order, if possible, to prevent the escape of the delinquent.

The Dispenser, having with a burgher Councillor yesterday been commissioned to compile returns of the crops still standing, submitted a written report this evening, showing that the Colonists (with God's blessing) expected to harvest:—

249	muids of wheat.
32	„ rye.
47	„ barley.
22	„ oats.
22	„ spelt.

December 21st.—The south-easter very violent. Various roofs bereft of their tiles. Most of the damage, however, was done to the ripe corn and the fruit. No outside work could be done.

Whereas the burgher councillor and lieutenant of the burghers, Dirck Jansz: Smient has been taken into the Company's service as ensign, it was necessary to appoint another burgher councillor in his stead. The burgher councillors submitted the names of two of the burghers, when Sieur Wouter Cornelisz: Mostaert was appointed burgher councillor, and Elbert Direxs: Diemer, lieutenant of the burgher militia. Both having thankfully accepted their appointments, Ensign Smient was thanked for his long services. It was further decided, in case of a sudden surprise by an enemy, to divide the military corps into two divisions, in order to move them as required, and to create two additional sergeants, viz., Dirck Bosch and Jan Valekenrijo. We hope that thus everything will be regulated properly.

1672.

No trace as yet found of the Danish delinquent in spite of every effort made to apprehend him.

Death in the Company's large garden of a half-caste Angola boy about nine years old.

December 22nd.—The S. Easter ceases towards noon. The most unskilful of the garrison exercised in the use of arms, and some masons set to work to repair as much as practicable the damaged roofs.

The bay having become navigable, the merchant of the Danish ship respectfully requested the Governor to be allowed to proceed on board, notwithstanding the interdict, offering a free inspection of his sloop by those who were personally acquainted with the chief surgeon. Permission was accordingly given.

The stores being cleared for the reception of the cargo of the *Hasenbergh*.

December 23rd.—South-east breeze in the morning. The *Oester* proceeds to the island for shells. The hooker *Goutvinck* busy discharging her ebony. The ordinary works resumed, and the damage caused by the wind to the church and houses being repaired.

A wagon arrives from Hottentoots Holland for supplies, and with a letter from Cruijthoff, mentioning that the buildings and craal were finished, and that sufficient timber had been cut and conveyed from the forest for a large sheep shed, and that a large quantity of grass had been mown for hay. Hitherto, however, he had not met any Hottentoots willing to sell cattle.

The burgher to whom the sole right of fishing at Salt River had been granted, having, when the Commissioners were lately busy collecting the returns, been very impertinent towards them, the Governor and Council for these and other reasons decided to withdraw the privilege, and take back his loan servants into the Company's service, with the hope that that sort of people, who have for some time now by connivance (door conniventie) been playing the masters, and not remained mindful of the assistance and kind favours enjoyed from the Company, will hereafter show themselves better behaved, and treat their superiors with respect.

24th December.—The S. Easter blowing violently once more. The wagon sent back to Hottentoots Holland with supplies for the month. Cruijthoff ordered by the Governor not to delay in building the sheep shed. For that purpose 100 lbs. nails were sent him.

As it was believed that the sea would become navigable during the night, sentries were placed on different spots to prevent the escape of the delinquent.

Violent S. Easter, preventing the *Hasenbergh* from reaching the roadstead.

December 25th.—Celebrated this day the remembrance of the birth of Our Lord Jesus Christ by hearing the preaching of His Word, which, on account of the indisposition of the minister, occurred only once.

The sentries again posted along shore towards evening, in order to prevent the escape of the fugitive.

December 26th.—S. E. continuing, especially during the morning, so that only one service could be held during the afternoon.

December 27th.—The S. E. goes down and for a short while a sea breeze was blowing, which at last enabled the *Hasenbergh* to reach the roadstead. During the afternoon her discharge was commenced.

Towards evening a sergeant and some armed soldiers were sent out in search of the Danish fugitive, in order to prevent him from escaping during this calm weather with the assistance of others. Having left, a musket shot was heard after the closing of the gate, when about 11 o'clock p.m. another sergeant and some more men were despatched in the direction of Salt River to discover the reason of the shot having been fired. Shortly afterwards they brought into the Fort the delinquent Jan Pietersz: of Carteminde, a town in Finland, who was at once examined in the presence of the Governor and Council, and who stated that on the 19th instant he and some of his comrades had been at the house of the burgher Jan van Oldenburgh, where, after they had been sitting drinking the whole afternoon, a quarrel arose during the evening between the host and themselves. The former having already gone to bed with a knife in each hand, had again got up and endeavoured to attack the narrator especially. This he endeavoured to prevent with his side arms, and as a result stabbed him. Having dressed the wound, he was afraid of being apprehended, and first went to the house of Hendrick Barentsz: where their sick lodged, and afterwards to Joan Joachim Paulsz: merchant of their vessel, who was staying with Wouter Mostaert. At the latter's house he hid himself during the day in a secret hole shown him by the loan servant Guilliaem Eems, making his appearance during the night and visiting the aforesaid merchant, who was lodging there, and in whose room and presence his servant and a certain quartermaster had altered his usual dress and shaved his hair. Thus disguised, he had, by the advice of the said merchant, walked round the back of the Fort towards the Salt River, in company of Jasper Steffens, soldier on the *Oldenburgh*, and hid himself among the downs in the cripple bushes, with the promise made to him by the merchant that when the water was navigable and he made a signal on the shore with his coat or something else, he would take care that he was taken off with a boat from the spot. There he had remained until now, when he was apprehended. (See his confession.)

1672.

In consequence of this confession, it was at once decided to despatch two Commissioners and the Fiscal to Mostaert and Paulsz : and notify to them that they were to consider themselves under arrest and were to remain where they were, for having directly violated our placeaten issued in this case, and treated them with contempt as much as they could, one of them being a counsellor of and assistant in hiding the fugitive surgeon. At the same time the servant of Mostaert as well as the delinquent were separately incarcerated, and two armed soldiers posted before the lodgings of the merchant ; the case to be further investigated without delay.

December 28th.—Quite unusual and pleasant weather from the north. Hard at work discharging the *Hasenbergh* and *Goutvinck*.

The *Pyl*, laden with supplies for Mauritius, ready to leave, the presence of Commander Hugo being urgently required on that island. Will leave to-morrow. Having discharged her cargo there, which with that from home will suffice for one or two years, she will proceed to Batavia with ebony and such other goods as may be ready for her.

The Council, strengthened with Commander Hugo, deliberate on the imprisonment of the Danish merchant, and decide, partly to maintain the rights of the Company, and in order that her orders are not made illusory by strangers within her own jurisdiction, and at the same time to show that there was no desire to give offence to His Majesty of Denmark by acting rigorously against his subject, however justly,—that to-morrow two Commissioners shall proceed to the lodgings of the captain and merchant of the *Oldenburgh*, with a respectful request to the latter to draw up and sign a concise statement regarding the treatment they and their people had received from us ; after that the merchant Pauli was to be released from his confinement, and told to go on board his ship the sooner the better, and not to return to shore, without prejudice however to the permission granted to the captain and his crew to obtain on shore such necessary refreshments as they required, with the restriction however that in order to prevent similar calamities as that of the 20th instant, and should the weather permit it, to return on board with his men before sunset, and not to pass the night on shore.

December 29th.—Yesterday's resolution having been communicated to the Danish officers, the latter seemed quite glad of, and thankful for the merciful sentence, and for our discharge delivered to us such a declaration as we had asked for.

The freemen's vessel brings 91 half-aums of oil from Dassen Island. A slight shower during the afternoon, but too slight to be of any service to the parched gardens and lands.

December 30th.—Preparation service held in the afternoon, as next Sunday the Holy Sacrament will be administered.

1672.

December 31st.—The merchant, Sieur van Breugel, was yesterday appointed commissioner in order to preside at the annual meeting of the Church council. He presided for the first time, and submitted a report to the council containing the names of the persons nominated as elders and deacons. (Names not given).

(Below stood). Written by me and after collation found to agree with the original. In the Fort the Good Hope, the Second May, 1673. (?)

(Signed) A. H. CRUDOP, Secretary.

January 1st (Sunday).—The South-Easter which had been blowing violently for eight days left us with the old year, so that we had a warm and lovely sunshine to-day for going to Church and hearing God's Word, as well as for thanking His Gracious Majesty for all His mercies granted us during the past year, and praying Him to keep and bless us further, and remove from us the scourge of war now threatening the Fatherland as well as ourselves, and bless us more and more with prosperity.

1673.

January 2nd.—The walls of the old Fort still being repaired and strengthened with a stamped facing of prepared earth. Letter received yesterday from the officers of the *Oldenburgh*, notifying that their departure was at hand, and requesting that their chief barber, who was in confinement here for the reason already mentioned, might be sent on board. The Governor, however, returned a complimentary reply, thanking them for their kind letter acknowledging their reception of such necessaries as they required, and mentioning his regret that he had not been able to do more, &c. He could not, however, comply with the request that the chief surgeon might be sent on board, as he had first to stand his trial for the crime committed by him, and further that he was obliged to them for their offer to take letters for us to Batavia, and that he would gladly avail himself of it. He further added that he hoped that the Hon. Joan Jochum Pauli would not take it amiss that he could not allow him to return on shore, as the Resolution prevented it. He would, however, receive in writing the reasons which had compelled him and the Council to confine him, &c. (Signed) ISBRAND GOSKE, ALBERT VAN BREUGEL and DIRCK JANSEN SMIENT.

In the Fort the Good Hope, this 2nd January, 1673.

The Saldanha traders brought us another 91 half-aums of oil, which will be very welcome here and at Batavia. As the wooden jetty, when inspected by the Governor and the master carpenter, was found to require urgent repairs, it was decided in the evening

1673. — meeting to order poles and beams to be cut, in order to commence the repairs at once.

January 3rd.—Departure of the Danish ship *Oldenburgh*.

And whereas the powder magazine below the new point in the Castle is out of repair and unsuitable, being covered with a wooden loft, over which the Corps de Garde is built, whose floor is covered with heavy stones, which are too heavy for the loft, so that it may collapse at any time, another magazine was started to-day below the second point, its walls being nearly completed. It will be provided with a strong vaulted roof.

January 5th.—Arrival of the little boat *Posthoorn*. Had left Zealand on the 6th April last with news for Batavia that war had broken out. In consequence of distress and her long voyage, she had called at Sera Leones, having lost her skipper and junior mate, who had been buried at sea. The rest were all well.

This morning the Danish chief surgeon was tried and sentenced to be keel-hauled. (See sentence.)

After the usual evening meeting, the sergeant returned from the Island and reported that the five Hottentoots confined there had escaped during the previous night in the small boat. They had done this without anybody's knowledge or assistance: truly a very bold venture on the part of such brutal people, to entrust themselves to the waves of the ocean in such a small craft, which can only be managed with two oars and without any mast—showing an example of a desire of liberty from slavery.

January 6th.—This morning, about 9 o'clock, the Danish surgeon underwent his sentence on board the hooker *De Goudvinck*, in presence of Commissioners and the Fiscal. After that he was discharged. Towards noon a S.E. breeze springing up, the Danish vessel left, saluting the Fort with 3 guns, for which she was thanked with one.

The Governor being curious to know what had become of the five fugitive Hottentoots, despatched two horsemen along the shore, as far as the beach opposite Robben Island to look for them.

January 7th.—It is to be deplored that the tempting and censurable habit of playing and gambling has gained such a footing among some, that they often stake all the little that they possess, and rely so on chance that often in their hazardous attempts they overcome their difficulties. Now, in order to remove this evil, from which all kinds of calamities result, the Fiscal has been ordered to proceed to all taverns, privileged inn-keepers as well as other boarding-house keepers, and on pain of being deprived of their privileges and other punishments, as decreed since olden times on this offence, or as may still be decreed, to

forbid them from henceforth permitting the least gambling in their houses.

Ensign Smient proceeds to the Island in the *Oester* with 100 lbs. powder, 30 do. musket balls, 50 cannon balls of 4 lbs., 10 pikes (triplets as well as half ones), 50 bandoliers, 10 cross-belts, 10 bundles of match cord, 1 bucket of tar and 50 gunny bags.

January 8th (Sunday).—Arrival of the new ship *Hellevoetsluys*. Left Holland on the 5th July with 229 men, had (2) deaths, brought 50 sick, who will have to be transferred to our Hospital. In the Bay of Sera Leones she had been attacked by two English vessels, one a warship and the other a merchantman, but she had repulsed them in such a manner that they were obliged to leave that refreshment station, so that they had obtained little glory and honour from their act. The letters brought by her mentioned the naval victory obtained by our people over the enemy in June last, and how the English, completely routed, had returned home, our vessels remaining at sea. They also informed us of the great advantage obtained over us by the French on land, without however telling us in what it consisted, which however is rumoured among the friends on board. We will hope however that God will convert this prosperity of the enemy into disaster and adversity, and in His own time gladden us with a joyful message.

January 9th.—Return towards evening of our travellers under the leadership of the Provisional Assistant, Jan van der Meersch. They had left about 6 weeks ago to visit the kraals of the Soeswaas and Hessaquas to buy cattle. All were in good health, and brought a troop of 256 beautiful young cattle and 370 sheep, bartered for the usual merchandize. The Hessequas were prepared for a greater barter if the expedition had only had more wares with them. They brought with them one of the Soeswaas Captains, named Claas, with his suite, with the object of visiting us, and in their own way welcome the new Governor.

January 10th.—The soldiers of the *Hellevoetsluys* were landed to-day—a very poor lot, and, for the most part, insignificant-looking and undrilled fellows, showing that the Company could not, in these war times, obtain men according to its tastes. The sick transferred to the Hospital.

January 11th.—During the past night the house of a burgher, distant half an hour from the Fort, and situated in the country, was, with the stables, sheep-shed, and 480 sheep that were in the latter, completely burnt down. The housewife, who had endeavoured to save some money, remained behind too long in the burning house, and was so hurt with the flames that she died this day.

1673.

Captain Claas having been entertained as well as his people with a dram (soopie) and a bit of tobacco, was, at his request, escorted by two horsemen to Hottentoots Holland, as he did not dare to go alone for fear of his enemies, the Cape Hottentoots, who were squatting in the neighbourhood. This courtesy was shown him with the hope of a good barter in cattle, which he promised us.

The letters received per *Hellevoetsluys* having mentioned that if the expedition destined to St. Helena had not yet left, it should be abandoned, and the ships sent to Batavia, a council meeting was accordingly convened to discuss the matter. See Resolution.

January 12th.—The 626 head of cattle and sheep lately bartered, sent with our old stock to Hottentoots Holland for pasturage, where they will have more than is obtainable here. Moreover they will not be so much exposed to raids by the enemy. The *Goutvink* transfers her ebony to the *Hasenberg* which will take it to Batavia to serve as ballast for the return ships, of which the latter are generally in great need. The *Oester* proceeds to Robben Island to take away the sheep, that the latter may not be seized by an enemy that might attack us.

January 13th.—The *Bruydegom* proceeds to Dassen Island to remove thence to Saldanha Bay the sheep there, as well as the garrison; the sheep to proceed to the Cape, the garrison to continue fishing there until there is sufficient for the vessel to bring hither. Garrison reduced to three, who are to look out for foreign vessels, and, should any arrive, to abandon their post, set fire to the lodge, and retire hither to report what has occurred. The *Bruydegom* was to be beached and her crew retire overland.

January 14th (? 15th).—Sunday, the Lord's Sabbath celebrated by going to church twice. After the second sermon, the usual parade was held. After that the Governor went on horseback to the Company's "lust-huys" at Rustenburgh to see how matters were situated there as regards the harvest, wines and grain at the "Schoor." Towards evening he returned to the Fort.

January 16th.—A certain burgher and inn-keeper was last night^t detected in various malversations regarding the smuggling of^f strong drink without previous permission to buy any, or having paid the duty. His house was searched by commissioners, and six cases of aniseed arrack were seized, which had in the preceding night been secretly landed from one of the ships.

Our dispenser had to undergo a similar visit both in his house and stores, in order to make no distinction between himself and private persons. He had been much suspected, and no mistake was made, for at the place mentioned were found eight barrels of black sugar, a leaguer and eight casks of aniseed arrack, which he acknowledged to have bought on his own account.

To our great consternation this afternoon there was found on the carpenter's shed near the Fort a burning piece of wood, no doubt purposely thrown on it by some wicked rascal in order to cause a fire. Thank God, it was discovered in time.

The merchant, Albert van Breugel, having, as Commissioner, attended this day the Church Council's meeting, reported this evening after prayers, and at our usual meeting, that the business done had consisted of the retiring deacons rendering to their successors a statement of accounts, a copy of which would be submitted to the Council.

January 18th.—The Fiscal having received information regarding another burgher house suspected of smuggling, asks for commissioners to accompany him in order to make a search there. Three cases of brandy were found, which had been smuggled ashore in a boat on a dark night. He also found a box filled with wood and new iron wares, and marked with certain letters, the initials of a well-known person, not suspected without reason. The box was opened in presence of the Governor and the commissioners, and was afterwards deposited in the Company's store for further examination. It is high time to root up once for all this deeply-rooted evil.

The *Oester* and *Schulp* bring more sheep from Robben Island.

January 19th.—More sheep received from the Island, as well as some seal oil from Dassen Island.

January 20th.—The house of a farmer about an hour's distance from this was completely destroyed by fire, with all the grain which had been stored in it. The cattle, however, were saved. Origin of the fire still a mystery.

January 21st.—One hundred sheep arrive from the Island. The *Oester* takes back to it an uncommon signal flag to notify to the ships that affairs here were still in a good way. Another was, for the same purpose, sent overland to the country posts, the Steenberg, 'Taeffelbergh and the Cloof.

January 22nd (Sunday).—Our minister being sick, a sermon was read. Preparations made to collect at the cavalry stables sheep from all the posts, in order to send them gradually in small troops to Hottentots Holland.

Jan van Reuven, who arrived in the *Vryheijt* as freeman and was admitted as notary by the Governor-and-Council, died this day. His wife is very dangerously ill.

Two Hottentots, having pretended that they knew how the late fire was caused, accused a certain free servant, who, being summoned to the Fort and strictly examined, declared himself wholly innocent, and would not confess anything to his prejudice. He

1673.

was accordingly provisionally set at liberty, and another freeman, at present a day labourer, examined, in consequence of the information of the Hottentoots. Being confronted with his accusers, who professed to know him, they vacillated so, that no dependence could be placed on their evidence, hence as nothing could be discovered prejudicial to the two freemen, they were discharged until something further was discovered.

More sheep brought from the Island.

January 24th.—Death of a junior mate of the *Hasenbergh*. He had been boarding with a certain freeman.

The many sick of the *Hasenbergh* having considerably diminished our stock of medicines, the doctor and chief surgeon were sent on board that vessel in order to obtain a fresh supply.

January 25th.—Regarding the tappers mentioned on the ? 16th, they were tried this day, and as they as much as confessed their crimes, and could only offer frivolous excuses, the court of justice sentenced them as follows:—The principal and most dishonest vagabond Wiggert Oftkens, was condemned to be scourged with the halter round his neck; two others, Evert Fabij and Jacob Meijer, to be thrice strappadoed, and moreover banished for a good number of years at the public works. The fourth, Hendrik Selis, who had had no hand in the theft, but only drank of the liquor, without the knowledge however that it had been stolen, was exempted from corporal punishment, but condemned to ride the wooden horse for three days, and after that serve two months at the public works.

The *Oester* takes to Robben Island 4 wheels, and other portions of a wagon, as well as two oxen for the assistance of those already there.

Pieter Sigfriet, late resident at Saldanha Bay, arrives overland with some sheep bartered by him there. Three of them had yesterday, in broad daylight, been destroyed by lions. With the corporal also arrived the shepherds from Dassen Island and three others who had been stationed at the bay, so that at the present time there is but an equal number there, among them being Corporal Direk van der Herengraaff, to whom he had properly transferred the Company's effects.

January 26th.—The sentences passed on the arrack-tappers yesterday signed and carried out at noon with the proper solemnities.

In the meanwhile, independent of the ordinary works, we were busy removing the guns before the gates of the horn-works to the new point, in order to be of use in case of necessity, at which point, as well as in the middle of the square of the Fort, there are good signs of fountains of fresh water. Therefore digging has already taken place some days, and a well sunk so deep that water

is already in sight. Should this effort be successful it would be of very great service.

Shortly before evening prayers it was discovered that the shore boat landed less rice than it received from the *Hasenbergh* (provision ship). Accordingly the Fiscal and Commissioners were ordered to examine the boat, and found 4 bags of rice in the sleeping place covered with a mattress (bultzak), the same kind of rice sent us in the *Hasenbergh*. Thereupon the quarter-master and his accomplice were examined, but all they could say was that the bags merely contained sweepings as well as their allowance. They were imprisoned for further examination.

January 27th.—The hooker *Goutvinck*, having received her instructions, leaves for False Bay, her destined station.

January 29th.—The minister being still indisposed (Sunday), no service was held, but a sermon read out of the "Postil."

January 30th.—Late last night one of our soldiers, who had been carrying on a system of thieving for some time, was caught by the sergeant removing a roll of white alum leather from the stores in which the piece goods are deposited. He was at once apprehended, his name is Laurents Ericksen. Being examined by the Governor, the prisoner at once acknowledged his guilt, namely, that for 3 months he had had secret access through the kitchen—standing near to and under the thatch of the aforesaid store, in which the men were accustomed to cook—by breaking up some of the planks of the ceiling of the store. Having thus reached the loft, he had broken out another small plank, and with a rope made by himself descended into the store and robbed it as often as it pleased him. He confessed also that what he had stolen was still hidden in his chest, which upon being opened, contained goods to the value of at least £500; the goods consisted of silk stuffs, linens, &c. The matter will be further investigated.

The *Postlooper* receives her despatch with our letters to the commanders of our fleet at or near St. Helena. She leaves during the night.

February 1st.—The *Schulp* takes the three condemned arrack tappers to Robben Island.

February 2nd.—In order to obtain fresh water near at hand for slaking the lime in the kilns, a well was dug near the beach adjoining the largest kiln, which yields good sweet water. This is an excellent accommodation, as it will no longer be necessary to obtain water at a distance.

February 3rd.—The new powder magazine in the other castle will soon be finished, when the old one will be re-built in the same style. A durable and safe piece of work. The sailors and quarter-

1673.

— master having been again examined, adhered to their wrong statement, declaring that they were innocent of theft; quite the reverse of the store-house thief, who with repentance acknowledged it freely.

February 6th.—One of the horsemen sent to False Bay to look for the signal station to be selected by the officers of the *Goudtvinck* sent thither a few days ago for the purpose, returns with the information that a station had been selected, and brings the following letter to the Governor dated 5th February, 1673:—"Anchored here during the afternoon of the 4th February, on the spot marked A on the chart, in five fathoms white sand, as will appear from our journal. Landed with our sloop, and after we had found the freemen Theunis Direxe van Schalkwijk and Frans Champelaar their two servants, and a black, with a wagon and six oxen, who were busy fishing, we searched about the same evening for a suitable spot on the downs, near the beach, on which to erect our flag-staff, and bring together some fuel, as well as a place that would be suitable for the letter-carriers; so that on Sunday morning, the 5th, everything had been done as ordered by you. Further particulars we shall send you overland with Sergeant Cruijthoff, as we dare not detain these horsemen longer."—(Signed) JAN CORNELISZ: EGMONT and HENDRICK VAN BRUIJNTOGT. On board the *Goudtvinck*, the 5th February, 1673.

February 7th.—Two slaves of private persons and a Dutch boy on loan to our surgeon, decided to run away into the interior and search, no doubt, for another country. They were missed early this morning. We believe, however, that they will be very much disappointed, and that hunger, thirst, and the fear of the beasts of prey, &c., will soon compel them to return to their masters' kitchens.

February 9th.—Letter received overland *via* Hottentoots Holland, from the officers of the *Goudtvinck*, dated 7th February, 1673, as follows:—"After the despatch of our first letter, we landed and sent one of our officers and two men well armed to the mountains, stretching towards the South of the Bay, in order to find a suitable spot for a 'look out,' from which to watch for the return ships towards the East. Returning in the evening they reported that there was no place within ten or twelve hours (? walk) from where they were, suitable for the purpose, as having crossed several mountains, they had found still higher mountains towards the east, which blocked the prospect, so that it would be impossible when occasion required it, to be at hand for the purpose.

On the 6th (Monday) the sein was landed, but brought back at noon, without having caught anything particular. After dinner we again landed to fish. East by south from our anchorage was

a small rivulet with sweet water running slowly from the mountains near the seashore. The stony nature of the soil, and night setting in, prevented us from digging a well.

We also looked about for fuel, and to the E.S.E. from our hooker, we found here and there some bushes, but mostly single trees, high up against the mountain slopes. No palisades, however, are obtainable here. Returning on board towards evening, we caught a fair quantity of 'steenbraasems,' but mostly 'harders.'

Landing on the 7th we set to cutting wood, which it will be a difficult task to carry down. We shall, however, collect as much as possible, but it will be useless to send the large sloop hither for the purpose, as she will not obtain enough to fill her.

To-day we dug the well, and found it very convenient for supplying us with water.

To-morrow (the 8th) we hope with our sloop to commence our survey of the bay and its position, its grounds, inlets, rivulets, rocks, reefs, islands, and water places, as well as mark the spots where wood is obtainable, and lay down the distances as far as practicable. Whilst doing this, wood cutting will be left in abeyance."—(Signed) JAN CORNELISZ: EGMONT and HENDRICK VAN BRUIJNTOGT. In the hooker *Goudtvinck* the 7th February, 1673.

The runaway slaves and the Dutch boy, who have been absent some days, seem to have repented and missed the bread basket too soon, so that they were detected near the outer guards, who brought them in towards evening. Their excuses were that they had to work too much under their masters, and daily treated with blows. This, however, will not serve as an excuse for these scoundrels, but rather as an aggravation of their offence, as a warning to other eager imitators.

February 10th.—The *Hellervoetsluys* leaves for Batavia. A portion of the goods left by the deceased skipper of the *Posthoorn*, consisting of 12 barrels privately salted salmon, 4 hogsheads of strong Zealand beer, &c., and seized after his death, was sold in execution to the highest bidder.

February 12th (Sunday).—Heavy S. Easter, which did some damage to the gardens and roofs. Divine Service held twice.

February 13th.—The Court of Justice sat to-day. The soldier who had robbed the stores was sentenced to be hanged, and the other offenders punished in other ways (tot schavotteringh hebben gecondemneert). See sentences.

The riding on of palisades for enclosing the new fortifications is still continuing with the wagons of the company and of the freemen.

1673.

February 14th.—The Court of Justice having reconsidered the sentence of the soldier confirm it, and about an hour later he was informed of his doom, and the minister instructed to console and admonish him.

February 15th.—Slight fructifying showers. At eleven o'clock the sentences of the condemned were carried out, namely, on Laurens Ericksen, of Stockholm, the store thief, the three sailors who had stolen the rice from the open boat, and the servant of one of the burghers, who had about eight or nine weeks ago, concealed the Danish chief surgeon. The first named was hanged, but the others, after having heard their sentences, were in the form of a pardon excused from scaffold punishment (schavottagie). The rest of the sentences were, however, carried out.

February 16th.—Fine cool weather, greatly facilitating the works at the old and new forts. The masons have been set at building up the new point. As soon as this old work is done, all the men will be set to work on the new fort.

The black sugar lately seized was to-day sold by public auction. In the case of the arrack, the Company allotted $\frac{2}{3}$ of the whole to itself and $\frac{1}{3}$ to the Fiscal, as there were no buyers willing to accept the conditions of sale.

February 19th (Sunday).—During the afternoon a troop of horsemen, 28 strong, and selected from the best and finest soldiers, were, by order of the Governor, for the first time paraded within the Fort. It is to be wished that the number were three times as much, when they would not be unserviceable in case of a hostile attack.

February 20th.—An express messenger, who escorted 3 Soeswaas sent hither by their chief Claas, brought us a letter from the Commander in Hottentoots Holland, mentioning that both lions and tigers were beginning very much to destroy the cattle, some of which had on various occasions been devoured; and that one of these beasts of prey, of extraordinary size, had been killed.

The object of the visit of the natives was to invite us to trade, as the 50 draught or pack oxen which their chief, when here, had promised to have shortly ready for sale had not only been collected, but that they were inclined to sell us more cattle if only a timely expedition were sent to him. They also mentioned that the Chief Gounema, assisted by the Cape and Saldanha Hottentoots, had declared war against their tribe and their allies the Oebiequas, and that before their departure a battle had already been fought, which however had secured but little advantage to either side. They therefore wished that this barter might take effect in the meanwhile, by which means without doubt their enemies would cease from attempting any further hostilities against them.

February 21st.—The Council considers the invitation of Captain Claas, and also that the Company did not on the return of the last expedition obtain a tithe of the cattle for which the expedition had been fitted out, and which was our principal object, so that hitherto we have remained frustrated in our purpose, and it would not be advisable to refuse the offer of Captain Claas now renewed by him. It was accordingly decided once more to fit out an expedition, and because of the war, to appoint Sergeant Jeronymus Cruse, who is well acquainted with the country and the natives, as Commander, and the provisional assistant, Jan van der Meursch, who had as Commander the last time conducted the barter, as secunde, and to give them 20 smart soldiers, well provided with arms and riding horses, in order to show as imposing a force as possible to the warlike Africans, and should, which we do not expect, our men be attacked by any native tribe, they might be able to defend themselves vigorously. Accordingly all the merchandize will be quickly collected and the expedition despatched without delay, in order to be back again before the rainy season. It will be also provided with written instructions.

February 22nd.—The sloop *De Schulp* takes to Robben Island two prisoners, who are to serve out their time there, also a barrel with salted fish, instead of one with pork, as requested by the Superintendent, for the maintenance of the garrison, as our present circumstances do not permit us as yet to furnish them with the food asked for.

February 23rd.—Sergeant Cruse having packed his wagon and received his instructions, left in the afternoon with his secunde and 15 men, in order to pass the night at the watchhouse the “Ruyterstal.” He carried with him a letter to the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, ordering him to give him 5 more men, including a surgeon.

The cool weather very favourable for the workmen, who are very busy constructing the point, and facing the one already finished on the beach with stone instead of sods. When finished, it will be a fine and strong work.

February 26th (Sunday).—One service only held to-day in consequence of the indisposition of the minister. A sermon was read instead. Beautiful weather.

February 27th.—Heavy S. Easter towards evening, so that it was hardly possible to go out of doors. Advances made to the men who had a credit balance in order to prevent them from selling their clothing at half price and often for much less—a custom very much in vogue here, the result being that the poor soldier never has a decent dress on his body, notwithstanding previous placeaats

1673.

have provided against the evil. Decided, therefore, to issue another ordinance against the evil and considerably increase the penalty, that this shameful extortion may be suppressed.

February 28th.—Some of the Hottentoots Holland men arrive to fetch their monthly allowance of provisions. In their wagon they brought the skin of the lion lately shot there, for which they received the ordinary reward.

The master butcher also arrived with 35 Hottentoot and 5 half-bred sheep for the shambles here. He reported that the beasts of prey were still doing havoc among the cattle there, so that other means than shooting will have to be applied.

The covering of the earthen walls of the old Fort with a pounded clay covering (taip) was at last finished to-day, so that there is only left the closing of a few loopholes in the S.E. point thrown up in the beginning of last year on the same principles. This will not take much time.

In the meanwhile the rest of the men were employed in cleaning the silted canals, whilst some carpenters were employed in repairing the stockades on the berm, placed before the ascent to the wall. This will take some time. Work was also done at the beddings of the points, the planting of the guns and one thing and another, in order to place everything in strong positions of defence.

March 1st.—The men return to Hottentoots Holland with their ordinary supplies, taking with them besides 28 lbs. assorted nails, 1 old lantern, 2 bottles of tar, 12 ditto dirty train-oil, 2 bundles matches (lont), some iron (guijenstijds iser) to replace what Jeronimus took with him into the interior, 2 cans, and 2 hinges.

As the new sea point has only been provided with an old earthen breastwork, which is very unserviceable for such a costly work, and incapable of defence against artillery, all the rest having been built up with stone, a commencement was made to-day to demolish the earthwork and replace it with stone, and also to heighten the bedding with thoroughly pounded earth covered with thick planks on which to place cannon. This does not only strengthen the point and give it another appearance, but also makes it more defensive.

March 2nd.—Letter received *via* Hottentoot Holland from Cape Falso, despatched by the officers of the *Goutvinck*, mentioning to our sorrow that the hooker *De Grundel*, tending hither, had been wrecked a little to the East of the E. point of the aforesaid Cape, but as far as yet known all the men had been saved. How it happened and whence she came is not mentioned. We presume that she had been sent from Batavia to Mauritius with provisions, where she had taken in a cargo of ebony, and after that, by mistake, been sent hither by the provisional Commander of the

Island, Corporal Pieter Philippe Col, with the hope that she would reach the return fleet here, into which she might transship her cargo for the Fatherland. The letter received from the *Goutvinck* is as follows :—"To the Hon. Isbrant Goske, Governor at the Fort the Good Hope. Sir,—As this day, the 28th Feb., 1673, we were hailed from shore to heave to, we sent our sloop on shore with armed men, who, on their return, brought on board two persons who said that they had belonged to the wrecked hooker *De Grundel*, and that there were still seven others on shore. Not finding any reason to doubt their statement, we sent our sloop away once more to fetch the seven, who arrived on board in a very desolate and famished state, and reported that the skipper and two others had not only been wounded and ill, but had lain down. For a whole night and half a day they had drifted about in their sloop, which they (the skipper and two men) still had with them, and supported themselves on periwinkles, so that they had nothing on which to subsist, and no shelter.

The spot where the hooker was wrecked is, as they said, a little to the East of the East point of this False Bay. It happened on the 20th instant. They also mentioned that they had left the skipper three days ago, so that we sent our mates and four men, well armed, overland to the spot, in order to convey the skipper, his companions, and the sloop hither. In the meanwhile we are doing our best to nourish the famished men with our ships' provisions, and would have sent them to you were they not so weak. . . ." (Signed) JAN CORNELISZ: EGMONT and HENDRIK VAN BRUIJNLEGT, on board the hooker *Goutvinck*, the 28th Feb., 1673.

And as this sad news requires further information, and inquiry should also be made whether any of the cargo can be recovered, it was decided at once to send the *Bruydegom* to False Bay and send the bearer of the letter back overland with orders to despatch that boat to the spot where the hooker was wrecked, and on her return voyage to send back in her the shipwrecked crew and, if possible, also the skipper, should his health allow it. It was also approved of that the famished men had been properly provided with food and drink. The wind, however, was unfavourable for the despatch of the *Bruydegom*. In the meanwhile the skipper of the *Grundel* appeared limping at the Fort with his two companions. By making a sail out of a blanket they had saved themselves in their sloop as far as False Bay ; behind the Steenberg they had anchored the sloop, and walked hence to this overland. Among the sand hills they had left one of their ships' carpenters, who was too stout from dropsy, and being thus helpless, was unable to bring his heavy body any further. They mentioned that they had left Batavia for Mauritius on the 8th October, 1672, with a cargo of necessaries

1673.

for that Island ; that they had not been able to find the Island in the latitude marked down, and after having wandered to and fro, had decided to make for the Cape *via* Madagascar, where they intended to take in water. Having reached the Bay de Romana at that Island, they sent their sloop on shore, and found the place occupied by the French, who had built a fort there, and welcomed them in such a manner that the skipper was grievously wounded in the leg by a musket shot, and four of the boat's crew were killed. Accordingly they retired without delay, and having reached the E. point of Cape Falso, the weather being stormy and dark, and they not knowing that they were so near the shore, ran on shore on the 20th February, everyone doing his best to save his life. As the *Bruydegom* had not yet left, a letter was sent on board of her, notifying the arrival of the skipper, and the wind being favourable, she departed at once.

March 3rd.—Oxen on the Island in too poor a condition to draw the wagon ; the hay being all consumed, they are being fed on cabbage leaves. A further supply of forage asked for ; also a bucket of tar, and permission to set fire to the dry bushes in order to secure better young grass in the rainy season.

March 4th.—Eight men of the *Grundel*, fully restored to strength on board the *Goutvinck*, arrive at the Fort ; only the steward was left on board, as he was still too weak to move.

March 5th.—Arrival of a small flute, which whilst approaching flew a number of strange flags and fired seven guns when in the mouth of the bay, which were answered with three from the Fort. She was soon recognised as the *Vliegende Zwaan*, returning from St. Helena. Captain Bredenbach having landed, brought the news of the happy conquest of the aforesaid Island, which had been taken without any resistance worth mentioning, for the enemy, fearing by God's special dispensation the power of our arms, did not await our arrival, but fled with all their movables to an English vessel of war sent from England with a reinforcement of 40 soldiers and ammunition, leaving behind them only a few poor husbandmen, who after the island had been completely taken possession of, came to us with a white flag to ask for pardon. In the captured forts only 29 metal and iron guns were found of different calibre, mostly all spiked, and a small quantity of ammunition and other lumber, &c. Moreover, God Almighty had also let fall into our hands the flute *Johanna Catharina*, destined *via* Madagascar and Mozambique to Barbadoes with 240 slaves, and which had called at St. Helena for refreshments. These slaves, obtained so unexpectedly, will come in very handy here.

The letters were very brief, and gave no information regarding

the manner in which the Island had been taken, and merely referred to the journal kept during the voyage to St. Helena until the departure thence of the *Swaantje*, and we would have remained ignorant of all detail if Captain Breitenbach had not, orally and in writing, enlightened us.

March 6th.—Some building and carpenters' tools seized in the Fort on St. Helena (called by us "Goede Fortuijn"—Good Fortune—) was landed from the *Swaantje*, whilst all hands were busy cleaning the canals round the old Fort and repairing all dilapidated works.

The officers of the *Goutvinck* wrote *via* Hottentoots Holland that the *Bruydegom* had not yet arrived there, and that the mate and his men who had been despatched in search of the wreck of the *Grundel* had returned, and reported that they had marched fully 18 miles along shore from where they had started, and eight miles to the East of the Eastern Point of False Bay, but had seen no sign or vestige of the wreck, its sloop or skipper. They accordingly asked for further orders.

Besides a chart of the soundings and position of False Bay, they also sent us their journal, in which their experience of the aforesaid harbour is clearly given. It also mentions that already eight boat loads of cut fuel had been shipped, and that more was being collected.

March 8th.—As the rainy season is approaching, and the men are badly provided with clothing, it was decided to advance them three months' pay, one-third in cash and two-thirds in clothing. But as the men of the *Hellevoetsluis* had not been here long enough, they were only to receive half the amount.

March 10th.—The distribution effected this day, and the placcaat referring to it, published.

March 11th.—Arrival of one of the freeman's boats laden with fish from Saldanha Bay. When sailing away she had encountered the English prize, the *Johanna Catharina*, on board of which vessel everything was still in good condition. The large flat-bottomed boat which the *Bruydegom* was towing towards the Cape, having got loose and been thrown on shore, was recovered by the Superintendent on information received from some Hottentoots.

March 12th (Sunday).—Arrival in the afternoon of the English prize, when boats were at once sent to her in order to land the slaves. One hundred and eighty-four were accordingly brought on shore, adults and children of both sexes, some of whom appeared lean and "outbacken" (suffering from eating stale ships' stores). Fifteen had died during the voyage. After having been mustered in the square in presence of the Governor, and inspected

1673.

by the latter, they were at once provided with some clothing, and for the night lodged in the second shed of the new Fort, where they were provided with good refreshments of which those who were almost sick of hunger were so very fond that they cleared off everything as if the cook's kitchen had not smoked for eight days. These refreshments will have to be continued for some days that they may be completely restored to health and strength.

As we concluded, and as a certain black "Mandador" of the slaves informed us in English, she must be the same vessel encountered by Commander Hugo at Masquette, of which he spoke when he was here last, and also makes mention in his journal.

March 13th.—Heavy South-East wind. A party of tailors selected among the soldiers and sailors, in order to make clothes for the newly-arrived slaves, the stuffs used being unsaleable and moth eaten, and the lining old sail cloth, so that the whole was contrived in the cheapest and most durable fashion.

Letters received from the *Goutvinck* in False Bay, mentioning the arrival of the *Bruydegom*, which had lost her boat, but recovered it washed up on the N. side of the Bay. The sloop of the *Grundel* had been knocked to pieces, and was lying below the point of the Steenberg. The men who brought the letter also brought some relics of the *Grundel*, which were recognised by the steward, so that we were forced to conclude that the wreck had been completely destroyed, and should any of her goods be washed up, they would be found on the W. side of the bay.

March 14th.—The *Johanna Catharina* being discharged and cleaned. A certain burgher who had for his pleasure accompanied Sergeant Jeronymus to the interior, returning towards evening, reported that the sergeant was on his return, and would pass the night at the second river of the Hottentots Holland, and that he had a fine troop of 130 head of cattle with him, 70 of which were fit for the plough and wagon, as well as 100 good sheep obtained from Gounema and the Souswaes. The war was still being carried on by the respective tribes, and Gounema had carried off the whole kraal, as well as the cattle of Captain Claas.

March 15th.—Letter received from the Superintendent of the Island containing the usual complaints that in these anxious times the men cannot subsist on 15 lbs. of salted fish as a monthly ration for each person instead of Fatherland pork, and that they are unable to supplement the supply with any fresh fish, not having, in consequence of their continuous labour, any time to catch any, and having no boat or seines. They therefore requested that they may receive in addition their ration of pork, as well as

their usual strong liquor allowance to wash down the brack water drunk there; this had always been allowed to former overseers, but hitherto withheld from him.

Sergeant Cruse returns from the interior with 133 fine head of cattle and 99 fairly good Hottentoo sheep, bartered from the natives. He confirmed the news of the continuation of the war between the Soeswas and Gounemas. The latter being the stronger side may perhaps finally completely ruin the former and rob them of all their cattle, unless the quarrel is soon ended. Gounema would not listen to our intervention, considering himself greatly insulted by the Soeswas, though he was this time so liberal in bartering. When the sergeant was there, it came to his knowledge that one of the Gounema Hottentoes was provided with a musket, with which he fired very violently on the Soeswas, who being very exceptionally afraid of it, had requested the sergeant to take the gun away from the man, as they were unable to offer any resistance to such a weapon, possessing none of their own. This he promised to do, and with kind words as well as threats he induced Gounema to surrender the weapon. According to their statement the Hottentoes had obtained it, with some powder and lead, from one of our burghers in exchange for a fine fat ox, which had been killed and salted down at once.

March 16th.—Two fathoms of fuel sent to the Island for the beacon fires (vuijrbbergh). The overseer censured that he never has any shells ready for shipment, notwithstanding he has been supplied with two wagons and spans of oxen for the purpose. As this can only be ascribed to his negligence we decided not to comply with his request to supply him, and much less the garrison, with any liquor until they performed their duties more satisfactorily. They were, however, allowed 20 lbs. of fish per month instead of 15 lbs., the convicts excluded. The gate of the kraal not having been properly closed during the night, some of the bartered cattle escaped, but were recovered during the morning.

March 18th.—Letter sent to the officers of the *Goutvinck*, with orders to despatch the *Bruijdegom* at once to the spot where the *Grundel* was wrecked, to see whether any of the cargo had not been washed up, the mate to take proper notes. This having been done, the *Bruijdegom* was to bring back a cargo of fuel, and the steward's mate of the *Grundel*, who had been left behind on account of indisposition.

March 19th (Sunday).—Went to church and heard an edifying sermon; at the usual time the usual parade was held; the effect of the good months (receipt of pay) already visible among the men.

March 20th.—Sergeant Cruythoff writes from Hottentoes Holland that one of the horses, named the "lame Wolff" (de

1673.

oreupele Wolff) had died, and that another tiger had been shot in the sheep shed. The cattle were still in good condition.

Excepting the sick, the captured slaves have fairly recovered, and having been provided with clothing were set to work to fill the second point with earth; it seems as if they will accommodate themselves to labour, and in time render good service to the Company.

Some Hottentoots from inland have brought the news that an eternal peace had been established between Gounema and the Soeswas.

All the men quartered on the new point reported this evening that they had heard four or five gun shots.

March 21st.—Captain Houtebeen visits us with a large following of Hottentoots, and sold us four oxen and 30 sheep for the usual merchandize.

March 22nd.—Heavy thunder, lightning and rain, detaining Houtebeen and his followers here. The Governor having for some time considered the question where a permanent and certain beacon may be erected for the warning of ships seen far at sea, Captain Bredenburg (? Breitenbach) was ordered to ascend the Lion's Head for the purpose. This he did and reported that the spot was favourable. He was accordingly once more despatched thither with the skipper of the *Hasenbergh* in order to plant a flagstaff there, which was carried up by 20 or 25 sailors of that vessel and the *Vliegende Swaan*. The flag was seen everywhere in the valley, blowing out clearly. To-morrow three persons will be despatched thither as guards, and provided with one or two pedereroes and some powder, in order by the number of their discharges to notify the number of vessels in sight.

March 23rd.—As the repairs to the old Fort have now nearly been effected, the Governor was able to give the promised treat to the workmen; accordingly half the number will be entertained to-morrow, and the other half the day after, behind the Fort on the plain of the kraal, for which purpose some cattle have been killed, and last week 3 or 4 leaguers of strong beer have been brewed.

March 24th.—The dry weather, accompanied with a N.W. breeze, favoured the soldiers invited to the banquet. They amused themselves with all sorts of jokes and a glass of beer until the evening, when for a nightcap each man received a small glass of arrack. The rest of the garrison and tradesmen remained at their posts and will have their turn to-morrow, with all stationed at the outside posts and on the vessels, though they have not had a share in the works at the Fort, that no jealousy be caused and the one not reproach the other.

March 25th.—The other half of the workmen are regaled and enjoy themselves as those of yesterday, being very jolly in the evening. These festivities have cost the Company very little, and have encouraged the men very much, who look forward to another treat next week when they resume work.

March 26th (Sunday).—The usual service and parade. The master butcher returns from Hottentoots Holland and reported that the pasturage there was good, and the cattle in good condition.

March 27th.—Arrival of the *Alkmaar* of Hoorn. Her sick conveyed to the Hospital. She brought such news as led us to conclude that affairs were taking a more favourable turn, and that we might hope that everything would end for the best.

March 28th.—Arrival of the new ship *Rheenen* of Amsterdam, destined to Ceylon. Had left on the 21st Oct: last with 200 men. Had 38 deaths and brought 24 sick.

March 29th.—Arrival of the *Soetendaal* of Enckhuijsen. Left on the 21st Oct: with 116 men, of whom 8 had died. Brought no sick.

March 30th.—A soldier who had deserted 14 days ago was brought in to-day. He confessed that he and other soldiers had been ordered to herd some of the cattle lately bartered, but during the night had lost, and not been able to find them again. That accordingly he had been afraid of being punished corporally or capitally, and had accordingly run away until he had received some information of a more merciful punishment; and that only yesterday afternoon he had discovered that the lost animals had been recovered, so that he at once made his way to the Fort.

March 30th.—Captain Bredenbagh sent on board the *Fatherland* ships to draft some men on shore.

March 31st.—Death in the Lord of Dirck Bosch of Amsterdam, late assistant, and afterwards a freeman. All the carpenters that could be spared from the ships were landed for repairing the woodworks of the Old Fort.

April 1st.—Return of the *Bruijdegom*. She had been a good distance up the East Coast, but had made no further discoveries, as will appear from the journal kept by her mate, viz.:—On the 20th March I embarked with 4 men on the *Bruijdegom*, and made for the Eastern shore, but near the Bamboes River we were becalmed. We had a depth of from 20 to 17 fathoms, strong bottom, and were about $\frac{1}{4}$ mile (Dutch) from the shore, so that we could not anchor, and drifted back into the bay, into which the sea was rolling heavily. Towards the evening we sailed S.W. with a stiff E.S.E. breeze, which blew a gale at midnight, so that we had to reef our sail, tacking every 5 or 6 hours in order to keep

1673.

to the weather side, but the hollow sea and strong wind prevented us, so that we drifted into the bay. The weather remaining the same on the 21st we were obliged to look for shelter in the Vissers bay in order to explore the beach there until the weather became more favourable. Here we anchored about 10 o'clock in 5 fathoms grey sandy bottom. When sailing in, we found the depth varying from 12 to 5 fathoms. On the latter the anchorage is good, as the vessel is generally protected from the S.E. wind and heavy seas. On the 22nd seven of us landed in order to explore the shore towards Cape Falso. We went in and out of all the inlets and over the rocks, but found nothing that might be of advantage to the Company. We certainly found portions of the wrecked hooker and some staves, but everything broken, as the spot is full of sunken rocks and very steep, so that it may be safely called the Foul Bay (Vuyle Bogt), for within the bay there is no worse place than this, that is from C. to D. (N.B.—Chart not annexed) in the chart. At noon we calculated that we were still 3 (Dutch) miles away from Cape Falso, and marched on till two o'clock in the afternoon, but we could not approach any nearer as it was so calm; we guessed that we were still 1 mile away from False Cape, and returned on board an hour after sunset. The weather was very boisterous, with thunder, lightning and rain, and the wind north. On the 23rd we again landed in order to inspect the shores towards the north; we examined all inlets and bays as we went along, but only found two small pieces of wreckage, but behind the Steenbergh we found nothing. We marched as far as the Brackevlei, where the freemen had been burning lime, so that we came to the place where we had been before on foot from the hooker to look for the boat. We therefore deemed it best to return to the vessel in order to reach the eastern side on the following day, should the wind be favourable. About sunset we were on board again. The wind was from the N.W., a slight breeze and fine weather. On the 24th, in the morning, we sailed to the opposite side of the bay, viz., the eastern side, E. by S. half S. We sailed on as far as the letter C. Entering this bay we had a depth from 25 to 12 and again 20 fathoms rocky bottom of coral formation. However, when once fairly inside, we found a grayish sandy bottom, the depth varying from 11 to 4 fathoms. Here we anchored on fine ground, sheltered from the W. wind behind the reef, so that it is a suitable bay for all small craft, as well as for hookers in times of necessity. One lies about a musket shot's distance from the shore. During the evening the wind turned to the S.E. with fine weather, so that we made everything ready to leave on the morrow. At daybreak, on the 25th, we again landed with 7 men and proceeded in an E. direction, carefully examining every inlet. About 10 o'clock I asked the steward where the enclosure (pagger) stood, but it seemed that he

had forgotten it, as we had already passed it $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. He thought that it was situated on the eastern point, as they were able to see the lowland. Both of us therefore turned back a distance and found the enclosure on the extreme point of False Bay, with the dead body of the boatswain near it and above ground, and only covered with some grass. No goods were lying near the enclosure, and I asked the steward whether he now knew whereabouts he had lost the vessel. He replied, however, that it was impossible to tell, as it was so misty when they abandoned the hooker. They just left the vessel and rowed away in a N.W. direction until they were somewhat away from the shore. They then drifted until daylight, when they landed on the spot marked D. Until 4 o'clock in the afternoon we continued our march along the beach, but found no goods. We were then at the Botter Rivier, which we crossed, and then found the fresh foot-steps of three men, one with shoes and the other two with velshoes (velschoenen). However, we could not obtain a sight of them, so we marched on until after sunset, when we rested, passing the night on the spot, the weather being calm. The next morning (26th) we calculated that we were about 9 or 10 miles distant from the E. point of False Bay and in the last sand bay between Cape Agulhas and False Bay, but nothing was found that had belonged to the hooker, so that we could not conceive where she had been lost. We accordingly decided to return to the *Bruydegom*, having recovered nothing that might be of benefit to the Company. We reached the *Bruydegom* the same evening after sunset, a strong S. Easter blowing. On the 27th we rejoined the hooker *de Goutvinck* lying on the watch (brandwagt) in False Bay. On the 28th we loaded the little yacht with fuel, in order to proceed in her to the Cape with the first favourable breeze. (This Journal was kept by me.—Signed OTTO VAN HERCKEL.)

Received a note from the overseer at Hottentoots Holland, written principally to request to be supplied with their usual monthly rations. The bearers were accordingly sent back the same evening.

April 2nd (Sunday).—In consequence of the long illness of the minister, we could only celebrate Easter festival with the hearing of one sermon. The weather was very pleasant.

April 4th.—One hundred men drafted on shore from the ships and despatched to the forests to cut palisades.

April 5th.—Arrival of the flute *Gooiland* of Amsterdam with 118 men. Had left on the 18th December last in company of the *Ter Goes*, &c., and conveyed through the channel by four war ships. After having parted from the latter in the open sea, they were unexpectedly attacked by two large (capitale) English

1673.

vessels, which having captured the hooker *Bergheend* engaged *Het Wapen van Ter Goes*, but the combatants finally separated. The *Europa* and the flute *Hoorn* had, on leaving Texel grounded, and thus remained behind. The only fresh news she brought was that they were occupied at home in selecting a spot where the ambassadors of the belligerents might meet in order to treat of peace, which God grant! that everything may tend to the best for the public.

April 6th.—Arrival of the little *Posthoorn* from St. Helena. Had left the island on the 4th March with a verbal message that everything there was still in a good state, but that Lieutenant Joan Coon and Ensign Pieter Daey had suddenly died shortly after each other. The letter received by Governor Godske is as follows:—"We trust that you have received our letter of the 27th last, despatched with the *Vliegende Swaan* and the prize *Johanna Catharina*. In the meantime there have rested in the Lord here on the 3rd February the Lientenant, Joan Coon, and on the 9th following the provisional Ensign, Pieter Daey. We have accordingly provisionally appointed Sergeant David Haveman as commander of the soldiers until the arrival of the Commissioner, and the assistant, Jacob de Later, as assistant to the Administrator in the Secretariat. In the Chure Valley are lying level 21 heavy pieces, which have all been made there with their belongings, where formerly there was nothing. Eight pieces are in the Fort well provided with everything. In the Zeyn (signal) or 'Kraack' Valley we placed two fine eight-pounders, where there were lying two long six-pounders and an eight-pounder, or five altogether, all properly supplied. For the use of the men we have erected a brick house with a wooden roof and a small brick powder magazine. We are still busy making a breastwork for the pieces, brick inside and earth outside, and with loopholes. We conveyed thither 12 English leaguers with water, as there is none there, and when no ships are here, the water is to be carried over the mountains. The said bay is provided with 20 men, including a gunner's mate, four sailors and a corporal. The rest are all soldiers. In the Apple Valley a corporal and 5 men are stationed. Three men are employed on the 'look-out,' one on the 'Hoogenbergh,' a musket shot towards the Fort, and one at each of the two pieces inland should any ships be seen, when they are to fire their pieces at each other, and after that proceed to the Fort in order to report. Inland in some places as many as eight men are stationed with the cattle. The late Pieter Daey and also David Haveman, who had been deputed for the purpose, found that there were about 300 head of cattle, but very difficult to obtain, as they had become so wild in consequence of being fired at,

&c. The number of goats and pigs they could not tell, as they were running wild. The cattle we had three times in the kraals, but they are so mad that they jump over the 4 and 5 feet walls and run the kraals to pieces straight for the men, so that at various times they have run them down and wounded one considerably. Hence the presence of freemen in the country is very much required. About 30 houses and dwellings are found here for the purpose.

The little *Posthoorn* arrived here on the 19th February last with letters from you mentioning our departure, but especially the deplorable state of our Fatherland, as well as your strict orders about the slaves, which we cannot refrain from obeying. We send you 27 healthy ones in the *Zuyd Polsbroeck*, of whom 12 were destined for this island to look after the cattle; the rest have been distributed among the military and naval officers. However, we now leave the matter to your discretion that we may have some memorial of the booty. The three vessels have each taken 3 lasts of rice from the *Posthoorn*; the surf is so violent that it is often difficult to discharge anything; the boat of the *Vryheid* has been discharged with great difficulty and laden with great difficulty with ballast for the *Posthoorn*; both men and boat incurred great danger, the boat having received a hole in her bottom on the rocks. Only after three days' loading the boat of the *Cattenburg* could be discharged.

The 1,000 lbs. powder, mentioned by the Governor, has been received in the Fort here. The Cape office will be credited with the amount; the red and blue signal flags have been located according to your orders on the highest parts of the mountains, each hoisted to a staff which can be easily seen from every part of the island. A guard always attends it night and day. We also send you in the *Zuyd Polsbroeck* a third of the soldiers left here, though some are very necessary here for the protection of the island, for our watching, though it may appear very well, will nevertheless be in vain, if the Lord Himself, who has granted us this victory, does not watch with us, to Whose gracious protection we commend you.—We unanimously remain your humble servants,—(Signed) JACOB DE GEUS, JACOB A. BEEN, JAN BARTELSZ: JOHANNES ST. ARRAGON, PHILIPS MINUET, and ABRAHAM WILS.—In the Fort 'the Good Fortune' on the Island St. Helena, this 4th day of May, 1673."

The inspection and weighing of the goods in the stores continued to-day, but no mistakes were discovered.

April 8th.—Arrival of the *Briel* from Delft the 29th September last. Lost 60 of her crew of 260 men; but brought no sick.

April 9th (Sunday).—After Divine service and the parade had been held, the hooker *Cockmeeuw* arrived from Ceylon, homeward

.1673.

bound. She brought the following letter:—"Received your letters of the 24th February, 1st March, 2nd June and 11th September last year. . . . We have heard that you landed some provisions, and especially medicines, from some of the Ceylon ships, which we so much need, whilst the ships for Batavia are ordinarily more abundantly provided with them than the Ceylon vessels, so that the former may more conveniently have supplied you. In future we request you, in the interest of the Company, to take as little as possible out of the Ceylon ships, and rather add to what they already have. This will be of greater service to the Company. The death of Commander Pieter Hackius and the appointment of Mr. Isbrand Goske as his successor have also been read in your despatches, so that we cannot refrain from congratulating the new Governor . . . not doubting that His Honour will maintain with us all friendly correspondence, in which we on our part shall not fail.

The garden seeds sent us we found fresh and good; the quantity might have been larger. The olive trees did not arrive, and the seed sent was just enough to cover a small plot. You should therefore send us a large quantity of garden seeds of various sorts, and by every opportunity, as far as possible. We regret that only this little hooker is leaving, so that we are debarred from sending you some sugar-cane plants, &c. With a more favourable opportunity we shall attend to this.

The arrival of the *Cattenburg* and *Saxenburg*, the latter destined for this Government, has not been unpleasant to us; regarding their further despatch we hope soon to hear, as well as of a glorious victory over our bitter enemies. We do not doubt that you will inform us in good time, in order to arrange war matters on this side accordingly. At present we have on the coast of India a fleet of 14 strong warships, commanded by the Hon: Superintendent, in order to search for our enemies, and under God's blessing to ruin them.

Affairs in Ceylon are disposing themselves favourably. For some time the French, by occupying the bay of Trineq, caused us no slight inconvenience, but after four months' possession, they were expelled from it by the Hon: Superintendent, and the post has been so strengthened by us that it will not easily be re-taken. We made prizes of five of their ships, among them three capital ones. Two small English private ships fell into our hands, one of which will richly recompense us for the loss sustained by the Company by the capture of the yacht *Meyboom* on the coast of India. This nation (? English) had already obtained information of the war in the beginning of October, and it would have been desirable if we had also received such an early intimation, when the whole French fleet under Mons: de la Heye would, with God's help, have fallen into our hands. Everything now depends on

the first victory which the good God may be pleased to grant to our side, when we shall be able to hold our own on this side, and assume another tone with the Ceylon King, who by admitting and assisting the French, and in many other treacherous ways, has as much as brought war on us. But we make no difficulty of this, if we only remain free from foreign enemies. Otherwise the affairs of this Government are in a fair state, and may God let it continue so for long.

This will be brought you by the hooker *De Cockmeeuw*, with a small cargo for Middelburgh, valued f9,161.10.12. We hope she will find the Batavia ships at the Cape, in which case we request you to deliver the cases with books and papers to the flag-ship for greater security. . . . Should, however, this not happen, you are to retain the book-case marked C.D, in case the hooker departs alone. . . . This hooker will bring you two criminals to be employed at the Cape for life at the Public Works (see their sentences), viz.: the black Jan of Wingurla, sent you last year in the *Swaantje*. He has attempted to spy us at Wingurla and thereabouts, and may for that reason be very well banished for life at the Cape, and earn his food there at the Company's works. . . ."—(Signed) R. v. GOENS, junior.—Colombo, the 6th February, 1673.

April 11th.—Arrival of the Danish return ship *De Gulde Fortuyn*, from Bantam, destined to Copenhagen. She brought the following short letter for us from Batavia: "Our last was dated the 10th October by the *Hasenbergh*, expressly sent to you with provisions, and we informed you that on the 3rd of the same month we had despatched the hooker *Grundel* to Mauritius with 8 lasts of rice and 2,000 bundles of paddy for planting, besides other necessaries, as will appear from the invoice. . . . On all sides we are on the watch for the enemy, and already, on the 5th November, in the neighbourhood of the broad bank to the South of Ligecepare, the English ship *Hannibal* fell into our hands, a vessel of about 200 lasts, carrying 26 guns and 70 men. She came from Jamby, and was full of pepper. Previously the French vessels, the *Red Phoenix* and *St. Jan* had been seized at Ceylon, where they still are, and the flute *Europa* sent hither, is now being fitted out as a return ship in order to leave this with three other flutes about the middle of January. . . . Your last to us were dated the 5th and 9th August, principally mentioning the war, and the orders sent you to detain the *Sarenburg* and *Cattenburg* at the Cape until further orders . . . and that Governor Isbrand Goske was expected every minute in the *Zuyd Polsbroeck*.

Gabriel Gabrielsz : and Larent Govertsen, brought hither by the *Lyster* from Robben Island, have been engaged by us as

1673.

sailors at f9 per month for three years. Another, named Carbet, died here in irons, in which he had been rivetted, after he had severely wounded another. . . .”—(Signed) J. MAETSUYCKER, A. VERBURG, L. PIT, P. A. OVERTWATER, C. SPEELMAN, and P. VAN HOORN.—In the Castle, Batavia, the 11th December, 1672.

One of the three captured English slaves who had run away, was caught and brought back; the others were not found.

April 14th.—Commencement made to-day to lengthen the wooden jetty to enable the boats to lie alongside at low water. This will be a great convenience.

April 15th.—Departure of the *Rheenen* to Ceylon. Arrival of the beautiful new ship *Asia* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 18th December with (?) men, of whom 80 had died. She brought 50 sick. Among the dead were all the ship's officers and the minister, Abraham Demetrius, wife and one child, also the boatswain and boatswain's mate. Only the cook and third officer had survived and brought the vessel hither. Yea! often they were not strong enough to take in or make sail.

The ships *Alkmaer*, &c., receive their despatch. The freemen's boat arrived with salt fish from Saldanha Bay. Arrival of the return ship *De Frans Europa*. Had left Batavia on the 4th February. She arrived in good condition. Everything at Batavia was favourable, and our people had already captured some English ships.

April 17th.—As various disputes had arisen on board the *Asia* after the death of her officers, and the third mate was not considered sufficiently capable to take command of her, it was decided to entrust her to the provisional skipper, Jan Sybrantsen Doen, chief mate of the *Ipensteyn*, left here last year, who, having commanded the *Swaantje* and the prize *Helena*, was considered a person of good ability.

April 18th.—Arrival of the little yacht *Voorhoudt* from Batavia with provisions and other necessities. She brought us the following letter. Reference made to the letter dated 11th December, sent per the Danish ship *De Gulden Fortuyn*, and the names of the return squadron given. "We have received no letters of later date than the 29th October last, namely, one from Governor Isbrand Goske and Council, and another private and separate one from Governor Goske himself, which gave a detailed account of affairs at the Cape, and mentioned that he had not found them in the best condition, and that many things required redressing. We trust that this has been done, especially in connection with the work at the Fort, but to send you slaves for the purpose from here is at present impossible, as we ourselves are but poorly supplied in consequence of their dying off, &c. Much necessary

work is therefore to be done with day labourers, but for all that we remain short of hands. Nor do we see a chance of again obtaining an abundance, though slaves are asked for from all places where it is thought they may be obtained. Therefore it would be the most convenient thing if you could obtain some from Guinea and Angola, or another place, as very few can be had, as you apprehend, at Madagascar and the Mayotte Islands, as has been fully experienced from the results of former expeditions despatched for the purpose. The result of the investigations of the Hon. Hubert Hugo will no doubt have thrown more light on the subject. At present it is by no means convenient to India because of the scarcity of men all around, as so many ships had to be sent from (P to) the Cape for the design on St. Helena, so that for that reason also the number of men and provisions will also be considerably reduced. Add to this that men can with difficulty be obtained at home, who, as you know, are so much needed in many places in India, when anything is to be done (especially in these times) and the Company greatly benefited. However, we have obtained some considerable advantages over the enemy, for on the 12th November, 1672, the English ship *Hannibal* was taken near the great sandbank to the east of Sumatra. She had a cargo of pepper from Jamky, and carried 26 guns and 60 whites. On the 21st following the English ship *Experiment* was also captured. She came from Taycuan with a cargo of Japan copper, alumn, lead, &c., and carried 20 guns and 61 English and 10 China men.

At Ceylon we took from the French the ships *Red Phœnix*, *St. Jean* and *Europa*. The French had also to abandon their posts and batteries and forts thrown up by them on the Company's lands in the Bay of Trinquimmale, after they had lost another ship named *L'Indiana*. Having left, they were scattered, demoralized, and thus became helpless. Besides, at St. Thomas, one of their best ships, *le Triumphe*, had been beached, as it is said, after they had taken that town from the Moors; all which you will no doubt have been informed of by the despatch boat from Ceylon *via* the Cape to the Fatherland, or even more fully from some of the friends on board that or other vessels.

The case with shovels and spades by mistake brought hither in the *Middelburg*, we now send you in the *Voorhout*, laden with rice and other necessities for the Cape.

As there has appeared before us here the person of Alexander Carpius, who has been employed as minister of religion at the Cape, and as sick visitor, and was granted a salary of f36 per month, having arrived there as freeman from the Fatherland, you will be pleased to remember that such persons promoted there in such a way should no longer be sent to us.

We send you some Timorese and Rottonese slaves, who, though

1673.

required here, should be employed by you at the Cape, in order to deprive them of the opportunity of deserting to their own country, from which they should necessarily be kept away. They are 39 in number, exclusive of 3 others, who are for life to labour in irons, named Roosje of Sabo, Pieter of Macassar, and Jeremias of Cabelang, late slaves of Sieur Hendrik Ter Horst, Mrs. Van den Helm and Daniel Sicx, total 42, divided among the six return ships and the yacht *Voorhout*. See list. (Signed) JAN MAETSUYCKER, N. VERBURGH, LAURENS PIT, P. VAN OVERTWATER, CORNELIS SPEELMAN, and PIETER VAN HOORN. Batavia, in the Castle, the 2nd February, 1673.

April 19th.—The *Voorhout* busy discharging rice, &c., and the other vessels taking in water and necessaries.

April 20th.—Departure of the *Alkmaar*, &c. (See 15th April.) Arrival of the remaining 5 return flutes under the command of Abraham Huybrechtsen; no persons of higher quality were on board. The value of the cargoes amounted to f 1,679,154, 16, 15, cost price. God Almighty grant them a safe voyage home.

The Danish officers came to bid farewell, and took with them a letter to the Seventeen *via* Copenhagen, containing nothing more than might be confided to neighbours.

April 21st.—The 39 slaves bought at our request at Batavia and the 3 convicts were landed. One of the 39 had died during the voyage. The rest were strong, healthy fellows, who will not be amiss here.

As stone-breaking has been continuing for a considerable time with cruelly hard labour and without much success, as the stone is of an incredibly hard substance, which no hammer or any other instrument can cleave, it was decided to bore under a certain unmanageable rock, and by undermining blast it. The effect was satisfactory. A good cleavage was obtained, so that, if further successful, our labour will be considerably lightened.

April 22nd.—Hard weather during the past night, with thunder and lightning, large hail and rain from the S.W. Our large boat blown on shore near the watch-house “*Het Houte Wambuis*.” She was, however, refloated uninjured. The lookouts on Lion’s Head reported that the flagstaff there had been riven asunder half-way by the lightning. 23rd. Storm continues; the ships had enough to do to hold on; some of their boats washed on shore.

April 24th.—Storm abated. Cold N.W. breeze. None of the stranded boats seriously injured, except that of *Het Wapen van Ter Veer*.

In order to make up the exact annual returns of the produce and goods of the freemen before the departure of the return fleet,

as is usual every year, one of the burgher Councillors and the first clerk at the Secretariat were sent out for the purpose, and a letter was sent out to False Bay to the *Goutvinck*, saying that as she had finished wood-cutting, and the return vessels had arrived, she was to make one trip to the Cape.

April 25th.—During the rainy and cold weather many of the slaves taken with the English prize fell ill; they do not seem to be accustomed to a bleak climate, or able to bear it. 26th. Departure of the Danish vessel with a S.E. breeze. Only after her departure it was discovered that the shoemaker, Matthys Smith, a Dane by birth, had escaped in her.

April 27th.—Arrival during the night of the two large ships, *Zuyd Polsbroeck* and *Het Wapen van Ter Goes*, the first returned from St. Helena without any late news, and the second from Zealand with 259 men. Had called at St. Vincent for refreshments, and lost £1 by death; brought as many sick. Her officers reported that on the 13th March last, in 6° 18' S. Lat., and 353° 52' Long. W., they had fallen in with 9 or 11 French ships, and were so near that they could distinguish their white flags, and conclude that they were tending towards India. As soon as they discovered them, they at once turned towards the North and escaped without being interfered with. This having been considered by the Council, it was decided to make every preparation for the enemy's arrival, and should he select Saldanha Bay, to proceed thither to look for him. At the same time the ships were ordered to arrange themselves in the best manner on the roadstead, and be continually prepared for battle.

April 28th.—Note sent to Saldanha Bay with the freemen's boat, proceeding thither to fish, notifying to the postholders there the possible arrival of the French in that bay, and should this happen at once to inform us.

The 37 slaves brought over from St. Helena and distributed among the officers of the fleet, having been sold at good prices, were by express interdict, notified to the Commander and Council per the *Posthoorn*, again released, and ordered to be sent away in the *Polsbroeck*. They were brought on shore to-day, being the best, and selected according to each one's fancy.

Towards evening another rock was blasted with similar good effect.

April 29th.—In the meeting this evening it was decided to send to St. Helena beforehand, as Commander of the flute *De Frans Europa*, Captain Bredenhagh. She will leave with the first favourable breeze. As chief of the Military here will remain the Lieutenant Dirck Jansen Smient, and with the rank of Ensign, Sergeant Jeronymus Cruse, both persons of good repute.

1673.

April 30th (Sunday).—After service the master agriculturist arrived from Hottentoots Holland with the information that all the grain given him had been put into the ground, and that he wanted considerably more. The soil there appears from outward signs to be very fertile and promising good returns.

May 1st.—Departure of the *Frans Europa* to St Helena. Whereas the Company's villa "Rustenburg," its garden, vineyard and orchard, kept up for a long time at the Company's expense, does not with its grapes and vines by far bring in what is necessary for repairs and maintenance, much less any profits; and whereas two of our burghers, who are well-to-do residents, offer to lease the whole on fair conditions, it was decided, as sufficient vegetables are produced in the large garden at the Fort for the passing ships, and the place has hitherto been such a great expense to the Company, to lease it to the aforesaid burghers for f4,000 per annum, but with such conditions and restrictions as have been laid down in detail, with the hope that the Company will not lose by it.

April 2nd.—According to annual custom and the request of Governor Van Goens, we took out of the *Cockmeeuw* all the papers for the Fatherland, in order to be distributed among the Batavia return ships.

The master agriculturist having received some additional muids of seed corn, left with it for Hottentoots Holland. Fine weather.

May 3rd.—In accordance with the conditions made with the lessees of the "Rondebosje" or "Rustenburg," the latter was with its garden and all movable and immovable goods properly transferred to the tenants.

May 8th.—Books closed to-day in order to send the annual statement home in the return fleet.

May 9th.—After the farewell dinner had been given, and the letters sent on board, it was found that four Cingalese convicts and many Dutchmen were missing, as well as a certain freeman. As it is presumed that they have stowed themselves away in the return ships, the officers were informed of this and requested at once to send them on shore should they be discovered. The Fiscal will also attend to this to-morrow at the general muster.

May 10th.—General muster of the crews, but no stowaways discovered; the ships only waiting for a favourable wind. A small letter written to the officers at St. Helena, instructing them, in case the stowaways made their appearance during the voyage, to land them there and send them back to us in irons by first opportunity.

May 11th.—Departure of the Return Fleet. God grant it a prosperous voyage home.

May 12th.—The articles requisitioned by St. Helena being shipped into the *Swaantje*, the *Bruydegom* arrives from Saldanha Bay with 22 cases of saltfish, which is a very welcome supply to our slaves.

We find that blasting is far less troublesome than breaking the rocks with crowbars and hammers.

Commenced to build a “taip” wall at the curtain on the south side as far as the segment, before which at any time a stone wall can be built. We have also been busy some days enclosing the back of the Sea Point with a stone wall. Hitherto only sods had been used.

May 13th.—Four Cingalese convicts and six Dutch soldiers were missed to-day. They have most likely left in the Return Fleet.

As usual, no work was done this (Saturday) afternoon, and a portion of the military were exercised in arms, which is also highly necessary.

May 14th (Sunday).—Black and rainy weather. A sermon read in the afternoon.

May 15th.—Departure of *Het Swaantje* to St. Helena. In order to search for the six Dutchmen who are missing, the Ensign and some soldiers were sent out, and ordered to remain some days in the veld or elsewhere, and be very diligent in their efforts to capture them.

May 16th.—Some days ago various shameful and vile acts have been committed on board the *Asia* by the assistant Andries Meijer belonging to her. Since the death of the officers he had fraudulently destroyed and stolen the goods left behind by them, and ill treated the little son of the deceased minister Demetrius. The Fiscal was accordingly sent on board to investigate. As the boy, 14 years old, had had full knowledge of his doings, and he feared that he would reveal everything, he made him swallow a poisonous powder, with no other object than to kill him; after that he had trodden on his chest with his feet and evidently pulled his head by the hair hither and thither, and throttled him, so that the boy thus martyred and hurt had become *de facto* speechless, and until to-day has been suffering most miserably (decumbeert). The Fiscal was accordingly instructed to make a strict investigation and furnish himself with sufficient evidence, in order to secure a proper conviction.

May 17th.—When the gate was opened this morning the sergeant of the New castle reported that last night the soldier Jan

1673.

Elias Busch of Dorlach had cut his throat and died. At once Commissioners and the Fiscal were deputed to investigate the matter and examine such witnesses as might be able to give information. They reported that the soldier had cut his throat, and that from the evidence of witnesses it appeared that feeling somewhat indisposed last night he had taken some medicine to open his bowels; that about 3 in the morning he had said to one of the witnesses that he was going outside the barracks to get a little fresh air; and that shortly afterwards deponent having been sent out with some others to look for him, had found him lying outside the curtain of the Fort on the sea shore bathed in blood, with a bloody knife at his side.

During the evening meeting the question was discussed whether the suicide should be allowed burial, or whether the Council should proceed according to law with the corpse. It was decided to bury it, as it was presumed that the patient, in consequence of his indisposition, must have suffered from temporary insanity, and did not commit the act because he hated his life, but that he had been bereft of his senses and thus killed himself. In such a case the strictness of the law is not desired, which decrees that such malefactors shall be dealt with as an example to others.

May 18th.—Some wine landed from the *Asia*. As the ships destined to Batavia and Ceylon are ready to leave, and the case of the assistant Meijer would detain them, it was decided to place the culprit on board the *Zuyd Polsbroek*, and thus send him with the papers against him to Batavia, in order to be tried there. Heavy rains developing into a storm. Towards evening two soldiers from Hottentoots Holland, brought in a runaway Malagasy slave. He had been found by the shepherd. He will be somewhat castigated to-morrow.

May 19th.—The stormy weather continues; much damage done to the works, which it will take some weeks to restore. The two soldiers return to Hottentoots Holland, with a letter to the superintendent there, urging him to do his best, either by offering rewards to the Hottentoots, or by means of his own men, to recover the fugitive slaves.

May 21st (Pentecost).—Celebrated this festival by going to church once. The wind and rain were so severe that we feared that some buildings and works would collapse in the old as well as the new fort; whilst we were very anxious also about the vessels in the bay, which were being terribly knocked about by the heavy seas.

May 22nd.—The same stormy weather, so that the masoned furrow was considerably cracked and a large portion was washed

away, so that not only could the vessels not leave, but the works were also stopped.

May 23rd.—Storm not quite so vehement, but still accompanied with terrible rain, thunder, and lightning. The ships have already been given a considerable number of cables and anchors, otherwise they would have been greatly imperilled.

May 24th.—Storm gradually abating, but the rain is still falling.

Towards evening we got back by means of some of our men and Hottentoots three of the runaway Cingalese convicts. The fourth is still at large, and, according to their confession, must be still hiding somewhere in the forest. They stated that they had intended to seek refuge among the Namaquas, who would soon have grown tired of and killed them. It is deplorable that these people, for no conceivable reason, endeavour to rush from one evil into another still greater.

May 25th.—Rain continuing with a N.W. wind; the sea again navigable.

The English prize, re-named the *Helena*, we intend to despatch to Mauritius, partly to convey thither some lasts of rice in the place of the *Grundel* (wrecked), and partly to take thence a cargo of ebony for Batavia, with a report regarding the state of affairs on that Island.

May 26th.—The outward bound vessels are at last able to leave with a S.E. breeze. The master butcher sent to Hottentoots Holland to investigate what damage the stormy weather has caused to the cattle there. The men who had brought the runaway slaves two days ago returned by road to Saldanha Bay with a letter to the Corporal there to do his best to recapture the others.

May 27th.—The flute *Helena* leaves for St. Helena with our letters. The Company's slaves, and chiefly those who came from St. Helena, are dying very much, a considerable number having been buried within a short time, which is very inconvenient for the Company.

May 28th (Sunday).—Pleasant weather. After service the usual parade was held.

May 29th.—By blasting ('t mineeren) in the quarry (clipkuijl) a very fine large rock was burst asunder to-day, whilst the works progressed favourably.

May 30th.—As it has been found that by letting out some of the works to her own people for a certain sum, the Company some-

1673. — times secures cheaper and quicker work than when she does it herself, whilst at the same time the men have no reason to complain of the work, it was decided to let out, on their offer, to a sergeant and some volunteer soldiers the erection of the third point with earth, in accordance with the plan, and surround it with a well stamped "taip" wall, and in such a manner that at any time it may be faced with a stone wall according with the plan. This they undertook to do for f4,000, to be paid proportionately as the work progressed, without any time being stipulated. At the same time another contract was made with two other officers of similar rank and their men for the quarrying of as much stone as is required for facing the earthen point, and that for f6,000, also without any time being stipulated, it being hoped that they will urge themselves on sufficiently, in order to have the work done the sooner the better, and thus receive the pay due to them pro ratâ. The contractors have already set to with a will, but the unsteady weather has been much against them.

May 31st.—Heavy rains and sea winds the whole day so that very little was done at the works. Court of Justice sat this morning in order to clear the prisons and let the evildoers undergo their punishment as deserved. There were 4 of them, viz: 2 sailors named Jan van Nes, who had wounded his comrade on board the return ship *Pynacker*; the other had injured his skipper. Both were sentenced to be keelhauled and thrashed, and to work for some years at the public works here. The third, a master smith, formerly in the service, was, on account of actual opposition and resistance against the Lieutenant of the Garrison and Commander of the tradesmen's quarters, sentenced to have a bullet fired over his head, and besides the money fine, to work 5 years at the public works. Number 4 was a burgher carpenter, who was convicted of having threatened to shoot the Governor, and having thus committed the crime of *læsæ majestatis*, was also sentenced to have a bullet fired over his head and banished to the public works for three years.

June 1st.—Yesterday's sentences having been revised and signed, the two last mentioned criminals received their sentences at 11 o'clock, and when they thought of going to the place of punishment, they received a letter of pardon, excusing them from being brought to the "Schavot" and having a bullet fired over their heads. The sentences of the others remained as they were.

The master agriculturist arrived from Hottentoots Holland for the monthly rations, with a letter from the Superintendent. He reported that the crops were looking well and promising. In consequence, however, of the long and heavy rains the river had become so full that if they had not made cuttings to prevent it overflowing its banks, without doubt most of the lands sown would

have been swamped and washed away. This was confirmed by the master butcher, who added that, in consequence of the cold weather, the sheep there were beginning to die off considerably. The chief reason he ascribes to the kraal not being protected from the rain, so that the sheep were not only to search for their food during the day in the wet, but were also during the night unable to stand dry. Their feet became very sore in consequence, so that this inconvenience made them sick. The letter of the Superintendent to the Governor is as follows:—"From your letter of the 18th instant I find that 5 or 6 other similar slaves have run away. Have accordingly done our best to discover and recapture the others, but hitherto without success. We have ordered a kraal of Hottentoots in the neighbourhood that if any slaves visit them or are met by them anywhere in the country, they were to detain and bring them to us. For this they were promised a good piece of tobacco. They promised to do their best.

The month being ended, I send the wagon over to fetch our monthly rations. The sheep here are in bad condition, as they cannot stand dry at night in consequence of the heavy rains that have fallen here continuously night and day for eight days, so that the whole kraal was overrun with water and the sheep had to perish in the dung and dirt. Thirty-four have already died and 4 been killed by a tiger during the night in the kraal. We send you 173 sheep, selected here by Jochem Marquart, so that we still have 707 here.

Jochem Marquart arrived on the 27th, and has seen the condition of the sheep, &c., so that he will be able to report to you verbally.

Of the cattle 3 have died, the rest are still well. With the sheep we send you, as desired, 6 young draught oxen, besides 5 others belonging to Lieutenant Smient, so that 455 head of cattle remain here. We have 10 horses which are growing well.

Some Hottentoots have been here with 12 sheep for sale; some of them we asked to bring us cattle also, and we therefore beg you to send us some tobacco and copper beads for the purpose. Will do my best to obtain good beasts and report accordingly. Yesterday 6 Hottentoots came from the kraal of Captain Claas, saying that they intend to bring some cattle for barter.

The carpenter has wounded his one leg with an axe, the result of his work at the river. Ten other men have also fallen sick. We therefore request you to send some medicines to the surgeon to be used for the sick here. (Signed) LOURENS VISSCHER. In Hottentoots Holland, the 29th May, 1673."

June 2nd.—The men return to Hottentoots Holland with the rations and some more grain for sowing.

June 3rd.—The Governor proceeds on horseback to the watch-house "De Ruijterstal," in order to inspect the country posts.

1673.

June 4th.—Continuous heavy rain during the night and the whole of this day. One of the gables of the Governor's house fell down, and the walls of the old Fort were collapsing in various places, and mostly all the low-lying fields were under water. More of this kind of accident will not promise a good harvest; nevertheless the Lord's Sabbath was celebrated by going to Church once, though few hearers were found there.

June 5th.—The *Oester* takes the 4 convicts and a native to Robben Island, banished thither to labour at the public works. Work progressing satisfactorily to-day; the mason busy repairing the damage done to the old fort.

June 7th.—During the night a large portion of the work undertaken, viz: the making of an earthen point and protect it with a "taip" wall, collapsed. It seems that this kind of work cannot very well be done during the present wet season, so that it will have to be proceeded with gradually. A strong S. Easter is drying the ground considerably.

June 9th.—Fine weather: a great deal of work being done. It is to be hoped that the superfluous rains will leave us for a while, and so prevent damage to the new works. Some masons and hodmen still busy repairing the old Fort, whose roofs and walls have suffered much from the winds and rains.

The master butcher returns from Hottentoots Holland with two letters, the one from the Agriculturist and the second from the Superintendent there merely mentioning that they were busy putting into the ground the 22 muids of seed grain sent them, 18 of which had already been sown, and bringing under substantial roofs the dwelling house, sheep shed, and stables, in order to protect the cattle from the rain, a matter which the former Superintendent evidently did not attend to.

June 10th.—A gun having been fired on Robben Island, the *Schulp* was sent thither with a sergeant and 6 soldiers, to find the reason, and should there be any disorder, to put matters straight. Weather darkly clouded and the wind variable.

June 11th (Sunday).—A pleasant day. The *Schulp* returns from the Island with the information that everything was all right there and that no gun had been fired there, which somewhat astonishes us, as the shot had been heard by many very clearly.

June 12th.—Fine weather for works and repairing the tile factory which had greatly suffered from the tempest. The salt pork and meat were also freshly pickled to prevent their spoiling.

June 13th.—Since Sunday evening a Dutchman has been miss-

ing, and notwithstanding careful search, has not yet been found. Heavy S. Easter. 15th. North wind and cloudy.

1673.

June 18th (Sunday).—Arrived from Saldanha Bay in charge of some Hottentoots and two Dutch soldiers, four of the soldiers lately deserted. They had been captured by the men of the *Bruydegom*, in St. Helena Bay, and sent overland to us. We also received 53 sheep bartered here, 3 of which had succumbed on the way. The letter of the Superintendent was as follows:—"Having, as ordered, promised a moderate reward of tobacco to the Hottentoots to look for and capture the deserters, the Hottentoots delivered to the *Bruydegom*, lying in St. Helena Bay, four of them; they were brought to us escorted by two of our men and 6 natives. The next day we had them forwarded with 3 of our men and 4 Hottentoots, in order to be delivered to you. We also send you 55 sheep, bartered by us; and as this is the first great barter, we request you to send us more Brazilian tobacco and pipes, as Virginia tobacco can only be used in bartering trifles, such as tusks, skins, &c.

As our other supplies have been much reduced by the presence of the captured deserters, especially as regards rice, so that we are on short rations, we trust that in your discretion you will furnish us with an extra supply. On the 17th of July next our four months' supply of rations will end, that is, for four months. As my men were away at the time to the Cape, the fourth fugitive slave was brought hither on a Hottentoot's pack ox, a distance of 3 (Dutch) miles, from our lodge, and not without expense. He was thoroughly enfeebled, and was nourished by us for 3 weeks without having sufficiently recovered to be able to come over by this opportunity, but we shall send him with the next boat."

(Signed) DIRK VAN DER HEERENGRAAFF,
The 18th June, 1673.

Towards evening the master agriculturist arrived from Hottentoots Holland, who could not sufficiently extol the evident fertility of the land in that region, that is, as far as human judgment goes. We shall endeavour to send more grain required there for sowing. 19th. The master agriculturist leaves with some grain and 50 copper chains, 25lbs. tobacco and a quantity of red beads for Hott. Holland. They are to be delivered to the corporal there, and used for the cattle trade, as the surrounding Hottentoots have a liking for them.

June 21st.—The four recaptured deserters having been examined, threw the blame on one of their comrades, a Swede, not yet captured. They accused him of having persuaded them to desert, but this merits little belief, and does not excuse the crime.

June 22nd.—The two soldiers who brought the fugitives here,

1673.

return to Saldanha Bay with a letter to the overseer, urging him to be very diligent in his endeavours to recapture the other fugitives, and as his feeding these vagabonds has considerably reduced his supplies, which will be consumed before the usual time, an order was enclosed to the *Bruydegom* to supply him with as much rice as it could spare and return hither without delay.

June 24th.—The *Schulp* proceeds to Robben Island with 24 bottles oil for use there. She will, as usual, bring back a cargo of shells.

June 25th (Sunday).—Divine service in the morning, and the usual parade in the afternoon.

June 28th.—Bleak, unsteady weather. The next new moon will probably bring a change.

June 29th.—Some Hottentoots of Gounema's tribe reported to various freemen here that Gounema had surrounded somewhere on a point of land, whence they could neither retire nor advance, eight of our burghers, who, without permission, had gone up to shoot some large game for the needs of their families. His object was to cut them off from all supplies, except what they had with them, that they might perish in consequence, but as this rumour seems to be rather untruthful, it was accepted as false.

July 1st.—Arrival of the large ship *Europa* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 4th February with 270 men, of whom 52 had died. She brought 45 sick. The news she brought was the capture of the celebrated Fortress Coeverden, taken from the Bishop of Munster, with a small force, and added to our State. The just God be prayed that the designs of their High mightinesses may be blessed and prosper more and more.

July 2nd (Sunday).—Fine weather: after service the sick of the *Europa* were landed. In the afternoon the usual parade was held.

July 3rd.—As a certain Willem Willemsen, of Deventer, arrived in the *Europa*, who had last year escaped in a Danish vessel, the *Phœnix*, after having killed a Hottentoo, and as he mentions that in consequence of a memorial submitted to His Highness the Prince of Orange, he had obtained corporal safety (*securité de corps*) it was decided in the evening meeting, in consideration of his notoriously coarse life, and in order to excuse our prisons, until this matter, which appears to be very suspicious, shall be further investigated, to forbid the said Willem Willemsen from landing until our further orders.

July 4th.—The rumours spread by the Hottentoots regarding the remaining away of the eight freemen above mentioned (see

29th June) are still continuing, and it is feared, not without reason, that should they not return shortly, or other tidings are obtained of them, there may be some truth in the rumour, as the privileged time for their staying away will soon be past.

July 6th.—Fine weather. To-day the two freemen from the Fatherland, who had come out to settle here, were landed with their families. They are Jacob Hendricxe van der Order and Jacob Cornelissen van Demmerhorst.

July 7th.—The *Bruijdegom* arrives from St. Helena Bay with 22 casks salt fish, which will be very welcome for our slaves, as through want of it they had to be fed on Fatherland meat, which it would be too costly to continue.

Two of our burghers, who had given cattle, wagons, &c., to the 8 freemen out on the hunting expedition, and were consequently much interested in their fate, obtained permission to proceed to the kraals of the Hottentots who have spread the rumour, in order to discover the truth, in order if necessary, to take steps.

July 8th.—Goods landed from the *Europa*. Two Commissioners and the Fiscal sent on board in order to examine the freeman Willem Willemsen. On their return they reported at the evening meeting that after examination of Willem Willemsen they had found his memorial to the Prince to be full of false statements, and that he was still helping himself with obvious lies, though the real facts of the case were sufficiently laid before him.

July 10th.—A mist so heavy that the vessels on the roadstead could not be seen. The two burghers despatched to the Hot: kraals to inquire into the rumours, returned this evening and reported that the 2 natives, who had lately arrived from Gounema's kraals, adhered to their statement, and pretended to have sufficient knowledge of the affair. One of the deserting soldiers, named Jan the Swede, was this day captured, and acknowledged that he was the chief instigator of the desertion, having urged his other comrades to run away.

July 11th.—When the gate was opened it was discovered that an expert and well-known thief had, during the past night, broken into the train oil store, situated outside the Fort, and stolen a cask of aniseed arrack, and as the butler had his suspicions directed to one of the vessels on the roadstead, he went on board the *Oester*, where the cask had already been tapped into two half aums. The sailors testified that the quarter-master had, during the past night, brought the cask on board in a small boat. It is greatly to be deplored that people will not refrain from such crimes, whose likes are still so memorable, and the punishment for which has been no deterrent as an example to others.

1673.

Towards evening a quarrel arose at the house of a certain innkeeper between the trumpeter, Cornelis Jansen Potman, and the chief boatswain, Pieter Laulusz: of the *Europa*, with the result that the former stabbed the latter in the right breast, killing him. The murderer at once made away, and the Fiscal and others were sent in pursuit. The Fiscal, however, captured the arrack thief instead of the homicide, who, being interrogated, as much as confessed his guilt.

After evening prayer, having consulted about the staying away of our 8 freemen and the rumours about them, it was decided to send out an immense (ontsaggelijcke) expedition under the ensign Jeronijmus Cruse, strengthened with 36 strong soldiers and a similar number of burghers, who are to depart to-morrow evening for the kraals of Gounema, with orders to repay with similar measures those retaining our burghers there with violence, and liberate the latter from the barbarians, and as these same natives have for years past acted iniquitously and hostilely towards ourselves and the well-disposed residents of this place, and without reason, to take such revenge as will be a memorable warning to them no longer to offend the Netherlanders (see Resolution on this subject). In order to call the burghers together at 8 o'clock to-morrow morning, the Messenger of Justice was sent out with summonses, so that further steps may be taken afterwards.

July 12th.—The freemen who had been summoned, 36 in number, having collected within the Fort, the reason of their having been called together was notified to them by the Governor. All were prepared to go, and were instructed to keep the affair quiet and tell it to no one, that the object be not frustrated. They were to be ready in the evening, and meet at a certain rendezvous, in order to march thence without beat of drum.

The homicide of yesterday was captured this morning by 2 soldiers below the Fortress. The Fiscal and Commissioners proceeded on board the *Europa* to collect some evidence, and after their return the culprit was examined, who confessed that the cause was drink, and the blame gambling.

Between 8 and 9 p.m. Ensign Cruse left with his men, provided with brief written instructions.

July 13th.—The lions killed last night 5 head of cattle about an hour from the Fort. They were the property of one of the burghers in the country, which will certainly not be welcome to the poor man.

July 14th.—The *Bruijd* arrives from Saldanha Bay with a cargo of salt fish, and also brings with her a soldier of the garrison there, from whom as well as from the two freemen on board we heard of the frightful massacre committed by Gounema's tribes

under the pretence of being anxious to barter sheep to Corporal Dirck van der Heerengraaff, another soldier and two freemen. Not only did they miserably beat them dead, but they also afterwards carried off the Company's effects. They had planned the same fate for the surviving soldier, if he had not escaped and saved himself on board the freemen's vessel. This cannot but have an irreparable and unbearable result (the more so, as it is to be feared that the other eight freemen have also been murdered) for the Company and the public, and therefore cannot be overlooked. Accordingly Ensign Cruse was at once advised of everything, and strengthened with 18 horsemen, burghers, and Company's servants. He also received such written orders as he required.

The Company having appeared before the Fort, all well mounted, were despatched with the following note to Ensign Jeronimus Cruse and Council:—"This morning we received sure tidings that the Gounema tribes had at Saldanha Bay treacherously surprised and in a villainous manner, pretending that they desired to barter some cattle, murdered (God better it!) Corporal Dirck van der Heerengraaff, a soldier, and two freemen, as well as plundered the Company's house and property, leaving nothing behind. Only one soldier escaped here in the freemen's boat, so that it is to be feared that the eight freemen whom you were sent out to deliver from their oppressors (geweldinaers) have also been massacred. This of course cannot be borne, so that we have at once decided to notify you of everything and strengthen you with 11 Company's servants and 7 freemen, all mounted, who will join you as quickly as possible. We also command you on receipt of this, if it has not yet been done for reasons contained in the instructions issued to you, at once to attack the Gounema tribes, and annihilate them root and branch, sparing no male. The cattle which may fall into your hands you shall treat in accordance with our previous orders. We also send you a sail to be used by you as a tent, in case of rain. We hope that God the Lord will let the murderers perish by the sword, and bless the Company's arms.

And as Mons: Elbert Diemer, burgher Lieutenant, accompanies the expedition, he shall in Council precede in rank the burgher Ensign Gresnich and Mons: Valckenrijk, besides the free sergeants. We expect to see you all back as soon as practicable, with the understanding however that you will lose no advantage obtainable over the enemy. With which accept our greeting and be commended to God."—(Signed) Isbrand Goske, Albert van Breugel, Dirq Jansen Smient, and Hendrik Crudop, Councillor and Secretary.

In the meanwhile the Court of Justice had also been sitting to try the homicide, who was sentenced to die in the open air as usual, whilst the minister of the Divine Word was sent to him to comfort and admonish him. A lion was shot during the past

1673.

night by a freeman in the latter's sheepshed in the country, after he had killed 16 sheep. The freeman received the usual reward of £25.

July 15th.—At the usual time the homicide, Cornelis Jansen Potman, born at Edam, was shot; he seemed to have deeply repented of his sins. The dead body was buried. N.W. winds, with heavy showers. Bad weather.

July 16th (Sunday).—A cow was killed during the night by a lion very near, below the old Fort. That audacious bird of prey (roofvogel) will certainly one day be repaid for it, as already trap-guns have been set for its benefit.

July 18th.—The *Europa* leaves. The Corporal and Commander in Hottentoots Holland sent us a small note and small bag of oysters to be planted here on the rocks and thus let them breed. We have already started the trial.

July 19th.—As the small quantity of oysters obtained from Hot. Holland are not worth the trouble of rearing, a letter was sent to the Commander there, ordering him, without interfering with other necessary work, to send a good deal more, as the small quantity sent did not merit the trouble of attending to them. He was also informed of the massacre at Saldanha Bay, and ordered to permit no one to go beyond musket range.

About the time of our evening meeting one of the soldiers who had accompanied the ensign on land, and had on Sunday been expressly despatched by him, arrived with the news that that same day the 18 horsemen had joined him; that, however, he had not yet fallen in with the Gounoma tribes, who were squatting with their kraals on the other side of the Berg River. They were making every preparation for crossing it before sunset and following up the enemy. Everything was in a good state, excepting that the provisions which they had taken with them were beginning to diminish.

July 22nd.—The master butcher returns from Hottentoots Holland with a note from the Superintendent there, stating that a tiger had broken into the sheep shed and killed five sheep. He also verbally reported that the Cape Hottentoots had camped right in the passage, and as they are a thieving nation, it is to be feared that they have some object in view injurious to the Company. It was therefore decided to strengthen the garrison there with 10 more soldiers, and despatch the land surveyor Wittebol thither at once, in order to throw up a breastwork before the Lodge there, carrying with him such orders as are mentioned below. The master butcher also despatched thither with orders to convey hither all the Company's cattle, so as to defeat the object of the Hottentoots.

Letter to the Superintendent at Hot. Holland.

1673

"From yours of the 21st instant we learnt the condition of affairs there, whilst the master butcher has also verbally informed us of one thing and another. It was no pleasant news that, notwithstanding our reiterated orders, the sheepshed had not been made so secure that the tiger was able, on the 20th instant, to break into it and kill five sheep. We accordingly once more order you to attend to this matter, otherwise we shall be obliged to hold you personally responsible for further loss suffered by the Company. We hear that the making of a trap to catch the tiger, as ordered by us, has been effected. The model has been sufficiently explained to the carpenter there. We have sent the master butcher back to fetch some young cattle; 10 soldiers go with him to reinforce you. As soon as they arrive, they shall assist in making a stockade with an earthen breastwork, as will be pointed out by the surveyor Wittebol. Remember to be on your guard, and let no men go out without fire or side arms. This we order you on pain of high responsibility, and when occasion offers, order the Hottentoo Captain Claas to come hither." (Signed) ISBRAND GOSKE.

July 23rd (Sunday).—Service held in a strong S. Easter. A vessel approaching. Anchored below Robben Island.

July 24th.—Unexpected news received from Ensign Cruse. He was on his way back, and hoped to be here to-morrow. He had found the kraals of the Gounemas, and having killed some, had obtained a large quantity of cattle as booty.

The vessel anchored off Robben Island was reported to be *De Vliegende Zwaan*, from St. Helena, with many sick. Of her 20 men she had lost nine. What troubled us most was that that island had been recaptured by the enemy, as will be seen from the following report:—

A short narrative mentioning how during the last voyage of the *Vliegende Zwaan* to St. Helena, she found the island, and her encounter there.

"Having left Table Bay on the 15th May last, we sighted the N. side of the island on the night of the 6th June by moonlight. We then lay to, in order at daybreak to go round the eastern side. This was satisfactorily accomplished, and about 10 o'clock in the (?) afternoon we weathered the N. E. point, approaching the land as near as possible, in order, according to our sailing orders, the better to observe from the point of the mountains the signal flags, but observing nothing, we continued our course, flying our own signals and feeling no anxiety. But rounding the N.E. point we saw a rowing sloop anchored, and as we thought, waiting for us, but on approaching we found no men in her. We therefore

1673.

sailed past her, in order to reach the "Craack" and afterwards the 'Kerk Valey.' But we had hardly passed the sloop and reached the 'Kraack Valey' when we saw seven buoys lying in a row near the shore, which made us suspect danger. This we soon discovered to be the case, for having passed the 'Kraack Valey' and sighted the 'Kerk Valey' we saw a white flag with a red cross flying from the Fort, as well as a large number of men, who appeared to be doing their best to embark in a boat lying at the landing place. At the same time a heavy cannonade was opened against us from the battery in the 'Craack Valey,' about 60 or 70 shots of large calibre, one of which only passed through the flag behind. In the meanwhile, having obtained a favourable breeze offshore, we gradually sailed away from the island until we were beyond gunshot, going round the west side of it, so that in the evening we thanked God for our deliverance and decided to return to the Cape. During the voyage back a violent infectious disease broke out among the crew, of whom nine died, while five others were sent to the hospital after our fortunate arrival here. The rest were so weak that they were hardly able to take in **any** sail properly, or weigh anchor.

This is what we, the undersigned, have to declare regarding our encounter at the said island. It would be superfluous, if requested to confirm it by oath. (Signed) Reynier van den Bergh, Cornelis Glimmen, Abel Aenclix, Lodewyk Jansen, and Aernout Lammertsen. At Cabo d'Bonne Esperance, the 1st August, 1673."

This sad news made us fear that the return ships might also have encountered some danger there, judging from the cut cables found there, which make us conjecture that they have been attacked, and if they have not been able to save themselves by sailing away, they have, perhaps all, which God forbid, been destroyed.

The little vessel also brought a letter from the officers of the *Europa*, mentioning that they had supplied her (the *Zwaantje*) with some provisions, and that at that moment they had not advanced more than 12 miles.

July 25th.—When the gate opened a wagon was despatched with some biscuits and arrack to meet the returning expedition, and bring the men some refreshments. Hale and hearty they arrived at the Fort at noon with a troop of fully 800 excellent cattle and 900 beautiful sheep. Their report was as follows:—"Towards the evening of the 12th, seventy-two of us, burghers and Company's servants, left the Fort and about nine o'clock arrived at the 'Hooge Kraalen,' the appointed rendezvous; thence we proceeded to the 'Roode Zand,' where the Hottentoo Captain Cuijper was lying with his kraals. Among them we were told was one of Gounoma's men. He was at once seized and

bound, and with the hard threat of death compelled to point out the spot on which his captain and his kraals were located, we intending to use him as a guide on the road. On the 13th we took our mid-day meal between the Mosselbank and Tigerberg, where the men were provided with powder and lead. In the evening we arrived at the Mosselbank, under a dreadful rain. At noon the next day (14th) we reached the 'Paardeberg,' where the instructions were read to the men, which ordered Ensign Jeronimus Cruse, as head of the expedition, to carry out his orders promptly; this was received with acclamation. We passed the night at Riebecks Kasteel. During a heavy rain this whole day (15th) we reached the Berg River towards evening, and made a raft to cross it to-morrow. Passed the whole of this day (Sunday, the 16th) in conveying our things across, which was done, thank God! without accident; but we had hardly crossed when we saw on the other side some horsemen, whom however on account of the darkness we could not communicate with. Early this morning (17th) the horsemen were conveyed across; they were the burgher Lieutenant Elbert Diemer and 16 horsemen, bringing a letter from the Governor to the Ensign, confirming not only his commission, but also informing him of the execrable massacre of our garrison at Saldanha Bay by the Gounemas. He was ordered to attack that tribe and their allies, not sparing any males, &c.; for that purpose he had received the newly arrived reinforcement. We took our mid-day meal here, and afterwards marched to the Sonqua water, where we slept. On the 18th, finding that our provisions were nearly exhausted without having found an enemy, we decided to collect together what we had, in order to know how long it would last. In the meanwhile we would follow up the enemy. The captive Hottentoo, Corand, was called, who being most rigorously threatened with death if he did not discover the enemy to us, assured us that if they had not left we would find them this very day. After having crossed 26 rivers in succession, we saw some smoke ascending on the slopes of a large mountain range. We were then at the 'Moras (Marsh) Rivier.' We saw it distinctly three times. This rejoiced us exceedingly, and we sent at once one of our trusted men to investigate. Returning towards evening he reported that he had seen some of the enemy's kraals, and some of the women digging roots. This gave us great pleasure. We kept good watch this night, and decided to break up two or three hours before daylight, and thus surprising them unexpectedly destroy the enemy completely. 19th. About half-past four this morning Ensign Cruse led the way with his footmen, the horsemen following in the rear, in order to surround the kraals and prevent the escape of any that might endeavour to flee from the footmen. At daylight we reached the place where the enemy had taken up its night quarters. But in some way or another it had

1673.

been made aware of our coming and had left early. Nevertheless the horsemen gave their horses the spur, followed the enemy, which when seeing them fled, leaving behind a beautiful troop of sheep, and when further pursued, a considerable number of cattle. They took refuge in the mountain, where it was impossible to overtake them.

One of the burgher horsemen having left his company in pursuit of some Hottentoots who, from fear, had hidden themselves in a river, was wounded in the back with an assegay, without running any considerable danger; his pistols had failed to go off.

In the meanwhile Ensign Cruse and his footmen had pursued two of the kraals (negerjen) and captured their cattle also. All escaped to the mountains except a few. After that the whole expedition reunited, and without delay the cattle was driven to our former resting-place, in order to spend the night there; but whilst being driven along they were surrounded by a multitude of Hottentoots, who were, however, continually beaten off by the cavalry, so that they had no chance of recapturing any of the animals. About five o'clock in the afternoon, we arrived at our place of rest and drove the cattle into the deserted kraals of the enemy, where they were securely guarded during the night by two or three sentries, in order not to be surprised by the cunning rascals. 20th. At daylight we drove the cattle across the 26 rivers, leaving behind some old ewes and young lambs, which were at once taken possession of by the Hottentoots who were following us. Towards evening we reached the Sonqua Water, where we passed the night. 21st. At daylight two horses were carelessly loosened, and approaching the Hottentoots were at once stabbed to death with the assegays. The one belonged to a burgher and the other to the Company. Seeing that the enemy that dogged our footsteps might obtain some advantage over us in the cripple bush, we did our best to push forward with the captured cattle, and when we reached the plain, we found they were following us with greater boldness, but not minding them, we gave them their will, and finally sent a few charges into them, whereupon they retired and did not return, having abandoned all hope of recovering their cattle. We reached the Berg River in good time towards evening, and with great zeal managed to cross it with all the cattle, when we rested. 22nd. Left before daybreak. Had hardly marched a quarter of an hour when it began to rain so horribly that in case of necessity not one of us would have been able to discharge his musket, but God has protected us from an attack of the enemy who might, humanly speaking, have been able to destroy us all and recapture the cattle. 23rd. At daybreak we marched towards the Mosselbank, arriving there with our booty about 4 o'clock in the afternoon. Here we passed the night. 24th. As soon as we saw the morning star, we made for the 'Roode Zand,' in order to let the cattle

graze there. 25th. Three hours before daylight, we proceeded towards the 'Hooge Kraelen,' where we arrived about ten o'clock in the morning, with gratitude to God for his fatherly protection. Here we found a wagon laden with two bags of bread and an anker of arrack, sent us by Governor Goske, that the tired men might somewhat refresh themselves. About noon we arrived at the Fort, and delivered the cattle, which consisted of 800 cattle and 900 sheep. Thank God for his mercy!" Below stood 'Kept by me, and was signed Jan van der Meersch."

Some provisions sent to the *Swaantje*, which was still unable to reach the roadstead. Also twelve sailors to assist the weak crew.

July 26th.—Arrival of the Hottentoo Captain Claas, bringing with him a letter from Land Surveyor Wittebol, mentioning that the timber could only be conveyed from the forest with immense labour and trouble, and that accordingly the breastworks had been built up with good sods found in the near neighbourhood in great abundance, and that, should it be desired, the whole could be protected with palisades; that many tools were required for the work and should be sent out; that the cattle kraal lay open along the river, and exposed to wild beasts and Hottentoots, being only made of branches of trees; that the sheep shed was enclosed on all sides and well secured; and that the Gounema and Soeswaas Hottentoots had been seen on the mountains, and that the hoopnet and tigertrap were about to be made.

July 27th.—The master butcher returns from Hot. Holland with some sheep and a letter mentioning that the breastworks had been marked off and were being thrown up according to the model sent over. He was sent back the same day with orders to bring hither all the cattle and some of the horses there, in order to frustrate the designs of the Hottentoots on them. The sheep do not seem to take their fancy so much. He also took with him all the tools required, and the following letter to the Superintendent:—"Received your letters of the 22nd and 23rd, informing us of your difficult journey, but also your safe arrival in Hottentoots Holland; nor were we displeased with your careful search for timber in the forests there, but as its carriage can only be effected with many men and great difficulty, and as suitable sods are to be found near the works, we have decided to let you continue the breastworks as you have begun, and also send you all the tools required for the purpose.

We cannot find it satisfactory that the cattle kraal along the river is so badly constituted and so exposed to attacks from Hottentoots and wild beasts; you are therefore without delay to enclose it properly, so that all conceivable accidents may be prevented. It has not pleased us that this necessary work has, contrary to our successive orders, been so long delayed and not yet effected.

The appearance of the Gounemas and Sousuwas Hottentoots on the mountains may, perhaps, have some meaning, and as we are sufficiently convinced of their enmity towards us, you are once more advised most earnestly to be prepared day and night against an attack by those tribes, that the Company be not surprised by them.

The Soeswaas Captain Claas arrived here yesterday morning. We also send you the powder and lead asked for. Notwithstanding the order given to the master butcher yesterday to return hither without any cattle, we have decided that you shall send hither all that you have, as well as the best trained horses, in charge of the best known Hottentoots, and some Dutchmen well provided with arms. On their arrival at the "Ruijterstal," they shall remain there with the cattle and await our orders. The land surveyor Wittebol shall remain with you until the foundations of the sod works have been laid, so that no mistake may be made in their further completion. He shall inform us how long he thinks he will be required there for the purpose mentioned.

We have received the skin of the tiger which lately caused the damage. We trust that when the hoopnet has been made the cattle will be much safer from such beasts.

Jochem Marquart has just arrived and brought us your letter of the 26th, with annexures, from which we gathered that the star-shaped redoubt ordered to be built could not be made as well as the one now in hand. We approve of the plans sent us and wish the work to be proceeded with as soon as possible.

The master butcher is returning to you in order, as already mentioned, to fetch the cattle. You are to send us all except as many draft oxen as you may require for two wagons. Ploughing must also cease, and you are to send back 13 of your garrison, including those lately sent to you, as well as the quarryman who was, ere this, engaged at the plough. We have no objection to the assistant being conveyed to the Cape should he be so ill as to make this necessary. We commend you to God." (Signed) your friend, Isbrand Goske, in the Fort Good Hope, dated as above.

July 28th.—The *Schulp* returns from the Island bringing with her the Hottentoo woman Eva and her baby that the latter might be baptised.

Made a wooden barricade for strengthening the new Fort and protecting the earthworks. The eastern sea point enclosed inside with palisades, and outside with sods which will be of great service for defensive purposes.

The Hottentoo Captain Claas returned perfectly contented to his kraals; we arranged with him that he was to move his kraals into Hottentoots Holland, or the near neighbourhood, in order at the proper time, assisted by the Cape Hottentoots, to attack Gounema and his adherents, which he appeared very willing to do, and also promised.

The *Oester* proceeds to the Island with portions of a wagon and some oxen, as well as other necessities, including some linen strops for the draft cattle. She will return with shells.

The Hottentoo Captain Cuijper, with Schacher and others of high and low degree, arrived here by our orders, and like Claas accepted our offer willingly, so that at present we need fear no attack from Gounema in Hottentoots Holland or anywhere else where the Company may be grazing her cattle.

July 30th (Sunday). Before and after service some recruits were drilled, as there is too much work on week-days for the purpose. This is as necessary as everything else as regards our unpractical soldiers. The *Succantje* is also being discharged, not only because the weather is favourable, but that her St. Helena cargo will be very acceptable, and in the case of sudden attack we would not like to see it fall into the hands of the enemy.

July 31st.—As the time has arrived to add a considerable number to the cattle of the freemen, we began to-day to distribute among the latter, especially the agriculturists who had shelter for them, from 8 to 12 each besides the calves, under the following conditions:—

- (1) The recipients will not be allowed to sell, exchange, kill or alienate any of the animals given them, before they shall have doubled their number by breeding and can produce plain evidence of the fact, on pain of being deprived of the cattle and a fine of Rds. 50, Cape valuation, for every beast or calf sold, exchanged or alienated.
- (2) Even when the number of cattle shall have been doubled, none shall be sold, &c., without consent of the high authorities having been previously obtained, according to the customs hitherto prevailing.
- (3) Everyone without exception is forbidden to take in exchange or accept any of the aforesaid beasts and calves, on pain of having his contract declared null and void, as well as a fine of Rds. 25.
- (4) In order to prevent all false dealing, everyone shall be bound, in case of the death of any beast or calf, or in case of its being killed by any wild beast, to bring the whole or part of the carcase to the Fort for inspection. Those neglecting to do this to pay a fine of (?) Rds. and to forfeit all the other animals to the Company and pay for the missing animal, viz., Rds. 50 for a full beast and Rds. 25 for a calf.
- (5) Finally, everyone shall be bound, should the Company at any time require any cattle, to restore to her the same

1673.

number of beasts as he has received, without requiring payment or causing her any expense, as well as without contradiction and the plea of inability.

Subject to all these conditions, we the undersigned have collectively accepted the beasts and calves, viz.:—(names not given).

Besides a letter from the Land surveyor Wittebol, the master butcher brought with him 470 head of cattle from Hottentoots Holland. They were at once sent to the kraals behind the Steenberg and at Houtbay.

The letter was as follows:—"The master butcher (Jochem Marquard) brought us your letter of the 27th July, the wagons and other necessities. In accordance with your orders we send you 470 head of cattle, but no sheep; also three horses, the rest are not yet fit for work. We also send you the 13 men ordered back by you, among them three agriculturists who had attended to the plough, and the same number of cattle herds. The rest are of the number sent hither last, among them the two quarrymen.

It will take five days to finish the breastworks with the men left here, and about three weeks to complete the whole thoroughly. We have kept 16 draft oxen for the two wagons. The assistant has recovered, and as through him a man can be spared for looking after the draft oxen, and Corporal Visser requires a man for writing letters, &c., we shall keep him here till further orders.

We intended to carry out your orders and enclose the cattle kraal properly, but as we have no cattle here now we have no doubt you will agree that the dwelling house should be first completed. In the meanwhile the carpenter will be ordered to cut as many poles in the river as possible.

The flesh of the sheep killed by the tiger we now send you salted down. The annexed list will show what we require for covering the kitchen and greasing the wagons, &c. The wagon we now send for the rations requires a new belly board. Of the cattle we have retained an old ox, a cow, and a calf, as we feared that they would not be able to march the distance and would delay the rest. We have not been able to obtain the quantity of oysters asked for, as we could not spare any men, and we do not know how to search for them whilst for some time no Cape Hottentoots have been here. We shall, however, do our best to comply with your wishes. Three of the cattle have died during the month; the meat of the one whose bladder was burst was distributed among the men, as we had no salt. The pack oxen were given to the two hunters Dircq Putter and Volckman Colbert. Two oxen were bartered from the Hottentoots and five calves were born. Fifteen sheep, young and old, also died this month, and 47 lambs were born." (Signed) J. Wittebol and Lourens Visser. In Hottentoots Holland the 30th July, 1673.

August 2nd.—As the supply of rice is diminishing, and it is uncertain when we shall receive any from Batavia, it was decided to sell to the freemen only a certain quantity and supply the Company's servants with 10 lbs. less monthly, giving them instead 10 stivers in money.

The wagon with rations will also bring you one bundle match cord, six bottles train oil, two buckets wagon grease, one fathom cable yarn, one white line of nine strands, and one book of paper.

The following letter was also sent:—"Received yours of the 30th last, the cattle, and the 13 men. We can well understand that by the withdrawal of the men the works must proceed more slowly. They are, however to be completed without delay. We also approve that the strengthening of the dwelling house shall take precedence of the cattle kraal provided that the carpenter continues to cut poles at the river, so that the work may not stand still.

We send you what is required for roofing the kitchen, as well as other material asked by you. The wagon has also been furnished with a new bottom. We have noted the deaths and births of the sheep. A monthly return must be sent to us on this matter, as well as of the men, showing their employment, that we may regulate ourselves accordingly." (Signed) your friend Isbrand Goske. 2nd August, 1673.

August 3rd.—The works progressing. The Governor went out on horseback with the Fiscal to inspect the roads, and arrange for their repairs, in order to facilitate the carriage of wood hither.

We were also busy filling some grenades, and partitioning with planks two chambers in the church of the New Fort, in order, at the proper time, when it may be resolved to move into that Fort, that they may serve as a temporary domicile for the Governor or other officials, without, however, interfering with the ordinary divine services.

As the maintenance and inspection of the public roads are in these exceptional times of so much importance, especially for the conveyance of fuel and timber, it was decided to appoint the Fiscal—who has many leisure hours—dikeinspector (dykgraaf), and to entrust him with the repairs and maintenance of the roads, that he may compel all who are dilatory in this matter to do their duty.

August 5th.—Placed some small cannon in position on the newly-finished rampart, and enclosed the portion of the earthen curtain which had collapsed, with palisades, so as to completely fence in the whole Fort.

August 7th.—Land surveyor Jan Wittebol returns from Hottentoots Holland, and reports as follows:—That having arrived at Hottentoots Holland, and viewed the situation and condition of the

1673.

building of the Company there, that according to orders he might throw up a star-shaped rampart around it, he had found it twice as long as it was broad, so that he was obliged to mark off the rampart as marked on the chart. It was also difficult to enclose it with palisades, which were obtainable with difficulty, and had to be conveyed with great trouble from the forest. He therefore deemed it best to make the breastworks of sods, of which there was a large quantity near. He had accordingly laid out the shape, and in about 20 days' time it would be finished.

August 8th.—The two men who accompanied Surveyor Wittebol hither return to Hottentoots Holland, as they are required for the works there. The Superintendent was also ordered by letter to push them on as fast as possible.

The wagons of the freemen and the Company busy carrying in sods, it being our intention to raise the old walls and make the breastworks higher, in order to be better sheltered from shot.

August 9th.—The foundations of the southern flank having been laid with stone, were now found to be covered with sand; they were accordingly built higher, that in future more dependence may be placed on them.

August 10th.—Very heavy rains during the night, as if the sluices of heaven had been opened. The hollow seas did not knock the vessels about a little.

August 11th.—Court of justice held to try various delinquents, among them the soldiers who had lately deserted, a certain burglar and others. One of the deserters, named Jan Nielse, of Stockholm, who had already during the voyage hither on the *Heisteroetsluys* attempted to commit various thefts on board that vessel, with the intention of escaping on his arrival at the Cape, and on his arrival here had persuaded five soldiers to desert with him, one of whom is still missing, was sentenced to be hanged, and his comrades to be scourged and to view the execution with the halters round their necks. The arrack thief was sentenced in the same manner, and the rest to fall from the strappado. It is sad that such rigorous punishments have to be applied here, and that people are not deterred from crime by examples meted out to others.

August 12th.—At the usual hour the sentences were carried out with good order. A northerly breeze afforded a pleasant day's weather for it.

August 13th (Sunday).—Divine service and the drilling of some recruits.

August 14th.—The *Schuilp* takes two convicts to the Island for hard labour there. The *Swaantje* will take with her 72 ivory tusks, bartered at Mozambique by the Hon. Commander Hugo.

August 17th.—The *Vliegende Zwaan* leaves for Batavia with our letters and the news that St. Helena had been retaken by the English. Two batteries erected on the raised battlements on which to plant the guns.

August 19th.—The guns of the new Fort as well as some of the old ones, which had been lying loaded for a long while, were discharged to-day in order to be cleaned. The Soeswaas Captain Claas appeared at the Fort with a large following. He mentioned that some of his kraals had already been moved to the Boter Rivier, three miles behind Hottentoots Holland. The rest were also ready to come as soon as they heard that we had decided to attack the Gounemas.

August 20th (Sunday). After service, two of the Hottentoo Captains who had been summoned by us, viz.: Cuijper and Schacher, arrived with a large company, bringing with them as prisoners four of the Chief Gounema's tribe, whom they had discovered and attacked near their kraals. They mentioned that from the moment of their capture the prisoners were, after their manner, doomed men, and might at once have been killed, but in order to show their good feelings towards the Company, not only by maintaining the alliance, but also by attacking the Company's enemies as if they were their own, they had declared war against the aforesaid tribes (Gounemas and their allies) who were not only treacherous in their words, but also strove to give effect to them. They had accordingly spared the lives of the four prisoners, in order to deliver them for trial to us, and after that to proceed in the presence of everyone to follow their custom.

Thereupon the prisoners were examined by the Governor in presence of some members of the Council, regarding the massacre of our burghers and the Company's servants. Two of them were by confrontations proved to have immediately murdered one of the freemen and one of the soldiers, whilst the other two had been participators in this nefarious work. They were accordingly delivered to the Hottentoo Chiefs Cuijper and Schacher, with their confession, in order to treat them as their own prisoners in their usual manner, as they deemed fit. Hardly had this permission been uttered when all the Hottentoots, to the number of more than one hundred, collected together and no longer able, in consequence of their fury, to control their bitter enmity, began to shriek out, "Kill the dogs! kill them!" Continuing in this tone with such shouting and dreadful clamour, as if they had already laid all their enemies in the dust, and were triumphing over their victory.

1673.

At the same time every one provided himself with a heavy club, and awaited the delivery of the condemned with impatience, who being at last brought outside the gate and delivered to them, were welcomed and greeted in such a manner with sticks, that the one after the other fell to the ground and slipped the ghost. After they had sufficiently cooled their courage by beating and treading on the dead bodies, the latter were buried in the sea.

This tragedy having been ended, and the sun in the meanwhile having set (*van de aardkloot verhuijst zijnde*), a dram (*soopje*) of arrack and some tobacco were given to the Hottentoots who had helped in carrying out this scene, and all were dismissed.

August 21st.—Rested in the Lord during the past night the wife of the merchant and Secunde Albert van Breugel, confined eight days ago of a little daughter, leaving behind, besides her beloved husband, five minors.

The Hottentoo Captains Cuijper and Schacher and the Soeswaas Chief Claas take their departure. Before they left it was agreed between us that they were to move with all their kraals to the frontiers of Hottentoots Holland and remain there until the rainy season had passed, when they would, combined with us, once more attack the Gounema tribes.

August 22nd.—A proper corps de garde for more accommodation for the soldiers to be built on the Sea Point, similar to the one already erected. The material used to be blue bricks (*moffen*).

August 24th.—The sailors busy removing guns from the old Fort to the new one; a considerable number of gun carriages conveyed to the eastern point of the Castle, which when finished, the cannons will be mounted on it.

August 25th.—A few days ago eight slaves ran away, four of the Company and four of the freemen. One of them returned and acknowledged that the others were hiding in the neighbourhood of the Tigerbergen. Accordingly the Ensign and some soldiers were sent out to capture them.

August 26th.—Two of the slaves of the freemen captured, professing that they had returned yesterday with their comrade. They had wandered away from the others, and were found near their masters' homesteads. Their intention had been to proceed together to Angola, to the Portuguese there, in order to live a better life there and never more to return to the Cape. Alas! too idle a conception, which will cause the remaining five much misery and finally their destruction. The soldiers exercised this afternoon.

August 28th.—Commenced to build the curtain on the land side between the S.E. and most southern point of the new Castle.

For this purpose the quarryman contracted to supply stone at f ? If this work is finished the Fort will be enclosed all round, and not be scaleable without ladders. We also placed 4 pieces on the clay (getaijpt) wall, and mounted them on carriages.

After evening prayers it was decided to order all the burghers who had gardens close to or under the walls of the Fort, to cut down all the high bushes surrounding them and fill in all the sluits, and in order to mark off and enclose their plots to use some dry stuff, which when necessary could at once be set on fire, as otherwise the necessity of cutting down green bushes which may serve as covers to the enemy, and filling up the sluits which it might utilize as trenches, would take too long a time in an emergency, and enable it to approach almost to below the walls shot free.

August 29th.—The burghers informed of last night's Resolution undertook to give effect to it.

Yesterday some Hottentoots reported a wicked theft committed by a certain widow, a free woman, who was accused of stealing two Hottentoot cattle which had strayed among her troop and been brought home in the evening by the herd, her servants at once killing and salting them down. A strict investigation was at once made, and the servants having been examined finally confessed that by order of their mistress they had stolen and salted down one of the Hottentoot cattle, but that they knew nothing of the other animal. In a halting manner the widow also confessed; and it was decided in the first instance to permit the Hottentoots to select an animal from the Company's troop in order to give them satisfaction, and to order the Fiscal to proceed against the thief, and in the meanwhile to keep her and the servants in custody.

August 30th.—Bartered 5 fine young cattle from Captain Cuijper. The wooden barricade lately finished was to-day provided with a canal of the same length and depth as the one running round the "afsnijding," so that a rush may somewhat be checked.

August 31st.—The ordinary supply of rations sent to Hottentoots Holland, with other necessaries for building and other purposes.

As on account of the scarceness and dearness of all provisions the labouring portion of the garrison cannot come out with their monthly board money and what they receive for extraordinary services, so as to have a good meal out of the same, and as moreover we have been obliged to reduce their rice rations from 40 to 30 lbs. per head, though supplementing the deficiency with cash, it was decided to take out of the approaching outward-bound vessels as much peas, beans, barley, &c., as they can spare, and thus secure the men a full meal daily, as the labour will amply

1873.

cover the expense, and instead of six months' credit the quarrymen and others doing rough and hard work with nine months' pay for their maintenance. See Resolution.

September 2nd.—The runaway slaves of the freemen not wishing to confess in what manner they had effected their escape, were brought to a successful confession by castigation with rods. From it it appeared that these gallows birds had seduced the Company's slaves to accompany them. It was also brought to light that the cattle thieves (see 29th August) had not only killed and salted down the Hottentoo beast, but also two fine cows.

September 4th.—Letter received from Hottentoots Holland mentioning that the Captain Soesqua, one of the most important chiefs, had arrived there, and stated that his kraals were still at the Botter River, and if the illness of his child had not prevented it, would already have reached Hottentoots Holland.

September 5th.—Letter sent to Hottentoots Holland with orders that the cattle kraal was to be made secure at once, as a number of cattle would be sent thither very soon. It also mentioned that complaint had been made that the crops had been considerably injured by the horses, and that the master agriculturist had been sent thither to inspect the damage. His orders regarding the weeding and keeping clean of the fields were to be strictly obeyed, and care was to be taken that no damage occurred again, as the Superintendent would in that case be held responsible.

September 6th.—A number of cattle sent from Hout Bay and the Schuur to Hottentoots Holland, in order to be revived there somewhat. The master butcher accompanied them.

September 7th.—Collapse of the earthen point thrown up of clay. It had been three months in hand, and will now require another month for repairs. The collapse is the result of the unsteady wet weather. The stone curtain progressing well, and had lime not failed, the greatest portion of it would have been finished before the end of this month.

September 8th.—Tools required on Robben Island for mowing hay.

September 10th (Sunday).—The usual services and parade. Reply to our letter received from Hottentoots Holland, stating that the rumour regarding the damage done to the crops was false. This was confirmed by the master agriculturist, who mentions that the grain promised a good harvest, and that the 186 cattle had arrived there safely, and the garrison were very busy repairing the kraal. The non-arrival of the Hottentoots was ascribed to the heavy rain and much snow that had fallen.

September 11th.—In order to prevent a recurrence of a collapse of the earthen point, the stone foundation as far as the shoulder extended, was built up a few feet higher, in order to serve as a berm for it, and prevent it slipping. When this has been done, the earthworks will be once more thrown up. 12th. The earthen curtain on the sea side being repaired.

The *Schulp* leaves for Robben Island with a bucket of tar and the implements for mowing hay, with orders that so much should be collected, that some may be sent hither for the cattle. Part of the garrison drilled, a most necessary thing in these troublous times. 19th. The *Posthoorn* leaves for home with our letters, &c.

A lion wounds an ox at the "Schuur," but the meat was preserved, either to be salted down or sold. Towards evening to our perturbation the superintendent of cattle reported that most of the draught oxen while crossing the Liesbeck had got into the quicksands and that some had already been smothered. At once 200 men of the garrison were sent out with planks and ropes in order to draw the animals out, the low water and fine moonlight being favourable.

September 20th.—The Governor and a party of soldiers proceed to the country to assist those engaged in recovering the cattle from the quicksands; only a few were saved alive; the others were killed before they died, in order to preserve the meat. It has been a considerable loss to the Company.

September 21st.—All the wagons of the freemen and the Company employed in bringing the meat in, which, when salted down, will be distributed among the garrison instead of board money.

September 22nd.—The Court of Justice sentenced the woman found guilty of having stolen two Hottentoots' cows to stand with an oxhide above her head and the halter round her neck; to be scourged and branded, with confiscation of all her property; and to be banished for 12 years on Robben Island. Her accomplices were condemned to be scourged and placed in irons for 8 years, in order to labour at the Public Works.

Two soldiers who had slept when on sentry were condemned to be strappadoed, expelled from the garrison, and to serve 3 years as convicts. The runaway freemen's slaves, who had induced 4 of the Company's slaves to run away with them, were sentenced to have their ears cut off and be scourged and branded. The two principal instigators to serve for life as convicts in the Company's service. For the rest we had pleasant weather, whilst the butchers were very busy skinning and salting down the carcasses of the oxen.

September 23rd.—Yesterday's sentences carried out. However, through the intercession of the most respectable (gecivili-

1673,

seerste) women, and the most pitiful prayers of her young children, the female thief was relieved of that part of the sentence which required that she should be branded and have the rope round her neck. One of her servants was also relieved of the punishment of being branded.

The rest of the sentence was however to remain intact.

September 25th.—Arrival of the flute *Goyland* from Batavia with rice and other necessaries for this place. She brought a letter from the High Government:—"Received yours of the 29th Feb. and 14th April. Received also direct from St. Helena an undated note from the Commander and Council there, informing us of the capture of that island and the little flute *Joanna Catherine* with slaves and tusks from Mozambique. Your letter mentions that you had received 184 slaves alive out of 199 sent you, and that some had been kept at St. Helena.

From yours of the 14th April last we gathered what supplies you required, and that the rice you received per the *Hasenberg*, would not last longer than seven months, as Mauritius and St. Helena had also to be supplied out of it. 200 additional slaves are to be fed and three vessels sent to you from St. Helena had also to be supplied, as they had run out of their biscuits. We have accordingly laden the flutes *Goyland* and *Soetendaal* with rice and other necessaries, and sent them to you in order to render you timely succour, and the more so as the same letter tells us that the harvest had been very bad in consequence of the heavy S. Easters, and that not a quarter of the seed corn required had been obtained for re-sowing, and that such misadventures in future may cause all the ploughs to stand still. In such a case of great scarcity you may provide yourselves with bread and other provisions from the outward bound ships, in accordance with the old orders of the Directors.

We consider that the exchange of men has been made with judgment by you, and find that you have received ours of 11th December, from Bantam in good order. . . . With the abovementioned vessels we also send you some horses. The yacht *Willenburg* has been selected to convey rice and other necessaries to Mauritius. . . . We also send you two convicts in the *Goyland*, viz.:—Maribassa, a Javanese, banished for 25 years, and Francisco Manilha for 10 years, according to their sentences. At the request of Yutche Yaop, we also send you his slave, named ? for misconduct; he must be kept there at hard labour until further orders. We also send you six brass mortars. . . ." (Signed) Joan Maetsuycker, &c. In the Castle Batavia the 1st August, 1673.

September 26th.—A new flagstaff erected on Lion's Head, the other one having been destroyed by lightning.

September 27th.—The Soeswaas Captain Claas sent to inform us that he had killed two Gourema Hottentoots (our and his enemies), and at the same time presented us with a little boy about 10 years old, as a slave for the Company. He had spared him on account of his youth (onschuld), but the child was restored to him as his captive. It seems that these brutal Africans have commiseration for innocent childhood, which, however, is not considered by many Christian Potentates.

September 28th.—Heavy thunder and a pleasant rain during the night. Having received an ample supply of rice from Batavia, which will last for a considerable time, and expecting more with the *Soetendaal*, each man of the garrison received as much as he desired, paying, however, for weight, as on the first of the month he had only received 30lbs. instead of 40lbs.

September 29th.—Arrival of the flute *Sparendam* of Amsterdam. Had left on the 9th May with 186 men, of whom 37 had died. She brought 42 sick.

From the letters she brought it appeared that no change of any importance had taken place, but that there was every likelihood that a good peace would be secured. Cologne had been selected as the place for negotiation, whither the Plenipotentiaries of the State would soon proceed.

No new equipments for India were heard of in England or France, at least none of any importance, and accordingly our masters have ordered that if any soldiers or sailors can be spared here, they are to be despatched to India, with the promise that should new difficulties arise they would sufficiently provide us.

Some of the articles mentioned in our thoughtlessly small requisition of last year would be sent us, but what we are most in want of, viz., lime and bricks (steen) for the construction of the Fort has been left in abeyance, in consequence of the prospects of peace. This is by no means to our advantage.

October 1st (Sunday).—Ordinary Divine Service in the morning and Parade in the afternoon.

October 2nd.—The captured and recaptured hooker, the *Bergheendt*, destined to Ceylon, arrives here without dead or sick, having lost none of her crew of 23. Left Zealand on the 24th May, but brought no later news than that of the *Sparendam*.

October 3rd.—A fresh squad of soldiers employed in rooting up the bushes between the old Fort and the new Castle.

October 4th.—News received early this morning from Hottentoot Holland that by chance a sailor had reached that place, who stated that 11 days previously the flute *Soetendaal* from Batavia

1673. — had sailed on shore in the neighbourhood of Cape Augisses (? Agulhas) and had been lost, but that most of her crew had been saved, &c., as will more fully appear from the letter of the Superintendent there:—

“Sir,—To-day a sailor arrived here named Barend Janssen of Oldenburgh, who reported that the rice flute *Soetendaal* had been lost about 30 (Dutch) miles from this; that about 40 men had been saved; that 6 of the strongest had gone ahead and arrived at a large river which they could not cross, but that he had so long followed its banks until he finally succeeded in reaching this side; that he had consequently strayed away from them and been a day and a half alone until he arrived here, and that we may look out for the others; that the skipper was faint and tired and unable to proceed any further, and had to be carried by the Hottentots; that he had remained behind with the large troop, and that he did not know whether he was still alive or dead.

“I at once despatched 3 men and 4 Hottentots, as well as Captain Claas, with some rice and meat, and a small bottle of strong drink, out of our rations, in order to search for the castaways and refresh them, as we understood that they were suffering great hunger and eating the grass of the fields, and had to support life on the flesh of a drowned horse.”—(Signed) LOURENS VISSER; at Hot. Holland, the 3rd October, 1763.

It was decided at once to despatch the Ensign of this garrison and 6 soldiers, who were to take with them the same number from Hot. Holland, towards the spot where the fatality had occurred, and at the same time the largest sloop also by water, in order to search for the men who had been saved, and such cargo as might have been washed up. The chief officer of the *Goylant* was appointed to the sloop, that the work might the better be executed. The sloop left at once with the following instructions to the mate, Jan Bruin: “As soon as you are outside with the *Schulp* you shall proceed eastwards along shore to look for the spot where the *Soetendaal* was lost, which will very likely be on this side of Cape Agulhas. You are to keep a careful look-out that your voyage may not be fruitless, but you are not to expose your vessel to danger and so heap one misfortune on another. When you have found the wreck, you are to see whether it will not be possible by means of your boat to save some of the cargo, and do your very best in this, if it can be done, shipping the goods into the *Schulp*, or conveying them on shore, as may be found to be the best. Our ensign, Jeronymus Cruse, has for the same purpose been sent thither overland, whom you will no doubt find there, and with whom you are to consult regarding the best course to be pursued, carefully noting the place and situation where the *Soetendaal* ran on shore, so as to report to us on your return. We depend entirely

on your zeal in this. The skipper of the *Schulp* has been ordered to obey you in everything during the voyage. This we once more strictly order him and his men to do."—(Signed) Your friend, ISBRAND GOSKE, the 4th October, 1673.

Some of the soldiers on the *Sparendam*, landed to be exercised, were exchanged for others from the garrison.

October 5th.—As the Company's stores contain a considerable quantity of black sugar besides that brought by the *Goylant*, in consequence of the small sales effected for some time, and as it is very liable to leakage, it was decided to offer small quantities for sale at 3 stivers per lb., instead of 5 stivers, the usual price fixed by the Company, but through scarcity of cash among the public not much more than 3,500 lbs. could be disposed of, notwithstanding this much-willed article was so much lowered in price.

October 6th (Friday).—Preparation sermon preached this afternoon at 2 o'clock, as the Holy Sacrament will, if it pleases God, be administered next Sunday.

October 7th.—The sad news received 3 days ago from Hot: Holland was confirmed to-day by the arrival here of the skipper of the *Soetendaal*, Jan Block, his chief mate, third officer and 40 men. After having parted from the *Goylant* on the 18th, they had on the 23rd, near Agulhas, encountered a heavy gale, and with a W S. W. and W. by S. course run ashore during the night about the 7th glass. Three hours previously the vessel had been among the breakers, but with a W S. W. tack succeeded in escaping from them. The moon shone brightly and no one could tell how the disaster was caused. Of the crew 4 were drowned and 6 drank themselves drunk on board. Of those saved there were still behind the mountains inland the junior merchant, Nonning Beets, the junior mate and some others. The two first-named being too weak to come on, have so to say been given up as lost. Nor had there been any chance of saving anything out of the wreck. A letter received from the Ensign from Hot: Holland mentioned that he had arrived there on the 5th and been told by the skipper of the *Soetendaal* that there was no possibility of saving anything from the wreck, but that nevertheless he intended to make a trial, as well as search for the 15 men who were still missing. He had also returned to Corporal Lourens Visser 150 lbs. rice, which the latter had distributed among the rescued crew. A French prisoner, who had been on board the wrecked vessel, had been found wandering along the shore, and taken to the others.

October 8th (Sunday).—A S. Easter that rose during the past night continued the whole day and grew into a dreadful gale, with large hail and rain, so that the streets were impassable; various

roofs of houses were damaged, hedges and trees were blown over in the gardens, where they lay uprooted, so that the intended sacred action had to be abandoned.

October 9th.—It is almost incredible how this Cape is subject to a fickle climate Yesterday the two elements, water and air, roused by such a severe hurricane, threatened completely to devastate the earth; but at sunrise this morning the weather was so calm and lovely as if Æolus and Neptune had never been born. The ships in the roadstead were exposed to great danger, but weathered the tempest, thank God! without any disaster.

October 10th.—Arrival of the *Gostenburg* from the Fatherland with 66 sick. She had lost 41 during the voyage by death; she brought copy of a Resolution adopted by the Seventeen regarding the Cape, who, having considered the reports of the Commissioner on the subject, had decided to send out to the Cape what Governor Goske had mentioned as necessary for the fortifications, &c., before his departure from Home, viz.: 20 iron-shod carts and some loose felloes and 100 pick axes, and when the commissioners passed through Delft they were to inform themselves exactly whether the same service could be had from the gun carriages as now made, as from those hitherto in use, and what they cost compared with those made without iron mountings according to the Indian fashion, in order to be able to report at the next meeting; and that there would be sent hither 24 iron pieces of 10 or 24 lbs., and should powder and shot be required, the Governor and Council were to take it from the outward bound vessels. But as the price of lime and bricks has risen so considerably, and no quantity worth mentioning is obtainable, this part of the requisition has been postponed for future consideration. The respective chambers had, however, been requested to send over all the wood work required, in the various vessels despatched by them, provided, however, that it be obtainable at a reasonable price.

Two more men of the *Soetendaal* make their appearance, viz., the boatswain's mate and the chief carpenter. A number of the *Oostenburg's* sick conveyed to the hospital.

October 11th.—At the intercession of some of the most respectable women it was decided once more to open the house of a certain widow who had tainted herself with smuggling and other vile acts, for which she had been confined for some time to her own house with the prohibition of carrying on any business whatever. She had, however, to give bail that she would be prepared at any time if required to appear before the Court and submit herself to such sentence as might be passed on her in the principal case.

October 12th.—The stone curtain between the two land points

finished so far that it cannot be scaled without ladders. Work was accordingly resumed at the foundations of the "Opgetaypte" earthen point, especially as the newly constructed corps de garde on the sea point has been finished so far that the carpenter will only require 8 days more to put the roof on it and finish it completely.

October 13th.—In accordance with the authority of the masters a leaguer of Rhine wine and 10 casks of rum were landed from the *Oostenburgh* and sold with good profit. Other trifles were also landed and sold for the benefit of this place. Some bread and other provisions landed from the *Sparendam* for the sustenance of the garrison labouring at the works. The officers of the *Bergh Eendt* having complained that their biscuits were very much damaged, and had become unfit for food, that vessel was also supplied with others, and the damaged stuff distributed among the garrison, which did not despise it.

October 14th.—Arrival of the flute *Zwanenburgh*, from Enckhuysen with 5 or 6 sick; also of the little hooker *Quartel* sent on the 24th January expressly by the directors, in order to carry the pleasant news to India of a desired two-fold victory, namely—on the 7th and 14th of that month—obtained over the combined powerful English and French navies, as will be more fully seen from the letters of their Honours dated the 21st of the same month. On land also matters were assuming quite a different appearance than before, not without the probability of a good peace, with which may the Almighty bless us, should it be to our benefit and salvation.

October 15th (Sunday).—Arrival of the ship *Ternaten*. Left Amsterdam the 11th June last. Lost 80 men during the voyage in consequence of a malignant fever, and brought 90 sick. The Lord's supper, postponed 8 days ago, was celebrated to-day.

October 16th.—The major portion of the sick landed from the *Ternaten* to-day; it was a pitiful sight. The *Bergh Eendt* leaves for India with the good news (see 14th October); also the *Goutvinck* the next day (17th) on the same errand.

October 17th.—Provisions and other necessities sent to the Island, viz.:—400 lbs. Cape beef, instead of pork and fish, 1 bucket of tar, and 2 strings of twine. The skipper of the *Oester* also ordered to bring over each time from the Island, besides a cargo of shells, also 5 or 6 blue slabs 2 or 3 feet long and broad, for use in the new Fortress. Some more soldiers taken out of the *Oostenburgh* and *Ternaten*, and replaced by others of the garrison.

October 18th.—An express received from the Ensign who had

been sent overland to the wreck of the *Soetendaal*, mentioning his safe arrival there, as well as that of the sloop, and that he had recovered from the wreck 140 coverlets, 220 pieces sail cloth, 241 pieces guinea cloth, 4 pieces Dutch sail cloth, 2 metal clocks, 2 copper cook's kettles, 6 metal blocks, and 2 horses, and that he was still busy landing some cordage and sails, and would return by sea.

October 19th.—The sick of the *Sparendam* having recovered, return on board; a party of hale and hearty sailors sent to the forest to cut fuel.

Towards evening the ensign arrived at the Fort with four more men who had been saved, among them the junior mate, who arrived here on one of the horses that had been saved, who, when the wreck was abandoned, had in consequence of lameness in hands and feet, been left behind with some others. They related how with much trouble, they had collected the goods washed up in different places along the beach and embarked them in the sloop. The wreck was with her stern fixed on a rock not a musket shot's distance from the shore within the bay. The keel had, however, been wrenched off and cast on shore, as well as some planks and wood work sent hither from Batavia. These were brought above water mark in order to be removed on a more favourable occasion. In the opinion of the ensign and the mate, mostly all the pack goods would have been saved if the wreck had not been so suddenly abandoned by the skipper and the other men. The sloop might be expected here soon with some recovered cordage and sails.

October 21st.—Arrival of the ship *Mayerberg*, from Amsterdam. Had touched at St. Jago. Had one death and brought 5 or 6 sick. Number of her crew 78 men. Towards evening the *Grotenbroeck* also arrived with 20 dead and 23 sick.

October 23rd.—Departure of the *Sparendam* to Batavia. 24th. The *Schulp* returns from the wreck with goods saved from it. The new corps de garde on the sea point being now finished, the men entered into occupation to-day, whilst the old one was partially demolished. Work being continued at the clay point and excavations of the foundations, and levelling the roads and hollows between the old and new fort.

October 26th.—A violent S. Easter, preventing communication with the ships and blowing the sand into the eyes of the Fort builders. Nevertheless, provisional sheds were erected out of the wood work of the old corps de garde on the eastern point for the accommodation of some of the men.

October 31st.—Letter received from the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, mentioning that the earthworks there were nearly completed, and would have been finished sooner if six men

had not been taken away by the Ensign. He asked for 25 lbs. of nails and some oakum. He stated also that the mortality among the lambs had considerably interfered with the increase of the stock, the result, in our opinion, of the bad care which had been taken of them during the last rainy season, the Hottentoo sheep thriving there much better than the crossbred. The hay season was approaching and the India wheat ripening, so that they were awaiting instructions on these and other matters. The Superintendent also mentioned that the whole Soeswaas tribe had passed the lodge, eleven kraals altogether, and were camping at the second river. He also requested restitution of the 40 lbs. Fatherland meat and some bottles arrack given to the men of the *Soctendaal* on their arrival there, and advanced by him out of his own rations. The rice had already been given back by the Ensign.

November 1st.—Departure of the *Oostenburgh*, *Zwanenburgh* and *Goylant*. 2nd. The usual supply of rations sent to Hottentoots Holland by wagon, and the Superintendent informed that he might soon expect the Master Agriculturist and some mowers for collecting hay, whom he was to assist with his men.

November 4th.—Three soldiers, who have for a considerable time been busy obtaining wild meat by the shooting of elands, rhinoceroses and harts for the sustenance of the slaves, were to-day given the contract henceforth according to our pleasure, to make their living out of it, without receiving any pay, rice, or board money, thus altogether without in the least burdening the Company, from which they were to buy for cash whatever they required for hunting purposes, viz., powder, lead, &c., and on the other hand be bound to supply all the game shot by them at half stiver per lb., and surrender to the Company without payment the skin of every animal shot by them.

November 9th.—After previous notice, a quantity of different kinds of cloth, hats and old shoes, &c., which had been unsaleable for a long while, and been much injured by moths and rats, was sold by public auction, so that, though the Company secured no great profit, it got rid of the whole lot without much loss. What was left on hand will not be unwelcome to the slaves.

November 10th.—Departure of the *Ternaten*, *Grootenbroeck* and *Mayerberg*. The Ensign and Master Butcher proceed to the sheep kraal behind the Steenberg to inspect the cattle there and report on their return. They return the next day, and reported that everything there was in a good state.

November 13th.—The ships having left, and our hands being no longer so full, a commencement was made with the advancement on account to the garrison of the usual necessities (vulgo,

1673.

"the good months"), and as in consequence of one thing and another the ordinary time for distribution has been somewhat exceeded, it was decided to advance to every one four, instead of three, months' pay, viz. : three in the form of goods and one in cash. This, however, not to be considered a precedent. Accordingly at 11 o'clock the ordinary placeaat was drawn up, forbidding all squandering, bartering, &c., of the aforesaid goods ; and read from the balcony.

November 15th.—Cold, rainy weather continuing. Though unpleasant, it will be good for the crops, and promises an opulent harvest both of grain and fruit. All busy at the construction of the Castle.

November 16th.—The *Schulp* returns to the Island with some bushes for filling up the holes in the road there, and thus facilitating the movements of the wagons when conveying blue flagstones to the beach. She also took with her one last of rice and 12 sheaths for the oxen (jukscheys), and a soldier who is a stonecutter, in order to fashion the stones to be conveyed hither, and thus make them less cumbersome for carriage.

November 17th.—Court sat this morning. A sailor of the departed *Goylant*, named Hendrick Barentsen of Hamburg, having wantonly wounded with a knife a soldier of the garrison, who had not offended him in the least, was sentenced, as there was no vessel for keelhauling, to be soundly thrashed by the Caffers, and serve a full year at the public works.

The widow of the late Thieleman Hendrixx, named Maijke van den Berg, having been provisionally incarcerated on the complaint and demand of the Fiscal, was once more suspected of cattle theft, and the Fiscal undertook to produce sufficient evidence for proving his case.

The garrison at Hottentoots Holland very busy making hay. The Indian wheat sown there had ripened, been cut and stacked. There were 240 sheaves, so that a sail was asked for on which to thresh them. Any delay in this would enable the field mice and other vermin to carry away considerable quantities.

November 18th.—Arrival towards evening of Captain Claas, the best behaved of all the native barbarians, with 20 followers. He wished to know, as the dry season was rapidly approaching, when we intended to attack conjointly with him the Gounema tribes. He seemed very anxious about this attack, on account of the glorious booty which, according to our promises, would fall to their share. He was told that he had first to get his people to spy out the enemy so as to discover where they were, and when he brought us the information we would succour him with our men.

November 19th.—The Master Agriculturist returns to Hottentoots Holland with the sail and other articles required there.

November 20th.—Every effort made to complete the Castle, but the masons are very much retarded in their work by the want of lime. Shells becoming very scarce, hence a trial was made with some white spongy coral like stone, which, having been burnt and slaked, fell to pieces like ashes or meal. It was found near the sea shore in the West high sanddunes. It will, if obtained in sufficient quantity, very much meet our wants and mightily assist the works. This morning early some wagon loads were conveyed to the kilns for a trial.

November 21st.—As the stone breastwork of the sea point is not yet completely finished, it was left as it was for other more urgent work, and temporarily covered with sods, which will suffice, the work having been well done. During the afternoon it was reported that the Hottentoo Captains, Cuijper (Cooper) and Houtebeen (wooden leg), had pitched their kraals near the Company's cavalry stables. As the spot is within the Company's jurisdiction, and its pastures are consequently injured, they will be told tomorrow to remove from the spot.

November 22nd.—The Ensign sent to the abovementioned Hottentoo chiefs to tell them in a civil way to move and look for pastures for their cattle elsewhere. They promised to do so, and to retire towards the Tigerbergen or thereabouts.

November 23rd.—Jochem Marquaart, the Company's Master Butcher, arrives from Hottentoots Holland with 697 half-bred sheep, sent thither for a time in order to be fattened. Others will be sent hence to replace them. The Superintendent wrote that the sail had been received, and that the grain would be sent in on a future occasion.

November 24th.—Vehement S. Easter continuing, preventing all outside work.

November 25th.—A wagon with a load of hay arrives from Hottentoots Holland. The Superintendent wrote that he had 12 more loads at the homestead, and about 10 more on the veld. This will not be unwelcome to our cattle here.

November 26th (Sunday).—The S. Easter gone down somewhat and the usual Divine Service held, as well as the Parade. The Superintendent on the Island wrote that all the collected shells had been sent over; that there were no more; and that if no more were washed up very little more will be obtainable. The boat also brought six blue flags.

1673.

November 28th.—A temporary corps de garde erected in the new Castle out of old material for sheltering more men required there.

November 29th.—The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with provisions for December and orders to the superintendent to continue hay making and send in a load every week.

November 30th.—The *Oester* arrives from Hout Bay with a load of cut fuel for the kilns. In order to prevent the frequent smuggling in of strong drinks and the secret sale of the same, which has become such an evil that nearly all the inhabitants of this place are implicated in it, and the object of the Company to make them earn a living in some other way has thus been frustrated, therefore the Governor and Council, in order to suppress this abuse, contracted with 2 burghers under certain conditions, and allowed them at an annual lease of f4,000 the privilege of the sale of liquor within certain defined limits in Table Valley; and with two other burghers as their assistants, who would be permitted to sell cool drinks for the accommodation of the residents, and who shall pay them such an amount as they may agree upon with each other.

Accordingly, an interdict against tapping was affixed to-day as follows:—"Everyone is informed that for good reasons the Governor and Council have found good to grant the tapping business to four persons expressly privileged for that purpose, viz.:—Wouter Mostaert, Steven Jansz., Jan Valckenryck, and Willem van Dieden, who shall between them sell by retail all wines, beer, and strong drinks, arrack, &c., within the limits of Table Bay, beginning at the house of the free burgher, Jan Groff, eastward and westward towards the sea, within which limits all residents, no one excepted, are forbidden, the four above-mentioned persons not included, to refrain from all tap business, and neither directly nor indirectly to have anything to do with it, under whatever name it may be, subject to all such penalties as have been decreed in this matter. Provided, however, that the brewer of the Cape beer shall be at liberty to sell his beers by the whole, half or quarter tun to whomsoever he wishes, without paying any excise on it." (Signed) by order of the Governor and Council, H. CRUDOP, Secretary.

December 1st.—A fine rain after the violent winds and severe heat; most welcome to the gardens. The *Schulp* takes a heavy hammer to the Island for breaking stones, and ten bottles of oil for the lamp. The superintendent also received a new flag to be hoisted until the end of this month, when 5 or 6 ships are sighted coming from the east, but when any appeared before the bay from the north, he was to hoist the Prince's flag. After the expiration of the month he was, however, always to hoist the new flag.

December 4th.—Arrival of one of the boats of the Sildanha freemen with 18 half-aums seal oil, which the Company took over at the usual price. The small kiln in which the limestone had been burnt produced a lime superior in quality to that obtained from shells. As it took much less time to burn, it was naturally found to be cheaper also. 6th. Blue flags brought from the Island by the *Schulp*.

December 8th.—The Court of Justice sat this morning to try the case of the woman Maijke van der Bergh and her servant, Philip Bulings, charged with cattle theft. They were condemned to be scourged with the halter round their necks and sheep skins on their heads, and also to be branded, and for life banished from the settlement, with confiscation of their goods, &c.

December 9th.—The *Schulp* takes to the Island 3 large baskets, 1 large sledge hammer with three handles, 6 iron wedges, and 1 do. bolt.

The execution of the sentence passed on the prisoners (8th above) was carried out at the usual place and time this morning. It is to be wished that it will be a deterrent to others and the last, so that this hateful, injurious and thievish propensity may once for all be eradicated from their infamous bosoms. In this, some of the inhabitants, yea! even those most rich in cattle, are suspected as accomplices. The evil has thus long crept in in such a manner that no longer is it made a matter of conscience to appropriate cattle that have strayed away from one troop and wandered into another, when their throats are cut. The loss of the owners has produced innumerable complaints, without, notwithstanding every effort to discover the thieves, the possibility of bringing the crime home to its authors, unless one or other of them flies into the candle of his own accord, and is rewarded by the crime as his own master. 11th. The *Bruydegom* to bring back from the Island some blue flags to be used here as door posts.

December 12th.—Captain Claas arrived with some of his grandees and reported that an infectious disease had broken out among his people, of whom 9 or 10 had already died suddenly; that he considered this an evil omen, as no particularly serious diseases had ever been known among them, and death mostly satisfied itself with old and age worn persons. 13th. Claas leaves with a dram of arrack instead of having found an antidote. He took with him a letter to Hottentoots Holland, expressing our dissatisfaction to the superintendent that he had allowed a fortnight to elapse without sending us, as ordered, a wagon load of hay weekly; and ordering him no longer to delay in this, and should there be any obstacles in the way, to let us know. He was also told of the complaints of Captain Claas, that some of his

1673.

Hottentoots had been ill treated by some of the garrison. That this was certainly not our intention, and that he would have to provide against this, as he would otherwise be held responsible. A few hours after Claas's departure, a wagon arrived with a load of hay and a note from the superintendent, stating that the swollen rivers, caused by heavy rains, had prevented him from sending the wagon sooner, and that of the 714 sheep sent to him, 6 had died in consequence of having drunk too much muddy water.

According to old custom, the merchant, Albert van Breugel, took his seat at the Church Council Board in his capacity as Political Commissioner. A copy of the proceedings was submitted to the Council in the form of a report, as well as the names of two persons selected by the Church Council, from which the Council had to select one for the office of elder. From the names submitted for the office of deacon, the Governor and Council selected that of Hendrik Crudop, whilst the Church Council was entrusted with the selection of an elder. The following letter was addressed to the Church Council:—"Yesterday our Commissioner, conjointly with the elder, Wouter Mostaert, submitted to us the written nomination of the Rev. Church Council for the office of elder. We declare that this has been agreeable to us, and you will therefore be pleased to proceed with the election as you deem proper. We have also selected from the double number submitted to us Hendrik Crudop as deacon. This we notify to you that at the proper time and place he may be inducted into his office, as well as the elder chosen by yourselves." In the Fort the Good Hope.

(Signed) ISBRAND GOSKE.

December 14th.—The wagon which arrived from Hot. Holland yesterday was despatched back to-day with a letter to send on as much hay as possible, with the expression of our displeasure at the death of so many sheep, which, as the causes are known, might have been prevented by the herds if they had properly attended to their duties. Orders were accordingly given to make these lazy fellows more careful. Six geese were also sent thither to be well looked after, as they were doing great injury to the crops here. Sieur Van Breugel, who had once more attended the Ecclesiastical Council as the Council's deputy, reported the satisfaction expressed by the Church Council in the election of the new deacon. As elder they had elected the burgher Herman Gresnight. 15th. Fine showers for the gardens and ground fruit. The agriculturists getting ready to put the sickle into the ripe corn. The earlier crops are already partly cut down and lying on the fields. 16th. The soldiers drilled in the afternoon.

December 18th.—The *Schulp* returns from the Island with a letter from the overseer, stating that the 13 goats had arrived

safely, and with the rest, already there, brought the number up to 18; he also required two beams for lifting the slabs on the mole wagon, and some halyards for the flagstaff, and also a bucket of tar. A wagon arrived from Hot. Holland laden with hay. Four horses were also sent by the overseer, who wrote that there were many old ewes and inferior sheep there, which, on account of having drunk the bad water, were still languishing. He would however take care that they would no longer be sent to graze on such unhealthy spots. As regarded the complaint of Captain Claas, that our people had illtreated his, he mentioned that it had been caused by that wanton people themselves, who had on various occasions attempted to steal the rations of the garrison. Yea! they had even removed two iron bolts from the wheelbarrows, which were finally restored when he was threatened that one or two of his people would be detained and sent to the Cape. They however were remaining so audacious that whatever was not safely cared for or locked up was not safe from their thievish hands. The result was that sometimes it was necessary to display some feeling towards such customers. For the rest no harm had been done to them. In consequence of their not being accustomed to the grass, the Batavia horses had at first lost flesh, but at present they were commencing to regain their condition. In consequence of the rains, the wheat was considerably benefited, and would be harvested in some places about the end of the month. The hay collected consisted of 30 loads, and 10 more might be obtainable. It was thought that more might have been obtained, but the mowers complained that in consequence of the number of bushes among the hay the work could not prosper as well as on higher ground.

December 19th.—The Fiscal, accompanied by the burgher Councillor Elbert Diemer, left for the country as soon as the gate was opened this morning, in order as usual to collect returns of the farmers' chattels and goods, especially of this year's crops. They returned in the evening, having done their work.

The hay wagon returned to Hot. Holland to-day with a letter to Corporal Visser, telling him that we cannot permit him in any way to injure Captain Claas's people, even should they steal anything; but that they were to inform their Captain of it, who has promised to give proper satisfaction in such cases. The present times did not permit of any offence being given to the natives, and the master agriculturist would, about the end of the present month, proceed thither to inspect the crops, and that by the first opportunity he was to send us an exact statement of all the Company's effects there. He had also assured us that he had a much greater quantity of hay than what he now stated to be the case, whilst he considered the excuses of the mowers to be false and far fetched, which could not relieve him of his duty to investigate this state-

1673.

ment personally, and not leave everything to a pack of idle fellows. He was accordingly once more ordered to keep them to their duties, and henceforth to beware of endeavouring to soothe us with similar blue excuses.

A large lime kiln finished to-day.

December 21st.—The *Schulp* takes to Robben Island a convict, named Philip Bulings, lately punished here for cattle theft, and condemned to hard labour for life on the Island; also four spars for the mole wagon, some lime for the flagstaff and a bucket of tar. The Superintendent was also ordered to send us by first opportunity an exact statement of the Company's property there, viz., materials, tools, &c.; as well as the account for the running month.

The foundation laid of the S. or S.W. bastion of the new Fort.

December 22nd.—The men of the *Quartel* busy discharging her load of fuel (obtained at Hout Bay). She will soon be sent away for another purpose.

December 23rd.—The men of the garrison having stopped work were this afternoon exercised in arms; the tradesmen, however, as well as the Company's servants, remained at work until five o'clock.

News brought from the "Koren Schuer" that two lions and one lioness had in broad daylight, and in view of the herd, killed and devoured a cow and ox of the Company. The herd narrowly escaped the same fate.

December 25th.—The time having arrived when, according to the intention (of the Directors) a vessel should be sent out to cruise for the return fleet next month, and there being no other at hand, the *Quartel* was appointed for the purpose. Early to-day she received her despatches, consisting of four duplicate letters to the Commander and Council of the fleet, principally mentioning the continued tranquility of the Company's state and affairs here, and notifying the secret signals projected here for their vessels, according to which they were to call here; at the same time the officers of the hooker received the following instructions:—

"As you have been selected to cruize outside for the return fleet shortly expected, and as you have been provided with the necessary supplies, you shall go to sea with the first favourable breeze and steer for Cape Agulhas, to the east of which you shall continue cruising until you fall in with the fleet, or are ordered back. Having found the fleet, you shall deliver one of the letters entrusted to you to the Commodore, and verbally inform him that affairs here are, praise be to God, still free from anxiety and in a good state. The letter has been delivered to you in quadruplicate, so that, if so ordered by the Commodore, you may deliver the same

written information to such other vessels of the fleet as may still be behind. . . . We need not tell you how carefully you are to proceed in these anxious times of war. You are to be always on your guard, so that you may not be deceived by false signals (*veranderde vlaggen*), as the enemy, viz., the French and English, when they deem it to their advantage, will also fly our flag; hence, rather than expose yourselves to danger, you are to avoid all vessels of a suspicious appearance, in order not to be surprised by the enemy. Should it however happen that you mistake any hostile vessels for our own, and you see no possible chance of escaping, you are to run your vessel on shore, rather than permit it to be captured, having previously tied something heavy to your despatches and thrown them overboard, that they may afford no information to the enemy. Should the weather be favourable, we would like you to run into Struijs Bay, to see whether nothing more can be recovered out of the wreck of the *Soetendaal*, that is to say, if this can be done without danger or unnecessary delay. At Cape Agulhas you are to beware of the reefs and sunken rocks extending far out to sea. Should you meet any Portuguese or any other European ships you shall not board them, or in any way trust them as we cannot know what estrangement may in the meanwhile have arisen between them and our State, as the times, God better them, are so constituted that one hardly knows whom to consider as friends. Manage the provisions properly and keep proper order amongst the men. This we expect from you. We wish you a safe voyage and a speedy return, having successfully carried out your commission."

(Signed) IESBRAND GOSKE.

Having thus arranged for the despatch of the vessel, we celebrated the Nativity of our Saviour, whilst the Holy Sacrament was administered to the faithful.

December 26th.—This second Christmas Day celebrated in the usual manner by going to Church, the Company's slaves only being kept at work.

December 27th.—The year running rapidly to its close, the stores were inspected as far as possible and stock taken, but the quantity of goods on hand does not speed this work as quickly as we wish.

For some days in succession the weather has been rainy, but at the same time warm and favourable to vegetation, more so than can be remembered by those who have lived here since the foundation of the settlement; this will make the harvest in comparison with that of the previous year more opulent, and the vintage also.

December 28th.—The *Quartel* is at last able to leave on her cruise. The master agriculturist despatched to Hottentots Hol-

1673. — land to inspect the ripe corn and issue the necessary orders in connection with it. He took with him a letter to the corporal there, ordering him to render him such assistance as he and the Garrison were able to do.

December 29th.—Violent S. Easter preventing the men from working at the fortifications, and blowing off a large quantity of unripe fruit.

The sergeant having completed his contract by finishing the third earthen point, entered upon a new agreement for throwing up the fourth or most easterly point.

December 30th.—The *Bruydegom* returns from the Island with a cargo of blue slabs. A wagon of hay arrived from Hottentoots Holland with a letter from Corporal Visser, dated the 28th instant, and covering returns of expenditure and the number of men stationed there, cattle, horses, &c. (number not given).

December 31st (Sunday).—After service the newly elected elder and deacons were inducted, after their names had been proclaimed three times, and at the same time the Almighty was thanked for undeserved and gracious mercy shown us this year until the present day, and also humbly beseeched to let us enter upon the following one in desirable tranquillity, that under the shadow of His safe protection we may end it in such a manner as He may deem best to the glory of His Most Holy Name, our salvation, and the safety of our oppressed Fatherland. Amen.

Agrees with the original,

(Signed) A. CRUDOP, Secretary.

JOURNAL, 1674.

1674. — January 1st.—Anxiously looking out for Fatherland ships, but though the wind has been favourable for some time, none are sighted, though there was a false rumour yesterday that one had been seen approaching about sunset. We trust that we may soon have cheerful news, informing us of the tranquillity and prosperity of the Fatherland and its appendices. According to custom the servants of the Company did no work to-day, and to encourage its slaves, each was presented with a small present of money and clothing, as well as a piece of almost spoilt (bedurven) tobacco, which generosity made these poor menials very cheerful and happy. Nor did two soldiers enjoy less clemency, who had some time ago offended against military discipline, and been condemned to hard labour for many years. In consequence of their promise of better behaviour, and various intercessions made in their behalf, the Governor pardoned them, so as to show the public that no pleasure

was in laying a yoke of servitude on its servants, or that there was any mania for punishment so as to cause aversion to the service, but on the contrary, that the Company as it were by long suffering compels offenders to penitence (maar dat door moewilligheyt haer tot penitentie genoegsaam selfs verbinden).

January 2nd.—The two wagons from Hottentoots Holland which had brought hay, and came for the monthly supply of the post there, left early this morning. At the same time all the workmen at the fortifications and the slaves this lovely morning returned to their work to make up for lost time, especially the contractors for the most easterly land point (of the new Fort) which, according to agreement made with them last year, they are to build it up with “taijpaarden” was now commenced.

January 3rd.—One of three lions which had killed a cow here yesterday amongst the Company's cattle, behind the Steenberg, was caught, and shot, and brought in. Fine weather.

January 4th.—The fine weather greatly favours the crops, and causes a rich catch of fish, which is very welcome to the garrison. 5th. The *Oyster* returns from the island with shells. Stock taken vigorously. 9th. The freemen's boat, *Bruyt*, arrives from Saldanha Bay with more than 80 half-aums of train oil from Saldanha Bay *via* Dassen Island. Though at the present we are living in such times that military discipline should be maintained without connivance, it is found to our great dissatisfaction, and oftener than is desirable, that many irregularities and offences, such as sleeping when on sentry duty, &c., are often to be winked at, because the men of the garrison are continually kept at work during the day, and are not excused from mounting guard during the night, so that more is required of them than present conditions, permit. Accordingly, to-day, two of such sleepers were punished, to ride the wooden horse for two days with a twelve pound weight attached to each leg, whilst, according to law, death should have been the penalty.

January 10th.—The quartermaster of the *Oester*, lying in Hout Bay, reports overland, that one of his sailors had absconded two days ago with others into the forest, they having been sent thither to cut fuel. In the meanwhile the vagabond returned hither pretending illness, and was imprisoned.

January 11th.—A certain marriageable girl, Hester Willems, who arrived here two years ago with her parents in the *Vrye Zee*, died in the Lord, after having suffered a few days from a burning malignant fever and dysentery.

January 12th.—The *Schulp* leaves with supplies for Robben

1674.

Island, with orders to the Superintendent zealously to collect shells, and for that purpose, if necessary, to suspend stone breaking, that the boats may not return half full; and that the extra supplies of oil and arrack were exclusively for the free labourers, as urgently requested by him, to see whether this liberality would make them worthy of the gifts by a more zealous labour, in which case they would be continued.

January 13th.—To our joy a small flute anchored below Robben Island: the S.E. wind preventing her from reaching the roadstead. Arrival of a load of hay, and a letter from Hottentoots Holland, stating that Hendrik Albertsen, Master Agriculturist, was very ill with dysentery, and that he had already garnered a quantity of wheat, which he would continue to have done, as all the hay collected already consisted of 30 loads, and the wheat of 10,000 sheaves. 14th. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland, with instructions to Albertsen to return to the "Corenschuur," leaving his master servant in charge, who shall properly care for the harvest, and that a small compartment was to be made in the dwelling house for the safe preservation of 30 muids of corn for seed, and to preserve the same from vermin; whilst whatever is threshed is to be sent hither from time to time. And as it does not appear that any benefit has hitherto been derived from such a large number of cattle that had successively died or been hurt, henceforth every animal being wounded, or otherwise hurt, shall, if irrecoverable, be killed, salted, and conveyed hither to serve as food for the slaves.

A boat dispatched to the vessel off Robben Island, on her return reported that it was the flute *Helena* with lime, timber and a small quantity of dried fish from Mauritius, which she had left on the 30th November last. Had also left Commander Hugo in tranquillity there. Later at night news was received from Hout Bay that the quartermaster of the sloop *Oester*, having entered a small river in which to bathe, and unable to swim, had been drowned. Thus the Company has lost a good servant.

January 15th.—The *Helena* arrives on the roadstead. Her skipper and bookkeeper land, and deliver the papers intended for the masters, in order to be sent home in the return ships. They further reported that after having left this for Mauritius on the 1st January (? last), they had safely landed in the S.E. harbour on the 13th February following, when the skipper landed the same evening in one of the shore boats, which had a most desolate appearance, and left the impression that matters on land would not be in a better state. This was found to be so, the lodge being in a most dilapidated condition, and looking more like an old barn than a Commander's residence. The new apartment built by the junior merchant, Wreede, within the crescent, had fallen

into complete ruin, so that the Commander could not rest his eye on anything in which to reside in safety or deposit the Company's goods to secure them from leakage and other dangers. The garden, situated less than a stone's throw away, did not seem less desolate. A portion had been planted with cabbages, carrots, &c., which were simply choked by the weeds, whilst the rest had almost been completely destroyed by locusts, caterpillars, and other pests. No fruit-bearing trees were found in it, excepting a few sour lemons, planted as irregularly as the houses at Molquerre, as the writer says, whilst the then Commander, Philip Col, kept 7 or 8 men, mostly cripples, near the lodge; the rest were distributed elsewhere in a corner of land called "Noorwegen." The best of all seen by the Commander was a beautiful herd of mostly young, fat, and tame cattle. For the rest, he found everything in the greatest disorder; the big long forest had grown completely wild, whilst the fruit-bearing trees were completely smothered by wild-growing stuff. A plough which the Commander, Dirk Jansen Smient, had made there, was lying completely destroyed; the woodwork had perished, and the ploughshare and coulter were thickly covered with rust, showing that after his departure it had never been used again. Having taken stock and audited the books of the late Commander Wreede, it was found that in goods and money Wreede had, during his administration, caused a deficit of £737. No memoranda, consumption books or any others could be found, and everything was in the greatest confusion. The island itself the Hon. Hugo found to be of good promise. There was an abundance of all kinds of provisions in the form of meat and fish, but before his arrival a most wicked waste had been caused, as ten times more than what was required had been uselessly destroyed. In consequence of these and other irregularities, His Honour intended to issue stricter regulations, which, he promised himself, would in time realize the objects of the Company on this island, as during his presence here, and after having visited in all directions, he has become more and more pleased with its fertility, its incomparable advantages, and its fitness. But much trouble and expense will be necessary.

When the gate was opened the fiscal and surgeon were sent to the Hout Bay to inspect the place where the quartermaster of the *Oester* had yesterday been drowned, and at the same time hold an inquest. They returned in the evening and reported that the body, when opened, had been found sound and healthy, and that the spot where he was lost was not very deep, but narrow and somewhat steep, so that they could not say otherwise than that his fate had cast him there. Finally they had appointed another as quartermaster in the place of the deceased. 16th and 17th. Heavy S. Easters, preventing all kinds of work.

January 19th.—Calm weather. The *Helena* discharging a
N 2

quantity of lime, which seems to be of good quality. A load of hay and three Batavia horses arrive from Hottentoos Holland, with a note from the superintendent, saying that he would carefully carry out our orders lately sent him; but this does not agree with facts, judging from the three horses sent over, which should by this time have recovered their flesh, but are apparently quite lean, starved, and perfect skeletons.

The Council of Justice holds a session to decide various civil cases. It also tries the soldier, Hans Jurgen Hamboes, by nature a notorious ruffian and trouble maker, who had often previously been forgiven his transgressions, in the hope that he would better his conduct. He had now wounded a sailor and committed other outrages, and was sentenced to be brought to the place of execution (het schavot), drummed out of the regiment, have his sword broken before his feet, and serve three years, "ad opus publicum." The execution will take place to-morrow.

January 20th.—The sentence carried out. The *Bruidegom* and *Schulp* arrive from the Island with shells. A note brought by them asks for some necessaries, and mentions that some tools had been sent over to be repaired. The *Helena* still being unloaded. The wagon returns to Hottentoos Holland with such a reprimand to the Superintendent as he deserved for his false reports; and he was required to account for all hides of the cattle which had successively died there, and to take care in future that nothing was neglected, but should be saved for the Company and sent hither.

January 21st (Sunday).—Service in the morning, and the usual Parade in the afternoon.

January 22nd.—A heavy S. Easter, preventing a large "spiegel" ship from reaching the roadstead. She anchored below Robben Island. 23rd. Better weather. Vessel found to be the *Geeroonde Vrede* from home. She brought news of our third victory obtained over the combined English and French fleets in sight of land, and under God's blessing, on the 21st August last, but on the other hand that the formidable fortress "Maastricht" had been overpowered by the King of France in person, after many troops had besieged it, and had most honourably capitulated. Also that the said King, without having attempted anything further, had, with his Army marched towards Meurs, to reinforce the same there. That the flute *Papenburg*, approaching St. Helena with the other return ships, and seeing ten English ships there, had parted from its comrades and safely arrived below Texel, but as the hostile ships had occupied all our approaches, she had been captured, and that great anxiety existed regarding the other ships, which had already been given up by some. His Highness the Prince of Orange was on the

march with the Army of the State, as is supposed for some weighty purpose. Of the Peace negotiations at Cologne very little could as yet be said. We shall soon know whether the letters received will confirm all these particulars.

January 24th.—The *Gecroonde Vrede*, of the Hoorn Chamber, left St. Jago on the 11th September with 272 men. Had lost 12 men and brought 35 sick, of whom 30 have already been taken into the Hospital. Her letters confirmed the abovementioned news, and also that news had been received from England that the return flutes *Het Wapen van der Veer*, *Alphen*, and *Frans Europa*, excepting the hooker *Cockmeeuw*, which had safely arrived in Bergen (Norway), had been captured by the English off St. Helena, and brought into Kinsal in Ireland. The two other flutes were still missing, and no one knew what had become of them, or whether they were the two vessels which, according to letters from Portugal, had arrived in the Bay "Tot Dos las Santos." The island St. Helena, was some months after its capture recaptured by four English war vessels and a fire ship, but no particulars could be obtained regarding the conduct of our people in the matter. His Highness, the letters said, had besieged Naarden, and the equipment of the Company for the East Indies did not proceed as desired, for on account of the great scarcity, which can be well imagined, no men could be obtained, which will naturally delay the vessels still longer.

January 25th.—To begin with, 10 bags of wheat were received from Hottentoots Holland; also six horses ordered thence, so five are still there, which, the Superintendent mentioned in his letter of the 24th instant, had something the matter with their legs, and were unable to come. The hides of the beasts that had died had been thrown away to date, and now and then used by the men for shoes and hinges for their doors. In future, however, they would be better locked after.

The *Vrede* taking in water, and the *Helena* still landing lime. 26th. Only 22½, instead of 35, lasts of lime obtained out of the *Helena*. The rest of her cargo now being discharged. Her provisions do not promise much. The dried fish has not been found durable, and the smoked "hartebeesten" meat appears to be only of ordinary usefulness. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland for more hay, the dry weather being favourable. 27th. Cold, windy weather, but not impeding the progress of the works. Of the timber obtained from Mauritius there are many kinds which are useless for the Fortifications, and besides what has been shipped in her (? *Helena*) for the Fatherland, there is a piece called "red ebony," which is so heavy, and so difficult to manage, that it will have to be sawn through in strips to prevent accidents.

1674. — The 123 shark skins, also intended for the Fatherland, were likewise landed.

January 28th (Sunday).—Divine Service in the morning, and the usual Parade in the afternoon. 29th. A sweet shower towards evening. As we have received no supplies whatever with the *Vrede*, we were obliged to broach her Batavia cargo, and landed some mum and Rhenish wine for the innkeepers.

January 30th.—Received a load of hay and a letter from Hottentoots Holland. The letter is as follows:—

“ To the Hon: Governor, Isbrand Goske.

“ Hon: Sir,—As we have been ordered by the Governor to cruise about for the E. India Return Fleet, we did our best on the 7th January to fall in with it, but before the wind it was too fast for us. In the evening, however, we returned to our appointed place, but could not make out what vessel we had sighted. In the evening of the 10th we again sighted a sail, which we found the next morning to be the *Helena*. The following night we parted from her on our way to Agulhas. In consequence of the heavy South-Easter on the 23rd, we were unable to carry out the Governor's orders, and resolved to run into False Bay and find good shelter there, in order not to fall too far below the wind to reach our destined place; and also for repairs, as we had suffered some damage, so as to return to sea without delay. We confide you to the protection of the Most High, and remain your humble servant,

“(Signed) WILLEM JANSSEN ROUWS.

“ On board the hooker *De Quartel*,

“ The 29th January, 1674.”

(N.B.—The above was written by the officers of the said hooker, anchored in False Bay, and despatched to the Cape.)

The letter of the Superintendent mentioned that from the 16th to the 29th of this month 3,200 wheat sheaves had been threshed, which yielded 36 muids clear, which is a fair return.

January 31st.—Arrival of the yacht *De Zyp* of Enckhuijsen with 206 men. Had lost 46, and brought 35 sick with her. Did not bring much later news; only an epitome addressed to the Governor-General and Councillors at Batavia gave a few details of the naval victory, amongst others, that the English Vice-Admiral, Eduard Spragh, had been killed, and many men lost on that side; and that three or four of their ships had been blown up, so that, thoroughly demoralised, they had to make a shameful flight to their harbours, whilst we had not lost a single vessel.

Reported this day, that some mischievous Hottentoots of

Schacher's kraals in the "Riet Vallei," had set on fire about 1,000 bundles of cut reeds. Some of them having been apprehended, declared that they had had no part in it. However, they shall remain in custody until the real culprits are discovered.

1674.
—

February 1st.—Letter dispatched to the officers of the *Quartel*, not again to move so far away from their appointed rendezvous, to chase vessels, but on receipt of this, to go about and return to sea. The Corporal at Hottentots Holland also ordered to send in a load of hay, but should there be no room in the dwelling house for all the wheat threshed, then to load the wagon with wheat only.

February 2nd.—Fine weather for working at the Fortifications. In a few days time the new store will also be finished. Nor are the lime kilns neglected, as every practical effort is made to keep a supply on hand.

A female, named Francijntje Van Lint, who disguised in male attire had come out as soldier in the *Geeroonde Vrede*, and having on shore here been asked in marriage by a freeman, is at their mutual request detained on land and permitted to marry; an evident example of God's dispensations regarding all things.

The stocktaking in the stores being now ended, two Commissioners were this day sent out to count the cattle of the Company at the most distant places. To-morrow two others will leave in a different direction, and make surprise visits to the cattle herds. 3rd. The two Commissioners leave, and the two others return.

February 4th (Sunday).—After service the two other Commissioners return, and report that they had surprised the shepherds at the Company's kraal behind Table Mountain. They were at home with the cattle which amounted to 670 sheep and one goat; but that the pastures for such a large troop was very scarce, so that many sheep were suffering from lameness and dropsy, hence a portion should necessarily be removed.

February 5th.—The Fiscal at the evening meeting notified that the *Helena* had brought to him from Mauritius two letters, the one from a certain Sergeant, Pieter Philip Col, and the other from the daughter of the Commander, Hubert Hugo, both full of complaints and grievances regarding the inhuman and tyrannical conduct of the said Commander towards the said Col, with the request, should he deem it advisable, to communicate the matter to the Governor and Council, and assist the injured parties with his advice. After full consideration he concluded that he could not do otherwise than communicate it to Governor and

1674.

Council, with the request that after the letters and annexures have been read, to permit him to examine before Commissioners the skipper and bookkeeper of the aforesaid flute, who had had session at the Board which had tried and determined the case (at Mauritius). Decided before reading the papers, to require a written statement on the subject from the Fiscal.

February 6th.—The Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland informs the Governor that the corn there would not be safe from wet and other injuries. 7th. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with a letter to the Corporal, stating that yesterday, under the superintendence of the Master Agriculturist at “De Schuur” ten empty wagons had been sent out to return laden with hay. The said “Baas” (of the “Schuur”) had also been ordered to make the proper arrangements regarding the preservation of the grain, and the Corporal was strictly to carry out his injunctions on pain of making good such loss as might result from disobedience.

February 8th (Thursday).—As the Rev. Adrianus de Vooght, our minister, has during his stay among us of nearly seven years, been plagued with much sickness, but especially during the last two years with violent colic, so that his health had been so much undermined that he thought a change of climate might do him good and he had accordingly asked for his demission; and as there is a minister on board *De Geëroonde Vrede*, and another on *De Zyp* destined to India, his Reverence, for the reasons stated, and because the vacancy can now be properly filled, was allowed to proceed to Batavia, according to his long-expressed wish. 10th. The Rev. de Vooght gladly avails himself of the permission to leave for Batavia, so that one of the newly arrived ministers will be retained here in his place.

February 11th (Sunday).—Ten muids of wheat arrive from Hottentoots Holland. After the second sermon the Church Council met in the Consistory, when the Rev. de Vooght informed the members that the Governor in particular had permitted him to leave, and asked them also to agree to his going. Granted. 12th. The Rev. Rudolphus Meerlant, of IJsselsteyn, passenger on *De Geëroonde Vrede*, was selected to remain here, and the retiring deacon cashier submits to the Church Council a statement of the funds during his administration, showing that the capital of the poor fund amounted to fl5,115.

February 14th.—The Fiscal submits his written statements regarding the complaints from Mauritius, (Dec. 5th) and is authorised to examine the skipper and bookkeeper of the *Helena* before Commissioners. 16th. The examination takes place, but

nothing is elicited from the evidence of sufficient importance to re-open the case. The one stated that he had been outvoted, and the other that he had acted to the best of his knowledge. 17th. Some soldiers lifted from the vessel and replaced by others from the Fort. A load of hay arrives from Hottentoots Holland. The vessels receive their despatch, and everyone rushes helter skelter on board. 18th (Sunday). The vessels leave this evening with a fine moonlight, and a favourable breeze. 19th. The *Oester* sent to Hout Bay to cut fuel, as well as to lie on the watch, so as, should anything unexpected occur to us, to proceed with our despatches at once to India.

February 20th.—The store in the new Fort completed, as well as half of the curtains between the two W. points, a massive and unusually durable work, and very suitable for its purpose. A new smithy also commenced, in order the better to keep one's eye on the workmen. 21st. The *Bruydegom* despatched to Saldanha Bay to catch a cargo of fish for the slaves. 23rd. Ten muids of wheat received from Hottentoots Holland. Many of the cattle there were in poor condition, and might soon succumb. The Superintendent therefore asked for some casks and salt, in order to slaughter and salt down those which have no chance of recovery. 24th. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with an aum of salt, some casks, and a balance and weights. 26th. Very cold and wet. 27th. The same cold weather, seriously affecting the cattle so that, as many are unable to follow the herd, they remain behind and die. This weather, so unusual, promises no good to the grapes, which have not yet been pressed, hence there is not much hope of good wine. 28th. Prospects of more favourable weather, and in spite of the destructive characteristics of the S. Easter, which have denuded the fruit trees of their fruit, and prematurely dried up the pastures, they are considered much pleasanter and more beneficial than the raw sea winds.

March 3rd.—The wagon brings a load of hay from Hottentoots Holland, but the Superintendent does not mention anything about the boat *Oester* (which seems to have been blown to sea by the violent South-Easterns). 4th. This evening men sent to False Bay to search for her, return and report that she was anchored in the "Sant valey" there. Orders were accordingly issued to move her to a more favourable spot, where the *Grundel* had been lying last year, as she would be then in easy communication with the shore should she require anything. She was to return to the Cape laden with straw. 6th. The *Quartel* also arrives in False Bay, having been driven from her station of observation by the violent S. Easterns and somewhat damaged. She was ordered to return at once to her station to watch for the return ships.

March 7th.—It having been calculated that the old prices of

1674. — provisions caused a serious loss to the Company, they were altered in such a way that henceforth they were not to be below cost, so that though the Company did not benefit, it would nevertheless lose nothing. This was decided on mainly in the case of the freemen, who were the biggest consumers. 8th. News received from the *Oester* that she had been blown to sea and not been able to reach Hout Bay; that she had been in great peril, but fortunately, after five days, reached False Bay, that she had lost two anchors, and that the men had been five days without water. 9th. Wagon sent to Hottentoots Holland with various necessaries for the *Oester*, which was to return to the Cape as soon as repaired.

March 10th.—A well-to-do Colonist in the country, coming from the forest with a load of wood, instead of walking, went to sit on the top of the load, and when the wagon reached a bad spot it commenced to reel, and finally turned over. The load of wood fell on the man and crushed him. Truly a sad misfortune.

March 11th.—The Danish vessel which arrived yesterday salutes the Castle with five guns, and is thanked. Some of her officers land with their Captain's greetings to the Governor, and the request to be permitted to refresh here. Their ship's name was *De Mageloos*, a return ship of the Danish Company, which had taken the place of the *Oldenburg*, that had been found unfit for the purpose. . . . She brought us a packet of letters from the High Government at Batavia, and was granted the usual permission to obtain water and refreshments. The following are extracts from the despatch from Batavia. . . . "Great trouble has been taken to search for the person mentioned in yours of the 29th October, 1672, named Pieter Martensz: Kuijneman, who, as you believe, left Europe about 15 years ago in the flute *Venenburg*, but we have not been successful, so you must not expect any information on this head from us.

The slave of Jutsche Edop banished to the Cape in one of the former ships is named Oesin of Bali; as he came on board the very last moment, we were not able to discover his name in time. . . . Ship's affairs. . . . The ship *Zuyt Polsbroek* also brought hither in chains the assistant, Andries Meijer, who has been degraded by the Court of this Castle to the rank of soldier at f9 per month, because he had not observed that order in inventorying the properties left behind by the dead, as he had to do according to the "Articul Brief."

Regarding the private goods found among the things left by the late skipper Engel Adriaansz: on the *Asia*, after his death, the inventory of which you sent hither by skipper Doen, a quarter of which is claimed by the Fiscal at the Cape, the annexed copy of the sentence of the Court of Justice here, will show that Fiscal de Neijn at the Cape has also been allowed a quarter.

The nine ships seen by *Het Wapen van Ter Goes* near the line were no doubt the 9 yachts or frigates, carrying from 36 to 40 guns each, and together about 1,000 men, who had been seen off Patnam, and had thence retired to Masulipatnam, when they had heard of our fleet of defence on the coast there; but afterwards, six miles to the north of Masulipatnam, under the command of the Hon. van Quaelbergen, in a violent battle with 10 English ships three of the latter were captured, viz., the *President*, *Samson*, and *Antelope*, of which, after the battle, one had sunk. The remaining seven had taken to flight towards Bengal, or the coast of India, we are not yet quite sure. Besides these three English ships, our people also captured on the 7th September, before Belleson, the French ship *Le Flamand*, with 94 men, 40 of whom had gone on shore. She was mounted with 26 beautiful metal and 10 iron pieces. See for the rest the annexed summary of news compiled from various reports, to which, for brevity's sake, we refer you." (Signed) JOAN MAATSUIJCKER, NICOLAAS VERBURG, LAURENS PITH, PIETER ANTHONISZ: OVER 'T WATER, CORNELIS SPEELMAN, and PIETER VAN HOORN. In the Castle, Batavia, the 13th Nov., 1673. N.B.—The news sent covers only the months August–November, 1673.

March 12th.—Heavy S. Easters. A portion of a shed, hitherto used as a battery, blown down. 13th. For sheltering the tools in use for the large garden, the Governor erected almost in the middle of the latter, a proper little garden house, using for the purpose only the old material of broken down buildings. The slaves were set to work at it after hours, so that no time or expense has been wasted or incurred, though the building was one of the most necessary for such a large plantation. The goods that were in the old battery removed to the new Castle. 15th. The Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland writes that he has received the things sent for the *Oester*, and that he is busy collecting as much wheat and straw as that sloop can carry.

March 16th.—The removal of provisions and some ammunition, &c., continued from the old Fort to the new Castle. 17th. The Company's slaves set to clearing the water tank, so that there may be clean water for the expected vessels. 18th (Sunday). The usual Divine Service, with parade in the afternoon. 19th. The *Schulp* takes to Robben Island a mischievous Hottentoo boy who had entered the garden of a freeman and robbed it. He will now for some time have leisure to carry on shells.

March 20th.—This evening the soldier, Statius Hartman, hitherto stationed at the "Coren Schuur," was caught in the act of sailing away in one of the freemen's boats. His object evidently was to board the foreign vessel and thus escape. 21st. Some

1674.

of the Danish officers call on the Governor and express their thanks for the accommodation afforded them. They now ask for their denission, which was granted with a letter of introduction to the Directors, &c. And as it has often been found that at the departure of Danish ships, some freemen, as well as Company's servants, managed to get on board and escape to Europe, which is very prejudicial to the interests of the Company, it was decided to instruct the Fiscal to present to the officers (of this Danish vessel) in presence of Commissioners, the following "insinuatie" (complaint), viz.:—

Isbrand Goske, Councillor Extraordinary of India, and Governor of the Cape of Good Hope, on behalf of the General Netherlands Chartered E. I. Company, maketh known that at various times, Company's servants and freemen had, when Danish ships called here, proceeded on board and managed to desert from the Settlement. That last year this had been effected by a freeman who had committed manslaughter, who had escaped on *De Gulde Fortuyn*, followed by Matthijs Smit, a native of Aarhuijsen in Denmark. Having been received on board, they of course escaped. As all this is very hurtful to the Company we have deemed it necessary to notify it to the officers of the *Magaloos*, and to require that they may make such arrangements within their board that neither servants of the Company nor freemen, at the time of their departure shall be allowed on board without our special consent, much less "stow-aways," who might wish to run away. That no assistance be rendered them, and that the Danish Company will be held responsible for any loss incurred by us in consequence, and that consequently no Danish vessel will henceforth be permitted here, &c. By order of the Governor and Council in the Fort, "the Good Hope," the 21st March, 1674. (Signed) H. CRUDOP, Secretary. With the Company's seal in red wax.

The Fiscal and Commissioners having fulfilled their commission, returned on shore and reported "that the captain had acquiesced in the "Insinuatie," with the assurance that no such inconvenience would be caused by him or his people, that he was now lying ready to leave, and only waited for the Governor's orders." Our letters for the Seventeen were then quickly closed and sent on board. 22nd. The Dane leaves with a strong S. Easter. It is to be hoped that she will be the last ever to come here, as nothing but ingratitude can be obtained from all foreign nations, as well as great inconvenience.

The fugitive soldier, having been examined, openly declared that he had agreed with a certain "officiant" on the Danish ship that if he could manage to get on board, the latter would convey him to Europe. This shows what spirit moves that sort of people. 23rd. The fugitive again examined.

March 24th.—Letter from Hottentoots Holland stating that he

sent 325lbs. salted beef, of feeble oxen killed by him, as well as a muid of wheat, and that the *Oester* had already on the 19th taken in the full cargo.

March 24th.—The Governor orders the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland to start without delay the ploughing and cleaning of the lands, as it is time to do so, and also to send in the hay.

The Sousouqua captain, Claas, the best of all these Cape Hottentoots, reported to-day that some of his men, who knew the country, had been sent out by him to spy the Gounema Hottentoots. They reported as a certainty that that hostile nation were only three or four days distant from this, at the Little Berg River. All their camps had been drawn together there, and he offered his services to assist with his men in attacking them.

March 25th (Sunday).—The Resurrection Day of our Saviour was celebrated as usual.

Captain Claas's statement being believed, and the dry season being about to expire, which will enable us with more facility to resent the hostile attacks of that tribe on the subjects of the Company, it was unanimously decided in the evening meeting to make a second attack on it, under such leaders and in such a manner as are fully expressed in the Resolution. The Expedition to leave, God willing, to-morrow night, and the Burghers notified to-day to come in for the purpose. In the meanwhile everything is arranged as far as practicable.

March 26th.—Though everything had been conducted quietly, and most of the night spent in preparations, nevertheless the Hottentoots about the Fort, in consequence of the extraordinary assembling of the Burghers, obtained an inkling of affairs, and that Gounema was the object. Accordingly everyone most courageously hastened on his way to his craal, wife and children included, while at the same time Captain Claas was ordered to march to his locations, and keep himself ready when our force appeared in the neighbourhood, in order to join it.

The Burghers having been informed of the reasons of their being summoned, and a consultation having been held, they were demitted and ordered to assemble towards evening at "the Hooge Kraal," a certain high plain about an hour distant from the Fort. In the meanwhile the soldiers also left for that "rendezvous" in companies, accompanied by the Governor and some members of the Council and the heads of the Expedition, to whom their instructions were read, then they were bidden farewell. The Governor and party returned to the Fort before the gates were closed.

The instructions to Jeronymus Cruse, head of the Expedition, was as follows:—"The reasons which induced us in July last to take

1674.

up arms against this Gounema and his people, were to revenge the outrages and murders committed for some time on servants of the Company and some of the freemen, contrary to all equity. They are sufficiently known to you, and therefore need not be repeated. But as we have deemed it necessary and decided for the preservation of the public peace and tranquillity to take further vengeance, the more so as we have been assured by Captain Claas (who had sent some spies inland) that the Gounema tribe, who had combined their forces, were not encamped further than the Little Berg River, and therefore the opportunity seems to have offered itself to us, not to delay in the matter, we could not desist from seeing it through, and to give you, whom we have selected as chiefs of the Expedition, these lines as in the form of instructions.

As soon as it is dark, you shall, with 50 servants of the Company, and 50 freemen, mounted and on foot, a Company of 100 men, provisioned for 14 days, and properly armed, leave this, or the appointed "rendezvous," and take your course as quickly as possible towards the Gounemas' kraals. On your way you shall communicate with the Cape Hottentots, and shall take with you such of them as may be willing to join you, and may be able to render you assistance wherever necessary, with the promise that if they conducted themselves well and bravely, they would receive a liberal share of the booty, provided, however, that no division shall take place until after the return of the Expedition to the Fort, as the whole shall first be offered to the Company as its prey (*prooije*). This should be afterwards communicated to them.

Our intention is by no means to take for our satisfaction a portion of the cattle of those tribes, but on the contrary our orders are that our just arms shall so be exercised against them that their posterity will retain a wholesome dread of the Dutch nation, and no longer dare to offend it, showing, however, commiseration towards the women and infants, as it behoves a Christian nation to do.

In order to surprise these tribes, and not to be watched by them, you shall march during the night, preferring the moon to daylight, but in this we cannot give you a fixed order.

As everything begun after mature deliberation, generally secures a good ending, we also advise you to maintain good order, so that before anything of importance is undertaken, it shall be considered in council, which shall consist of the following persons, viz. :—

Jeronymus Cruse, Ensign of the Company, as the Chief.

Wouter Mostaert, Burgher Councillor.

Herman Ernst Gresnich, Ensign among the Burghers.

The Company's Military Sergeant, and the Burgher Sergeants.

We trust that everything will be properly arranged and carried out by them according to our intention.

We would wish this exploit ended within 14 days, and that you

and your force might be back within that time, but if for weighty reasons this should be impracticable, we shall have to console ourselves. Therefore acquit yourselves together as honest and gallant men. This we expect from you. In the meanwhile we wish you success and a speedy return. Your friend." (Signed) ISBRAND GOSKE. In the Fort, 'the Good Hope,' the 26th March, 1674. 28th. Ensign Cruse sends back two of his men with the news that 250 Cape Hottentoots had joined Captain Claas, so that the native troop was fully 400 strong: and that affairs were still on a good footing. Beautiful weather for the Expedition.

1674.

March 31st.—Arrival of the *Oester* from Hottentoots Holland with a cargo of wheat and straw. A wagon of hay also arrives from that post. Clearing and ploughing the lands there would soon be commenced.

April 1st (Sunday).—Divine service conducted by (?). 2nd. The Governor orders the corporal at Hottentoots Holland, by letter, that ploughing must be commenced, but that he was to leave the work in the hands of the Superintendent of the "Coornschoor," and not interfere with it, only taking care that he keeps his men together in order to be of assistance to the Superintendent. Efforts should further be made that 10 or 12 additional morgen should be brought under cultivation, as there is sufficient time, and there are enough men for the purpose. Carelessness has been displayed in cleaning the straw received with the *Oester*, a large quantity of ears full of wheat having been found in it. There is no excuse that there had been no suitable threshing floor, which might easily have been arranged, instead of having been neglected. For the last time he is ordered to attend to this. He is also to take care that no cattle is allowed to retrograde so far as to die, but should he see no signs of recovery, to kill and salt it down. 6th. News received from Cruse that he had reached the "Mosselbank," half a day's journey from this, and hoped to be at the Fort to-morrow. Rumour has it that he has much cattle with him.

April 7th.—Early this morning, the Governor, accompanied by some Councillors, rode fully an hour's distance from the Fort, to meet the expected commando, and welcome it. Having inspected the booty obtained, he returned to the Fort at noon. The doings of the second Expedition and their result, do not, judging from the statement of the officers, differ much from those of the first one. Having discovered the Gounema tribe after a four days' march, they decided to attack them with their whole force the next morning, dividing themselves and the Hottentoots into different troops, with orders to make the attack from all sides. Having therefore occupied a position early in the morning, near the enemy's camp, in order to attack it, it was found that it had selected such a

marshy spot for its fastness, surrounded by various rivers, and naturally made almost unapproachable, to its advantage, that it could not be approached without great trouble and danger. In the meanwhile the Gounemas, becoming aware of our presence, fled in confusion with bag and baggage, leaving behind them most of their cattle and all their arms, which were seized and secured by our men as good prizes. The mounted men failed in overtaking the enemy. Not one of our men fell or was hurt except one Hottentoo, who was by mistake wounded with an assegay by his own nephew, and died in consequence. Their arms and huts were afterwards burnt to ashes, besides what our African auxiliaries seized as booty. The latter conducted themselves well, gauged by their natures, and fairly good order was maintained among such an unbridled mob. To all appearances, a considerable number of the enemy must have died by their hands (as they were the first at the kraals) if they had not lusted more for booty than for blood, so that in the beginning of the fight they had been smitten with the beautiful cattle, and allowed the Gounemas to escape. The number of cattle captured, when counted at the Fort, consisted of 800 choice beasts, cows, calves and oxen, as well as 4,000 sheep. The latter will for the present remain at the "Coornschoor."

April 8th.—It is fortunate that our travellers have returned home and finished their work, as the present rainy weather would not have been serviceable to them, but would have caused us great anxiety. As is believed, Gounema has lost all his cattle, so that it is not likely that he will ever dare to approach the Cape so near again.

April 9th.—News received from Saldanha Bay that the *Bruydegom*, lying in the "Hoetjes Bay," waiting for a fair wind to return to this, had been short of water, and repaired to the watering-place. On her return to Hoetjes Bay, on account of her unmanageableness she ran ashore, during a squall, on one of two rocky islets lying in her course. She had, however, been drawn higher up on shore, in order, if possible, to be repaired. The Hottentoes who had joined our expedition, having been promised a liberal share of booty, this day received some pack oxen, and every captain, viz., Claas, Coopman, Cuijper, and Schacher, received each 300 sheep. An additional 300 were given to each of the latter on condition, as the Company has at present more cattle on hand than she can properly look after, unless she kept many more herds in charge of them, that they (the Captains) were to take care of and depasture them, and that the increase should be theirs; but should, in course of time, the Company run short, they (the Captains) shall deliver to her each 300 sheep. They were very well satisfied with this arrangement. And as soon as the Company and the burghers have had their share of

the milch cows and calves, they would also receive a fair share, which seems to be very much to their liking.

April 10th.—Arrival of the large “spiegel” ship *Tidoor*, having on board the Hon: Councillor Extraordinary of India, Sybrandt Abbema. The boat which had brought news of the *Bruydegom* returns to Saldanha Bay, taking with her three carpenters, timber and whatever else was required for repairing the vessel. The quartermaster was ordered with his men to assist the carpenters in every way, and as soon as the vessel had been repaired, to bring her hither without delay. But should it be impossible to repair her, they should rather abandon her than expose themselves to the danger of being ill-treated or killed by the Hottentoots. In that case the freemen might accompany them. The carpenters were also to return at once if the vessel could not be repaired sufficiently to enable her to reach this.

April 11th.—The *Tidoor* reaches the roadstead. The Hon: Abbema lands with the discharge of guns, and is received on shore by a guard of honour. The vessel had left the Fatherland on the 8th November by the back way. At St. Jago His Honour was informed by three Zealand Privateers, which had left Zealand three weeks later, that the French had evacuated various conquered places, such as Crevecoeur, Bommel, Rynkerk, and the whole Province of Utrecht, and had removed their garrisons from those places, and that the Prince of Orange, having carried the strongly fortified little town of Naarden, was again away with his army on some great design. What the facts are, time will show. The letters received contained no news whatever, except instructions for the Return Fleet. . . . 31st. The *Tidoor* busy taking in water, and landing her sick. 14th. Shells getting scarce on Robben Island.

April 16th.—The burghers, or their substitutes, who had lately been on commando were very early to-day called together by the Messenger of Justice, that the captured cattle might be distributed among them. The Governor had undertaken to be personally present at the distribution (after the matter had been properly discussed in Council, and the wants of the respective residents had been considered), principally to check the envious and selfish, with which this small Colony is not misdealt, and as far as practicable give satisfaction to the poor as well as the rich. Accordingly, during the Governor's presence 300 cows and 90 calves were distributed *pro rata* among the burghers, according to their requirements, four full-grown animals and one calf being the smallest number allotted to one individual. The recipients were generally well contented, whilst the share that fell to the Company they could take over on the same conditions as last year. Heavy rains yesterday and the day before, so that a portion of the inner wall of one of the warehouses being erected in the new Castle,

1674.

and which had not yet been properly dried, fell down, hence at least a fortnight's labour has been lost. Moreover, the rest of the wall may follow, as it is very difficult to perform proper mason work in this wet weather, and much circumspection is necessary. Some goods landed from the *Tidoor* for this residency. 17th. The *Schulp* takes 99 sheep to the Island, in order to return with shells. The Master Butcher reports in the evening that the remainder of the Hottentoo cattle had been sent to graze towards the mountains, but when counted, after their return home, fully 100 head were missing. Believe that this was caused by the thick mist, which had covered the mountains towards nightfall, and that thus the animals were scattered. At once orders were issued to search for the missing beasts. 18th. Heavy rains for several days in Hottentoots Holland, so that the straw was beginning to rot. As they are busy ploughing, the Superintendent asks for some material for the plough and harrow. Some soldiers were for their petulances condemned to the punishment of the wooden horse, and others to labour at the public works. Among them was Statius Hartman, who had some weeks ago attempted to desert in the Danish ship *Mageloos*. His merits deserved the most rigorous punishment, but on account of his simplicity he had been excused.

April 19th.—Some Hottentoots living in the neighbourhood mention that Captain Claas' people, as well as those of Cuijper and Schacher, had surreptitiously carried off a portion of the cattle, for which they were summoned to appear here. Yesterday 20 of the cattle were found in the "Duijntjes" and elsewhere. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland, taking with it from the Schuur a harrow, plough, and other agricultural instruments.

April 20th.—The abovementioned Captains appeared at the Fort this afternoon, and being examined, admitted that since the distribution, now and then some of the Company's cattle did certainly stray among their own, and that they had not interfered with them, trusting that as soon as they were missed, they would be searched for among their own herds, and that it would therefore have been superfluous on their part to restore them. At the same time they protested that they had no knowledge that any cattle of the Company had been directly stolen by their people. Truly poor excuses, and as trustworthy among us, as we have knowledge of their thievish nature.

Alexander Blank, bachelor, of Schaffhausen, a freeman here, and Annetje Sacharias, spinster, of Tonningen, who arrived this year in the *Gecroonde Vrede*, are permitted by the Council to enter into the holy estate of matrimony.

April 21st.—The men of the wrecked boat *Bruydegom* arrived from Saldanha Bay. The quartermaster submits a statement in his defence regarding the misfortune, which had

been caused by a certain sailor who had been at the helm, and had been somewhat blamed for his disobedience to orders. The carpenter declared that it would be waste of time to endeavour to repair the wreck. The Hottentoo Captains bring back 28 of the strayed cattle, alleging that they had no more strange cattle among their herds, which is not acceptable, as a number is still missing.

Here follows the statement of the Quartermaster. "Had arrived at Dassen Island on the 23rd February, and at once began to take on board the eggs of the freemen collected there. This was continued for three days, but only 213 eggs were obtained, which were not worth the trouble. I then went with the freemen to the Bay, but a heavy N. Wester prevented us from calling at the Islands. To lose no time, we went to the Saltpans to see whether we could get any salt for cargo; but the pans were full of water and we therefore again descended to visit the Islands, three of which we called at, but finding only a few eggs, as mostly all the nests were filled with young ones, we went to the "shell" place, and on the 12th March filled the vessel with shells and limestone. There we remained until the 18th, when running short of water, we were obliged to visit the watering place and fill our casks. We then directed our course once more to the "shell" place. Halfway lie two reefs of rocks in the middle, between two Islands, to avoid which I stood at the bow in order to look out and give warning. I called out to the man at the helm that he was to keep somewhat lower down in order to avoid the rocks, and that the sail might the better fill on that side, when we passed it. This at first he did somewhat, but immediately luffed against my will. I censured him for doing this, saying that he should look after his helm without any talking or laughing. But he inwardly grumbled at it, and said that I always went against him with wrangling and scolding, and that we were without danger between the Islands. I then asked him whether it would not full? and he replied, yes, it is already fulling. I then said that he was to keep off a little more, but he persisted in his carelessness, and let the vessel come up to the wind again with great force. Thereupon she was struck by a heavy squall, and as she could not soon enough recover herself, was thrown on the rocks. The water was ebbing when this occurred, and before we could do anything else, we had to throw out an anchor, and wait for the high tide. In the meanwhile we also threw all the ballast and other heavy things over board, in order to lighten her and thus get her off more easily. Having been refloated, she was found to be so leaky that we had to make for the nearest favourable spot to beach her. We accordingly requested the freemen to proceed to the Cape, to inform the Governor of the disaster and to ask for assistance. They also took with them the eggs collected on Dassen Island." . . . Signed LAMBERT LOURIS.

1674.

April 22nd (Sunday).—The Lord's day of rest, celebrated as usual. 24th. The misfortune which befel the *Bruydegom* was found to have been caused, not so much through negligence, but by a fatal accident, and that the sailor who was at the helm was not much to be blamed.

April 25th.—Arrival of the *Zirikzee*. Had left Zealand on the 4th December last with 300 men. On account of the many sick, she had called at Teneriff. She brought 64 dead, but few sick. Letters received by her from the Seventeen, dated the 4th Nov., 1673, in reply to ours of the same year. They, however, make no mention of the change for the better in our Fatherland, as communicated to us by Mr. Abbema, which was, however, confirmed in a private letter to the Governor. The Seventeen also mentioned that they had again accepted into the service Cornelis de Cretser, with the rank of Merchant and f85 per month, on the understanding that when he arrived here, and shall have accounted for the arrears during his administration here, he was to be promoted to the rank of Secunde, and that the Merchant Sieur van Breugel was to proceed to Batavia.

Arrival of the return flute *Beemster*. Had left Batavia on the 5th February last. Is one of the return squadron under the flag of the Merchant Nicolaas de Roij, Vice-Commander, and the Rear-Admiral Schoppers. Thank God! the affairs in India were everywhere in good order. 29th. (Sunday). After divine service the usual parade was held.

April 31st (?).—A certain freeman's servant named Steuker of Bremen was missed yesterday with about 25 sheep of his master. The sheep were afterwards found to have been bitten by a lion, and this morning Steuker's dead body was discovered in the veld, the head torn from the body which was everywhere covered with blood. From this it is presumed that having defended himself against the lion, the latter had overpowered him. However this bird (?) of prey (roof vogel) was paid in similar coin, having been shot yesterday by some amateurs.

May 1st.—A wagon arrived from Hottentoots Holland with the meat of 4 oxen that had been killed, weighing 782 lbs. The Postholder also asks for some necessaries. 2nd. Council meets and decides the order of departure of the return ships for Europe. Arrival of the return ships *Burgh van Leyden* and four others, as well as the *Marken* with provisions for the Cape. 3rd. Commander Nicolaas de Roij lands; anxiety felt regarding the *Middelburg*, as she was full of sick, including the skipper.

Here follows a letter from the Governor-General and Councilors of India dated 1st February, 1674. Having received favourable accounts of the affairs at home, we have laid on eight instead of four vessels (names given), two hookers and the *Marken* as provision ships for the Cape. We trust that the fleet will

receive further good news at the Cape and so be able to proceed home without anxiety We were glad to gather from your letters that agriculture and planting were developing at the Cape, and that the *Soetendaal* and *Gooiland* had brought you your rice, &c., in good order; but that the flute had run on shore on the continent of the Cape between the 17th and 18th (somewhat imprudently), that the junior merchant and 11 men were missing, that 4 men were drowned, and one had been killed by an elephant, and, finally, that in your opinion the rest had died of hunger—all these things cause sorrow and loss to the Company, independent of what you suffered by the loss of the cargo. This disaster naturally induced us to send you instead the flute *Marken* and 2 hookers laden with rice to cover your loss, and the more so as we observe that the outward bound on their arrival at the Cape are but poorly provided with supplies, and at the most for 9 months. This is contrary to the custom in former times, when there was not the least approach in numbers of the residents then to what they are at present, for we see that you have a population of fully 1,100 souls. It does not, however, look well that of the 39 slaves and 3 convicts sent to you with the last return fleet only 27 have survived. It is as well that you landed the grey clinkers out of the *Posthoortje*, and sent her home ballasted with stone, and that you sold them at $f6\frac{1}{2}$ per 1000. We also read what you landed from the *Oostenburg* for the needs of the Cape, including 20,600 inferior klinkers (moppen) valued together at $f668\text{ }8$, besides 94 Spanish dollars of the *Quartel's* ships' money retained by you, and that you had properly credited the general account with the amount. The Rds. 75 obtained for an aum of rhine wine consisting of one leaguer, and Rds. 55 for each of the 10 aums of mum have been a good profit, but the leakages deducted, these profits become very insignificant. The deficit of 9 lasts and 1,180 lbs. rice on the 160 lasts sent you per the *Gooiland*, and that of 3,611 lbs. on the brown sugar are excessive, but the latter is a very volatile (laxerende) article; but that 1,087 lbs. of stones and dirt were found at the bottom of the canisters containing the sugar, has been an inducement to us to observe more closely the Chinese who sell this article to us, a most wonderfully deceitful nation, and very difficult to be weaned from this habit. . . . The arrival of the *Sparendam* on the 11th, and of the *Swanenbury* on the 16th January, 1674, with your letters of the 21st and 23rd October, placed us in possession of a list of such articles as had been saved from the wreck of the *Soetendaal*, including two horses. The clothing however had been damaged by salt water, and more might have been saved if the wreck had not been abandoned too soon; besides other faults committed by the skipper Jan Adriaansz : Blok of Enckhuijsen (as you mention), such as keeping back Rds. $120\frac{1}{2}$ out of the estate of the deceased sick visitor, entrusted to his

keeping, and which he had appropriated to himself until you made him restore the amount in order to be credited to the deceased's account. The papers connected with this case will be handed to the Fiscal of India. . . . You write that the *Grootenbroek*, &c., had arrived at the Cape. She arrived here with 28 dead and a large number of sick. It does not suit us in these times, that of the small number of men sent out, so many have melted away, which embarrasses us on many occasions, so that you have done well that you distributed the men, saved from the *Soetendaal*, among the vessels bound hither, in order to be entered on the books here, and have their permanent accounts filed.

The yacht *Wittenbergh* sent hence direct to Mauritius with paddy and other necessities, returned hither on the 14th January last, with letters dated the 30th November, 1673, and though we find from the lists that Commander Hugo and his Council had also written to you and the Seventeen, per the *Helena*, we nevertheless send you the copies (as the Commander had only this one opportunity for forwarding the originals), that they may be of service to you as well as to the Masters.

One Hans Michiel van Calenbach, who came out in 1664 in the flute *Het Roode Hart*, as soldier, and was afterwards made corporal, and finally sergeant at f 20 per month, to which rank he was raised by the Hon : Overbeeck on the 11th April, 1672, but was sent as soldier to India on the 12th August, 1673, in the *Suyd Polsbroek*, without account or particulars, complains that he has been thus punished for being absent one night from the Fort, as he says, with permission of Ensign Jeronymus Cruse. He requests that his account may be sent over, and the particulars of the charges and the sentence, showing why he had been deported.

From the annexed extract from a letter, dated the 16th September, 1673, Mr. Willem Volger advises from Surat that 7 or 8 men had arrived there in a large French ship from Mosambique, which, as is said, had seized a company's sloop or smack in the Cape waters, and sold her to the French at Mosambique. We presume her to be the sloop *De Boog*, which had been sent last year by Commander Hugo to Madagascar, in order to search for the Merchant *Niehoff*, but has since arrived neither at Mauritius, nor anywhere else. We therefore refer you to the Extract." . . . (Signed) Joan Maatsuijker, N. Verburg, Laurens Pit, P. A. Over 't Water, Cornelis Speelman, and Pieter van Hoorn. In the Castle Batavia the 1st February 1674.

Arrival of the hooker *De Brontyans* of Delft; had left Delftshaven in company of the *Tydoor*, and called at St. Jago. Had lost 2 by death. The rest were well.

May 4th.—Arrival of the hooker, *De Sreemmer*, from Ceylon the 14th February, on her way to Europe. She brought two letters, one signed by Governor Van Goens, junior, alone, and the

other by the Hon. Hendrik van Rhède, Commander of Cochin, and Council, dated 23rd November 1673. They are as follows:—

(1) From Governor Van Goenis. (Colombo, 12th February, 1674). "Received yours of the 5th November, 25th June, 13th April, 26th July, 20th May, 10th October, and 18th July, from which we were particularly pleased to gather the good condition of affairs at the Cape; and that Governor Isbrand Goske had in October, 1672, arrived safely in the *Suyd Polsbroek*, and assumed the reins of Government. We wish him once more much good fortune and health, and that he may for many years conduct the affairs of the Company with honour and for the benefit of his own reputation. We were also very particularly pleased to read that with God's blessing the Island, St. Helena, had under your management been captured, but the news also reached us, as if the English had re-captured it. We trust that the latter is not true, and that the Island is still under our Dominion, which we will be pleased to know. . . . We heartly thank you for having exchanged our sick on our vessels for healthy men, and that you have distributed our letters for home among the various return ships. We have heard nothing of the four soldiers who are missing, or of the five Singalese, who have absented themselves, so that, no doubt they have gone elsewhere. We thank you for the garden seeds, the small olive trees, and the grape and carnation slips, and shall by first opportunity endeavour to comply with your requisition, and also send you a metal bell, lying ready here for the Cape. We could not send you much, as the hooker is so small, and has to take a small cargo for the Fatherland. It may easily happen that she passes the Cape, as she has been provided for such an event. We see that the expeditions to the Majottes, and the Coast of Guinea have been failures, and that accordingly you have (? not) obtained the slaves so much required. To send you any from here, we see no chance, as all are urgently required to complete our heavy fortifications, to bring which into a proper state of defence, we have this year been obliged to obtain from Wingurla (at heavy expense and trouble to the Company) one thousand "Canarijns," some of whom we shall be obliged to keep on for a considerable time longer, and hire them instead of the departed and deceased Tutucorijn Coolies. Moreover our own slaves have been so diminished in numbers by death, that we are much in want of others; so that, to our regret, we cannot provide you with any, which we would otherwise have liked to have done. We are altogether unprovided with the Ceylon, Tutucorijn and Malabar Coast Charts requisitioned by you; however we shall send them to you at an early date for the benefit of the ships. The inopportune time, and the blindness of our Cartographer are the causes why we cannot send these charts that are so highly necessary.

1674.

Your letter also informed us how the hooker *De Grundel* had been wrecked 8 miles to the East of False Cape, and that nothing better may be expected in the case of the *Zeelt*, as the officers of *Do Grundel* believe that they have seen the wreck at Madagascar. May God, according to our prayers, safely conduct this hooker, as well as all the other out and homeward bound ships. . . . The state of affairs here you will be able to gather from our despatches to the Directors, which we have left open for your perusal. And as you are running short of fuel in consequence of having to burn so much lime, we shall remember, when sending any vessels home, to provide them with a larger quantity—the present hooker *De Swaan* now leaving, being well provided. . . .” (Signed) R. van Goens, Junior.

(2). From H. van Rheede and Council at Cothin, the 23rd November, 1673. “Arrival of the hooker *De Egel* on the 31st January last, bringing your pleasant and welcome letter of the 5th November 1672, with all its annexures, from which we gathered with joy, that your Honour had safely arrived there as Councillor Extraordinary of India and Governor of the Cape of Good Hope. We wish you all success and blessings from Heaven in your important trust. . . . We regret that we are unable to provide you with any slaves, to assist in the building of your new fortifications, partly resulting from a great sickness which has been raging everywhere in this country, and carried of a large number of people, and partly because only Paelias would be obtainable here, who are mostly not real slaves, but only under service of their masters. Experience has told us that they have often been stolen, or filched from their masters, as no doubt your Honour experienced too well when you were here. At your request, we have sent with the Hooker to Ceylon a metal bell, with the request that it may be forwarded to you. We do not doubt but that it has reached you safely.

We kindly thank you for the garden seeds. We trust that you will continue to remember us in future in this respect also.

The state of affairs here you will gather from our despatches to the Directors, which are under cover to you, and which, after having been read, we pray you to forward to their address. . . .”

(Signed) A. van Rheede, Goeman Vosburgh, Borghart Uijtter, Pieter Neuller, Cornelis van Woenssel, N. Boevincq, Pieter Neines and Franc: van der Voorn, Secretary.—Cothin, the 23rd Nov., 1673.

May 5th.—Arrival of the return ship, *De Hollandsche Tuyn*, with damaged spars. She was immediately followed by the new ship from home, *De Blaauwe Hulk*, of Enckhuijsen, with 279 men. Had left Texel on the 17th January. Had 18 dead. Brought letters from the Committee at the Hague, dated the 5th January last, mentioning how many ships the English had despatched to

India during the last three years, and that it did not appear that the king would this year despatch any worth mentioning. Hence the Directors had changed their minds, and ordered that the return ships should be thoroughly refreshed (here), without any hurry, and rather combined than separately leave for home. Another letter mentioned that the *Posthoorn*, which had been sent home expressly with the news of the re-capture of St. Helena by the English, had safely arrived in December with all the papers. The rest of the news was favourable to our dear Fatherland.

The hooker, *De Baars*, laden with provisions for the Cape, reaches the roadstead. 6th (Sunday). The *Quartel* sent out with refreshments in search of the return ship *Middelburg*, and to proceed as far as Saldanha Bay. The wind prevents her from leaving.—Instructions for the officers. . . “Should you find the *Middelburg* in Saldanha Bay, you shall deliver to her our letters and refreshments, and besides the twelve extra sailors you take with you, you shall if necessary give her as many of your own crew as may be required for her assistance, and further assist her in every way. . . Having spoken the vessel, you shall as soon as possible return, to inform us of her condition, that is to say, if you have previously obtained the consent of her officers. The fresh meat given you for the vessel should in this cold weather not be cut up and salted, as it will keep fresh for two or three days, when hung up, but should it turn, it must be pickled at once, for which you receive the necessary salt. Should you not find the vessel in Saldanha Bay, you shall hurry your return as much as possible, and take care not to send any of the men for any requirements on shore, that they may not run the danger of falling into the hands of the Hottentoots, our enemies, and being evilly treated by them.” (Signed) Isbrand Goske. At the Cape of Good Hope, in the Fort “the Good Hope,” the 6th May, 1674.

The hooker also took with her the following letter to the Vice Commander, and the officers on the *Middelburg*. Your staying away so long makes us suppose that you have passed the Cape and reached Saldanha Bay, and that, in consequence of the weakness and indisposition of the crew, of which we were informed by Commander Nicolaas Le Roy, you were forced to run into the aforesaid bay, or you may still be off the coast, hoping for a good wind. We therefore could not refrain from meeting you as soon as possible with a good supply of refreshments, consisting of 2 oxen and 24 sheep, besides divers vegetables, shipped in *De Quartel*, purposely sent out to meet you, in the hope that she will find you. Besides her crew, she takes with her 12 sailors, for your assistance, if required; but as we are very anxious to hear of your health, we wish the hooker not to be long detained, but to let her return as quickly as possible, that we may be able further to arrange for what the ship and crew require and you may mention, remembering that we are at war with the Hottentoots in Saldanha Bay, and

1674.

therefore do not trust them, or allow any of our people to land there, unless properly armed. You should also not delay in bringing your ship here, that, after having been properly refreshed, you may leave with the other seven return ships, which, thank God! have all arrived here safely. . . ." (Signed) Isbrand Goske. In the Fort, the "Good Hope," the 6th May, 1674.

May 7th.—In accordance with the Resolution of the 2nd instant, the demolition of this old Fortress was continued, whilst at the same time the work connected with the out and homeward bound vessels was actively proceeded with. To the number of vessels was added *De Pynacker* (flute) from home and destined to Ceylon. Had left the Texel with the *Hulc* on the 17th January last, with 160 men, of whom 6 had died.

May 8th.—A load of straw (chaff) received from Hottentoots Holland. The Corporal there reported that the 45 cows and 30 calves sent thither had safely arrived, excepting three calves destroyed by wild beasts on the way. He sent the skins of two, that of the third could not be found. 9th. The razing of the old Fort rapidly proceeding. 10th. Some sailcloth and agricultural implements, &c., sent to Hottentoots Holland, with a letter from the Governor to the Superintendent, expressing his surprise that with so many men sent with the cattle, it had not been possible to safeguard them from attacks of prey, but that time will reveal the truth. 11th. The hooker *Quartel* leaves to cruise for the *Middelburg*. The hooker *De Baars* discharged of its Cape cargo.

May 12th.—The *Schulp* leaves for the Island for a cargo of shells and takes with her a successor to the present Superintendent there, who wishes to repatriate. Arrival of *Het Wapen Tertholen* of Zealand, with 230 men. Had left Holland on the 4th December last; brought 8 dead and 10 sick. Already at the commencement of the voyage a conspiracy among some godless plotters had been discovered, who intended, as soon as the opportunity was favourable, to seize the ship, but the matter having been discovered in good time, the conspirators had received their just punishment; two being hanged, and 2 scourged, branded and riveted in irons. Arrival also of a Danish ship, flying the flag of a Rear Admiral, and named *De Hoop*. Had left Copenhagen on the 9th November for the Danish Fort, Dainsburgh, in Tranquebar, *via* Bantam, and the Coast of Coromandel. She had on board the young gentleman (jongenheer) Adelaar, Chief Commander elect, on behalf of the Royal Danish Company, of the aforesaid Fort Dainsburgh. She merely called for refreshments, which at the civil request of Mr. Adelaar, were on the usual terms, allowed.

May 13th (Sunday).—During the morning service the outward bound ship *De Voorzichtigheijt* arrives, destined to Ceylon. Had left the Texel on the 16th December with 192 men, of whom 15

had died. She brought 4 sick. 16th. Hard at work razing the old Fort, that the work may be completed at the end of this week.

May 17th.—The Danish Chief Commander Adelaar, lands with four of his suite to call on the Governor, and was invited to dinner by the latter, and otherwise entertained. 18th. Every effort made to discharge our Cape cargo from the *Marken* and *Baars*. The latter is to leave with the return fleet, that, should after 5 or 6 days trial, the *Sucemmer* be found unfit for the service required of her, she may be taken home by the Squadron. The Council also decides to send the guns, which had been mounted on the old Fort, to Batavia, as they are unserviceable here, and will be useful in India.

May 19th.—The men of the outward bound ships, which had been engaged in razing the walls of the old Fort, which are now almost levelled to the ground, return on board, excepting 55, who will remain here to take the places of those whose time has expired and who are returning home, whilst 19 sick, left here by the Squadron, will have to take charge of the Hospital. 20th. (Sunday). After Divine Service, the letters and papers were closed for the Fatherland. 25th. All the high and lower officers embark, amidst the discharge of many guns. 27th. Divine Service conducted as usual.

May 28th.—Some of the neighbouring Hottentoots recovered from the sea below the kloof, behind the Table Mountain, a wooden image (? picture), and a piece of a painted plank, evidently belonging to some vessel that had been lost near this bay, and as the long absence of the *Middelburg* does not give us the best hopes, we sent the relics on board the vessels (now lying ready for departure) to be viewed by those who know the *Middelburg*, to find out whether they belonged to her. 29th. At daybreak some men, mounted and on foot, were sent out to skirt the beach below Table Mountain at Hout and False Bays, to look for more wreckage that might have been washed up, whilst, behind the kloof, another bit of plank and a knee were found, but judging from appearances these bits of wood do not seem as if they belonged to the *Middelburg* or any other Dutch vessel, but rather to a Portuguese, but the painting (*schilderij*) looks more like French; and as such it is considered to be by the skippers of the vessels here.

May 30th.—Arrival of the *Delfshaven* in a very desolate and helpless condition, so that men were sent on board to furl the sails, &c. Of her 234 men with whom she left the Texel on the 8th November last, she had lost 80, whilst another 80 were sick.

June 1st.—A portion of the sick of the *Delfshaven* landed. 3rd. In the morning the roadstead was bare of ships, all having left during the night, including the *Dane*, with the Hon. Adelaar on board. Divine service celebrated as usual. 4th. The *Schulp* proceeds to the Island with 3 sold'ers to relieve three time

1674.

expired men. She also takes thither a sailor, Claas Stoffelsz : Spoor, condemned by the Court to one year's hard labour.

June 4th.—Some salt meat sent from Hottentoots Holland, the carcasses of 5 cattle and 24 sheep which had been slaughtered because of their lameness. The whole weighed 949 lbs., not too much indeed. The Postholder also mentioned that 16 muids of wheat had already been sown, and the rest would be put into the ground immediately after the next rain. He had also provided against the lands being inundated, which frequently happens there.

June 5th.—The Court of Justice sits to settle various undecided cases, as well as to clear the prisons. Besides some civil cases, sentence was also given in the case of four persons, who had stowed themselves away in the return fleet, with the intention of deserting to the Fatherland. They were sentenced to be riveted in chains and serve as convicts for two years. A freeman's slave, who had dared to set himself against a certain Netherlander, by inflicting two wounds on him, was ordered to be scourged, branded, riveted in chains, and to serve as convict for two years, the owner retaining his ownership.

June 6th.—Some of the convalescents of the *Delfshaven* having enjoyed the gloriouse refreshments and the nursing at the Hospital, are now gradually beginning to show themselves in the streets, and in this pleasant weather passing their time in walking about. Others, whose legs are still too weak, nevertheless are creeping about on hands and feet in the open air, or carried into it. The boats of this vessel busy taking in water.

June 7th.—As stone quarrying does not succeed so well in some places, as before, so that a shortage may be possible, the Governor, in order to remove this difficulty, has personally during the last 2 or 3 days been searching about the mountains for a more suitable and advantageous spot, not doubting that he would soon be successful.

In the old inner Fort some "corps de gardes" and dwellings of the Company's servants have been evacuated, and (the occupiers) for the present domiciled in the Horn works and the new Castle. The old buildings were accordingly broken down, and such of the material which was still fit for use, set aside to be otherwise used when required. 8th. Busy also conveying into the settlement fuel, shells, and stone, for facing the earthen ramparts. 11th. Dry weather; which enables us to continue at the fortification works, and erect a new "corps de garde," similar to the one built on the sea, or most southerly bastion; and into which when furnished, all the soldiers will be removed from the old Fort.

In order not to interrupt the work of the Company's slaves at the new Castle, or forget the necessary labour in the large garden, the greatest portion of which requires to be manured, an

agreement was made some days ago with a number of Hottentoots to carry, for a trifling wage, manure from the cattle kraal into the said garden. They were very willing to do the work, and with their numbers are able to do a great deal daily.

And as the Company's draught and other cattle depastured in the neighbourhood, already consist of a fair number, so that their stables have become too small, the latter were enlarged by one half, in order to accommodate more animals.

June 12th.—The burning of lime having been, as a tentative measure, entrusted for a time to one of our burghers, does not appear to answer in every sense, so that it will be best for the Company to do the work herself. The facing of the ramparts is not continually successful, as when it rains, now and then considerable portions are washed down.

June 14th.—Wagon arrives with hay from Hottentoots Holland, and a letter from the Superintendent, stating that it is no wonder that the salt meat, lately sent, weighed only 949 lbs., as besides the cattle being extraordinarily lean, there were among the number of slaughtered animals also small calves and some young lambs, which had little weight; and that nearly all the cattle sent thither the last time were badly conditioned, and had little growth in them. 15th. The Superintendent on Robben Island doing his best to have continually a large supply of shells on hand. but a new sheepshed was urgently needed. 17th. (Sunday.) The day of rest of the Creator of all things, celebrated as usual. 18th. The *Delfshaven* takes on board for Batavia some of the guns of the old Fort. 21st. Draught oxen sent to Hout Bay to hasten the conveyance of wood to the beach, so that the wagon drivers, who are playing the sluggard there, may be more satisfactorily kept at their work.

June 22nd.—About eleven o'clock a.m., a certain Placcaat, ere this promulgated to prevent the squandering away of the stuffs advanced to the men on account for clothing, was renewed, as it is intended, in the beginning of next week, to commence with distribution, that thus, everybody whom it concerns, may regulate himself accordingly, and beware of loss.

It was no uncivil request of the Hottentoo Captain Claas, who arrived to-day at the Fort with a considerable number of his people, and proposed to the Governor that as the pastures where he had been lying until now were daily becoming poorer, to make an excursion with his kraals over the mountain into the Soeswaas territory in order to let the cattle recuperate there. This was gladly acceded to, notwithstanding the Company has 300 sheep running with his troop, for all want of confidence in him was set aside, as it was in truth a compliment little expected from such a "fresh" (ongezouten) African, as he (and his people), have a perfect right to use their own authority to go into their own

1874.

country, and turn whither they like; but notwithstanding that, he endeavours to oblige the Company by his submission. 28th. Captain Claas and his people having been entertained with a "soopie," leave with the promise that within a few weeks they will return to their old station.

July 3rd.—The *Delfshaven* leaves hurriedly with an unexpected S.E. breeze. In consequence of the dallying of the officers, certain refreshments had been left behind which should have been on board the day before. A fast-sailing sloop was accordingly sent after the vessel with the vegetables, &c., but she was already out of sight.

July 9th.—The dwelling-house, provisionally built for the Governor at the new Castle, being now completed, His Honour to-day for the first time entered into occupation by dining in it with the principal officials. He decided to hold his domicile henceforth in it, and the more so, as it is accommodated with some apartments suitable for offices, and with sufficient writing space, until the permanent dwellings and offices shall have been constructed. The Lieutenant of the Garrison was also lodged in an apartment above the "corps de garde" of the "sea point," whilst the military were as much as possible to be removed thither from the old Fort. The other officers, whether civil or military, were, however, for the present to remain in their old lodgings.

The *Quartel* brings a last of salted fish from Saldanha Bay, which is bought from the freemen for the slaves at the usual rates.

The discovery to-day made of the theft of some rope by certain wagon drivers, who had to convey it to Hout Bay for the *Oester*. Matter to be investigated.

July 10th.—As the Governor yesterday entered into possession of his new residence, in the new Castle, so to-day the evening prayers and the ordinary Council deliberations were conducted in the Church.

July 12th.—An express arrives from the officers of the *Helena*, bringing the necessary evidence regarding the theft of the rope (see above, July 9th). It also notified the bad conduct of the skipper, Cornelis Jansen Frooij, who is getting worse daily in conduct, and by unceasingly drinking is neglecting the duties entrusted to him, thus setting a bad example to the men. He is also charged with the most abominable crime committed with some of the young sailors; so that, as soon as the Governor had heard all this and communicated it to the Council, it was decided to let the vessel return at once, notwithstanding the murmurings of the common people belonging to that dirty gang, and to order the officers, at sight of the letter, should their skipper be found at all dilatory in leaving, at once to weigh anchor with him on board, and take no further notice of him.

July 13th.—A ship entering the bay. All anxious for news. Decorates herself with bunting, which caused great excitement. After she had anchored, the drums and trumpets sounded and the cannons roared. Later the pleasant news was communicated that it had pleased the Lord of Hosts, who holds the hearts of Kings in His hands, to incline the mind of the (His) Majesty of Great Britain to enter into a desirable peace with our State, as the letters of this vessel *De Couverve* notified. The Articles of the Treaty signed on the $\frac{9}{19}$ February, 167 $\frac{3}{4}$ have been mutually gratifying, and published at the Hague on the 6th March following, in Latin, but as the time was too short no printed copies were as yet obtainable when the vessel left. The *Couverve* had left on the 16th March with 250 men, of whom 18 persons had died. Had called at St. Jago, and brought only a few sick, who were at once landed. According to the passengers all likelihood of peace with France seems again to have vanished, as the Plenipotentiaries of the latter country deputed to be present at Cologne, had been recalled by His Majesty. On the other hand, nearly all Christendom was in commotion, and everyone was standing on the watch with girded sword. In every way no pleasure was felt at the French Court in the suddenly arisen understanding between England and our State, so that already complaints had been made to the Majesty (of the former country), whilst the Town, Campen and some other places in Overysse, have also been “unfrenched” and evacuated by the French, once more united to the State. As desired by the Directors, it was decided to select the hooker *de Brantgans* to convey this most desirable news to India. She will, if the weather permits, leave to-night for Ceylon; whilst the *Quartel* will proceed *via* the coast of Malabar in her wake. Both will be hurried with their supplies; and as soon as the *Helena* returns from Hout Bay, she will be despatched to Batavia. 5th. It is fortunate that we have vessels at hand fit to carry the news of the peace to India.

July 15th. (Sunday).—After the sermon, God’s name was heartily thanked for the Peace, with the Prayer that he might again prosper the State of our worthy Fatherland, and grant it the victory over all attacks and designs of the enemy, so that whatever can not be obtained in love from the enemy, may be secured by force of arms, that thus everything may serve to the hallowing of His Glorious Name, and the prosperity of the ruined country and its people.

July 16th. — The *Helena* arrived from Hout Bay. The skipper, anxious about the sudden recall of the vessel, and his malversations, played the sick man on board, and sent the mate on shore, with notice that he would land to-morrow.

The *Quartel* and *Brantgans* only waiting for a favourable wind to leave, the former *via* Malabar to Ceylon, and the latter *via*

1574.

Cape Commorin to the same destination. The Commander at Cutchin, Hendrik van Rheede, was requested to send the news of the Peace inland to Wingurla and Surat, and after having read the letters to send the hooker to Ceylon, or make such other arrangements as may be considered best.

July 17th.—The two boys of the *Helena* examined, and though not confessing to having complied with the skipper's wicked designs, nevertheless acknowledged that he had endeavoured to induce them to do so. 18th. The *Brantgans* and *Quartel* leave. Skipper Cornelis Jansen Frooy, of the *Helena*, having landed, is taken into custody and the examination of the two boys continued. 20th. The skipper and the two boys confess their guilt, and the Fiscal is instructed at once to take proceedings against them, whilst the chief mate of the *Couwerre* is appointed provisional skipper on the *Helena*, a man of good repute. 21st. Arrival of the hooker *De Cockmeeuw* from Patria. The *Helena* leaves for Batavia with the despatches brought by the *Cockmeeuw*. 24th. The Court of Justice sentences the three criminals to death, and orders the Fiscal to remove them in a boat to the *Marken*, in the roadstead, and kept on board that vessel in irons; thus the crowding together of inquisitive young people was avoided, and the removal effected without commotion. After dinner several Commissioners from the Council, accompanied by the Minister of the Divine Word, the Fiscal and Secretary, proceeded (on board) to inform the delinquents of their death sentence; leaving the minister with them to comfort and admonish them. Having accomplished this, he shortly afterwards returned to the land. (N.B.—The sentence was that they be drowned in the bay.)

Fifty half aums of brandy landed from the *Cockmeeuw*, a portion of which was sold to the innkeepers, to save as much leakage as possible. 25th. At the request of the wine retailers here, four leaguers of French wine were landed from the *Couwerre*. The quantity is to be refunded to Batavia in Rhine wine, as soon as the latter is received from home. The *Couwerre* takes on board 12 guns for Batavia. A number of soldiers also employed in levelling some heaps of rubbish still remaining of the old Fort. When the sun had set, the three malefactors having heard their sentence on the flute *Marken*, in presence of the deputies from the Court of Justice, were lowered into a boat, and not far from the vessel's side thrown into the sea. May the compassionate God have mercy on their souls and henceforth graciously save this small place from all heavy legal punishments and especially such horrible crimes.

July 29th.—How changeable this African climate is, is almost incredible. The West wind which had by its violence caused a boisterous sea, and during the last two days had threatened everything with destruction, had to-day gone down completely,

followed by such calm weather that not the slightest motion could be observed in the air, whilst the bay was as smooth and bright as a mirror.

This day departed this life, a certain female Hottentoo, named Eva, long ago taken from the African brood in her tender childhood by the Hon: van Riebeeck, and educated in his house as well as brought to the knowledge of the Christian faith, and being thus transformed from a female Hottentoo almost into a Netherland woman, was married to a certain Chief Surgeon of this Residency, by whom she had three children still living, and some others which had died. Since his death however at Madagascar, she had brought forth as many illegitimate ones, and for the rest, led such an irregular life, that for a long while the desire would have existed of getting rid of her, had it not been for the hope of the conversion of this brutal aboriginal, which was always still hovering between. Hence in order not to be accused of tolerating her adulterous and debauched life, she had at various times been relegated to Robben Island, where, though she could obtain no drink, she abandoned herself to immorality. Pretended reformation induced the Authorities many times to call her back to the Cape, but as soon as she returned, she, like the dogs, always returned to her own vomit, so that finally she quenched the fire of her sensuality by death (door de hjdelycke doot), affording a manifest example that nature, however closely and firmly muzzled by imprinted principles, nevertheless at its own time triumphing over all precepts, again rushes back to its inborn qualities.

July 30th.—The body of the deceased Hottentoo, Eva, was, notwithstanding her unchristian life, buried to-day according to Christian usage in the church of the new Castle.

August 1st.—The Court of Justice sits, and sentences two soldiers for theft, and a sailor for dangerously wounding another. The latter was ordered to be keelhauled and banished for four years. One of the soldiers, who had a bad reputation, was sentenced to be publicly scourged and serve as a convict in irons for five years. His mate was for good reasons excused from corporal punishment, but had to serve in chains at the public works for three years. They were moreover mulcted in fines and confiscation of their wages. Two others were punished more lightly.

Unexpected arrival of the hired *Schellinger galiot, de Snobber*, which had left *Patria* on the 20th April with eleven men *via* St. Jago, with orders to pass the Cape, direct to Ceylon, if the health of the crew permitted it, in order to convey thither the tidings of peace. She brought no later news, and only two letters from the Directors, dated the 2nd and 12th April, in which we are authorised to retain this small vessel here for a while and then send her on to Ceylon or back home. As she appeared to be a fast sailer, it was decided to let her continue her voyage to Ceylon, and the hooker *de Cockmeeuw* direct to Surat.

1674.

August 3rd.—The sentences having been carried out in the case of the two thieves abovementioned with full lustre (met vollen luyster) they were at once embarked on the *Schulp* for Robben Island. The wagon arrives with straw from Hottentoots Holland, in order to take back supplies. 4th. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland towards evening, intending to pass the night as usual at the house of the Cavalry Guard. She also takes some trifling necessities such as a bucket of tar and wagon grease.

And whereas the shop has hitherto been more a loss than profit to the Company, and with the exception of the general distribution twice a year among the garrison, sells little or nothing, and as nevertheless it has always to remain provided with such wares as may be required, which, however, in consequence of the slow demand are liable to become damaged and moth-eaten, and thus double the loss, and whereas, in addition, the person, who has had the administration of it, has during the last four half years, shown considerable deficiencies in his accounts, and there is no suitable person here to take his place, the said shop has been cleared out, and the goods by transfer taken over by the Administrator, Sieur Breugel, and packed in separate cases, that he may sell them from his warehouses. The name of the shop however, as far as it is required in the books, shall run on merely *pro forma*, without any real effect. 9th. Departure of the *Cockmecu* to Surat and *De Couverve* to Batavia. 10th. Departure of the galiot *De Snobber*.

August 13th.—The works at the new Castle progressing steadily, in spite of the continual wet weather. 19th. (Sunday). Usual Divine Services. 21st. The *Marken* leaves for Mauritius with supplies, &c.

August 21st.—This morning the first stone was laid for the foundation of a permanent residence for the Governor, within the new Castle, beside which there will also be a small church or hall, in which the religious services may be conducted. This building is marked off in the curtain between the S. E. and S. bastions, where it will be most favourably situated. The erection will be taken in hand at the earliest opportunity, without neglecting other work, and the more so, as the church, in which hitherto the services are being held, will be required for other purposes.

August 22nd.—However pleasant it has been during the last three days, it has been very unpleasant to-day. So much rain and hail fell that it looked like a second deluge, but we trust that this will be the last of the monsoon.

August 23rd.—There being no vessels in the bay, a number of carpenters were set to to repair the jetty which had become very much injured, since it had been last repaired, that it may be in proper order when the outward bound ships arrive.

August 25th.—A large whale (een noort of suyt caper) was washed up lately behind the Lion Mountain, so that they are now busy boiling oil from it. 29th. Whale found to be very lean and will yield hardly a half-aum of oil, which is not worth the trouble.

As stone quarrying does not proceed as rapidly as before, so that the mason work at the S.E. bastion is retarded so much that no sufficient work is left for the men, the erection of the Governor's dwelling was taken in hand, for which stone of the old Fort, which was found suitable, was used. None of the workmen however need run idle, as sufficient work can always be found for them.

August 30th.—Having a little leisure now that the roadstead is bare of ships, we showed our joy at the news of peace by the discharge of our guns and the lighting of bonfires, and also with a glass of wine drank to the prosperity of our common Fatherland. May the most omnipotent Prince of Peace, the Ruler of Heaven and Earth, we heartily pray, grant wholesome and long lasting results to the freshly kindled good understanding, and the treaties that have been concluded between the Crown of Great Britain and our State, for the safety and prosperity of the subjects of both countries. 31st. Supplies sent to Hottentoots Holland.

September 1st.—In reply to the proposal of the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, that a granary as well as a threshing floor should be built there, the Governor writes that both would be very serviceable, and that he might commence chopping the timber required for the purpose, but not to commence the work itself until the intended visit to that station by the Governor, who will personally point out to him where the building is to be placed. The Governor was also pleased that men had been set to work to clear the crops of weeds and wished this to continue. The meat sent with the wagon had arrived in good order, but instead of 550lbs. only 543lbs. had been received, and the draught oxen had also arrived here. 2nd. (Sunday). Divine Service conducted twice in the Lord's House.

September 3rd.—The *Schulp* proceeds to the Rogge Bay ('tRocheen baaye) to discharge her load of fish there.

September 7th.—The *Fiscal* sent to Robben Island to enquire into the mutinous conduct of some of the convicts there under the leadership of a lately condemned convict. 8th. He leaves with authority to punish the evildoers, and otherwise act as required, the Superintendent being ordered to render him every assistance.

September 9th (Sunday).—Usual Divine Service. Fine weather. 10th. Having been informed that many burghers who had by permission taken their cattle to the country in the neighbourhood of False Bay and adjoining pasture grounds, in order to depasture them outside the limits, had come too near the Company's pastures, the Ensign was sent out to make a personal

1674.

inspection, and issue the necessary orders, that the Company might not suffer loss.

September 11th.—Arrival of the three masted hooker *De Croontogel*. Had left Amsterdam on the 16th May with 22 men. Brought no later news. Nor could the officers give us any oral information regarding the condition of the Fatherland, or the military preparations which were going on in it. These people seem to have taken very little interest in such matters. The Ensign returns from False Bay and reports that the cattle of the freemen were not trespassing on the pastures of the Company, but that he had nevertheless pointed out to the herds a boundary line which they were to observe.

September 12th.—The Fiscal returns from Robben Island, but had found the trouble between the Superintendent and the convicts not to be of such importance as we had been led to believe, but nevertheless he had properly censured the malcontents and issued before his departure, such regulations as he had deemed necessary. In consequence of the drift sands the dwelling house had been almost buried, and threatens a collapse any day, so that it cannot be occupied without danger. It should therefore be put on another spot. He also gives hopes of the little garden there, which, notwithstanding the barrenness of the ground, is yielding all kinds of beautiful vegetables, which are however much destroyed by the number of rabbits, which know in a masterly way to use them as food. He brought with him about 20, dead and alive, caught or shot. What pleased us most was the good measures adopted, and the zeal displayed by the new superintendent in collecting such large quantities of shells, so that we need not be anxious for some time to come. 13th. The *Schulp* arrives with some blue floor flags from the Island.

September 15th.—Cornelis Pietersz: Lumis, of Christiania, having been employed for nearly 2 years as butler in the stores under the supervision of the Administrator, having been imprisoned for some weeks in consequence of dissatisfaction given by him, was now also convicted of having conveyed 2 half-aums of red brandy at night from the old Fort to the residence of a licensed dealer in strong drinks, to whose servant he delivered it on condition, without the knowledge of the master of the latter, to sell it for mutual benefit. In order to be better secured, he was removed to the Prison in the new Castle. No doubt he will have more to confess.

September 16th-18th.—Very heavy rains, which have inundated the lands in every direction in this valley, so that it is not expected that this will be a fruitful year. 20th. Fine weather. May it last a while in order to dry the nearly drowned lands.

September 21st.—The *Schulp* takes to the Island some vine cuttings, sweet potatoes, rosemary, &c., in order to be planted

there, as appearances are promising. The Superintendant there is ordered to send over a ground plan of the rickety building and how it bears by compass; also the height and breadth of the walls, that we may consider where another might best be placed. He is also told that he should send blue flag stones over by every opportunity, and how he was to do it, and that the necessary thresholds and posts for the doors for the use of the new Castle were also to be prepared as soon as possible.

As next Sunday Holy Communion will be celebrated, this (Friday) afternoon a preparation service was held.

September 22nd.—The *Oester* returns from Robben Island, laden with *flag stone* for floors.

September 23rd (Sunday).—The Holy Sacrament administered.

September 26th.—Arrival of the two large outward bound ships *De Veluwe* and *De Betuwe*, from Texel, the 9th June and the 17th May. The *Betuwe* carried 260 men, of whom 26 had died. The *Veluwe* had left with 291 souls, and lost 34, bringing more than 30 sick. The *Betuwe* had on board in good health the Hon. Jacob Lobs, Commander-Elect of Ceylon; and the *Veluwe* the Chief merchant Justinus Wijnts. Both gentlemen had their families with them. The *Veluwe* also had on board the unlucky Coenraadt van Bredenbach, unfortunately captured with *Het Wapen van Rotterdam* for the second time by the English as Captain on land (Capiteijn te lande). Now, in consequence of some offences, he had been relieved of his appointment by the masters and sent out without employment, in order to earn his living as a freeman, either at Batavia, Ceylon or the Cape; as with the ensign Jacob Croon, formerly cavalry sergeant here. He will remain here. Joyful was the news communicated to us verbally and by letters from home, viz.: that the peace concluded with England was not only being vigorously maintained on both sides, but also that the Bishop of Munster had from this new alliance, been filled with such aversion to all hostile attempts, that he at once asked for and obtained peace with the Emperor, and that he had further entered into a treaty of peace with our State, the ratification of which would soon be effected. But the best news of all was that all the seven provinces, excepting the towns, "de Grave" and Maastricht, had been evacuated by the enemy and thoroughly unfrenched. They had once more been taken possession of by us, but the dreadful destruction of numberless excellent places, villages and towns, accompanied with such inhuman, cruel tyranny and bloodshed on the part of our bitter enemies, the unchristian French scum, inflicted on the subjects of those regions, will be sufficient to create an eternal abhorrence in the Netherlands, of such a wicked nation, and make all eternally grateful to Almighty God for such a merciful deliverance.

1674.

About 80 (Dutch) miles to the S. W. of the Canaries, those of the *Betuwe* had spoken the redoubtable squadron of 45 warships under command of Admiral de Ruyter and Count van Hoorn, destined, as supposed, to the Caribbees, in order to take those places from the enemy. In addition Admiral Tromp had proceeded, with a no less formidable fleet, to attack the French coasts. We pray the great God to crown these, and all further good designs of the State with the desired results. Further nothing certain could be said of the movements of the fighting armies, or whither they intended to proceed, or of any considerable armaments on the side of the French. But the supposition of important designs was in the air. All this was not only confirmed by the letters of the Directors, dated 1st, 12th and 31st May, and those of the separate Chambers, but they seem also to give the assurance that the French tyrants will be given so much to do in Europe, that for the present they will leave India severely alone. Accordingly, as no enmity may be expected from Portugal, it was desired that the Cape Garrison should be reduced as much as practicable, and the men sent away to Ceylon or Batavia, even if the building of the new Castle were to proceed more slowly in consequence, and in order to fill up the gaps caused by Dutch servants, a vessel was to proceed to Madagascar for slaves; thus, according to what is mentioned by Commander Hugo (of Mauritius) the want of labourers would be met so abundantly that very likely there will be a sufficient surplus to send to Batavia and the West Coast (of Sumatra). The Directors were astonished at the large quantity of lime, brick, &c., requisitioned for the completion of the Castle. They however promised to provide us with as much as was practicable.

September 27th.—Early in the morning a small vessel was sighted on shore on the other side of the bay. By tacking against the heavy S.E. during the night she had evidently approached the land too near. Two Commissioners were at once sent thither on horseback to make inquiry, as it is supposed that she must be the *Posthoortje*. The boat was also sent to her with a number of sailors, in order, if possible, to save the vessel and her crew. It is a deplorable case that some seamen when approaching land, are not more careful, and so lightly hazard a valuable vessel of the Company, with her cargo.

During the afternoon an express arrives, confirming our supposition, and reporting that when they struck during the night, not thinking they were so near the shore, they had so many sick and impotent on board that they could not take in sail or drop anchor, as the skipper and most of the crew were in bed and everything on board was in confusion. She had however struck on a good sandy bottom, and obtained no leak whatever, so that with a large number of men and suitable weather, she might be

wound off again. She had left Zealand on the 12th May with 22 men, of whom 2 had died. Besides her cargo of stores, she had imperishable articles on board, such as klinkers, iron, &c, so that we trust that this accident will cause no loss to the Company. 28th. S.E. continuing on the other side of the bay. The *Posthoorn* still fast on the sand, but a Commissioner returning late last night reported that she could be refloated with almost no damage. They were busy discharging and thus lightening her.

The Hon: Jacob Lobs who will await here the arrival of the *Romerswade* or *Het Huys te Bergen*, both destined for Ceylon, had to day his furniture removed to the lodgings provided for him on shore. The sick of the *Veluwe* and *Betuwe* were also landed and conveyed to the hospital in this pleasant weather. 29th. The Ensign returns from the *Posthoorn* and reports that she had been successfully refloated, and had received no injury. Most of her cargo had been transferred to the *Oester*, and sufficient sailors had been placed on her board in lieu of the sick. This is pleasant news. God protect the Company from more loss.

The wagon arrives from Hottentoots Holland with a cask of salted beef and mutton, the carcasses of cattle and sheep that had been killed in consequence of their leanness and decaying strength. It will be distributed here as food for the slaves.

September 30th.—Terrific S. Easter so that the streets were unusable and the houses shook. Nevertheless our religious services were properly conducted.

October 4th.—The boisterous weather having calmed down, all the vessels sent their boats on shore early in the morning for water and refreshments, and the merchant Weynts having become somewhat indisposed during the voyage, went to the country with his whole family in order, during his stay here, to take up his quarters in apartments hired from a certain burgher, and amuse himself somewhat outside.

October 8th.—Sixty soldiers landed from the ships to assist in digging the foundations for the second waterpoint, or the fifth and last of the number.

October 9th.—Sieur Albert van Breugel attends the meeting of the Church Council as Commissioner and reports as follows:—That by going over the lists of outstanding capital among the burghers, he had found that some considerable sums had been secured by house property only, which, if destroyed by fire, would entail loss, as the ground alone would not in value cover the bond. He wished therefore to suggest that for the better security of the poor fund such bonds should henceforth be refused, and that instead, only those on lands, vineyards, &c., should be accepted, which are not liable to fire risks; and further that all bonds on house property alone, should be further secured by land, &c., whenever possible;

1674.

that no loss may be suffered. There were also considerable sums loaned to persons who were unable to pay the interest, much less the capital, so that their liabilities were becoming heavier every day; and he therefore wished to know what to do in such cases, that the poor may be safeguarded, and the debtors themselves not thrown for maintenance on the Diaconate. Also whether the granting of loans should be continued or suspended for the present, but at the same time he suggested that assistance should be rendered to some needy persons out of the sum bequeathed to the poor of the Cape by the late Commander Wagenaer (zaliger).

These points having been discussed (in the Church Council), it was decided that as the Diaconate is not sufficiently secured by the existing bonds, other immovable property should be added to the latter when there is any, provided however that it can be done without prejudice to its (the Church Council's) rights and actions; and that all renewals should be so arranged that even the defaulting debtors might be summoned, or threatened that notice of recall of the capital will be given, if they did not attend better to their business, or pay their interest; and finally that no capital should any longer be put out except on sufficient immovable property, and that at present needy persons are to be assisted with money left by the late Mr. Wagenaer, according to their circumstances, whilst it is left to the zeal of the deacons to be vigilant in this. and report at the next meeting.

Further the Rev. "Dominus" Rudolphus Meerlant submitted to the brethren how lately one of the burghers intended to have his infant baptized, but that neither the parents nor sponsors were members of the Reformed Religion, and that he had refused to do this unless the parents produced at least one sponsor who professed the restored (herstelde) religion. That the following Sunday the father appeared in church with a "Reformed" sponsor, so that with the approbation of the brethren the child had been baptized; but as such cases are becoming daily more frequent, he wished the Church Council to consider the matter and every member to submit his own opinion personally at the next meeting, that the whole, being summarized and confirmed with the approval of the Governor and Council, may serve as a permanent Rule for the church here. This the members promised to do.

The Commissioner further reported that he had, in the name of the Governor and Council submitted to the Church Council, that since the establishment of this Residency it has been held in observance that the parentless children, as their inheritances and other property which had come to them had been drawn into and administered with its funds by the Diaconate, had been supported and educated by the alms received from time to time, and that the incomes from the wards' possessions, however small or large they might have been, had been lumped together; that however such an education seemed to create an

odious name for children of good families when they arrived at years of discretion, and therefore a little while ago, a board of Orphan Masters had been established by his Honour, and that accordingly he, the Commissioner, had the honour to propose to the Rev. Church Council whether the latter would not permit the separation of the aforesaid properties of the orphans from the poor moneys, and that, according to the usage in the Fatherland, they be entrusted to the Orphan chamber. That the Church Council unanimously agreed to this, and further the Deacons were requested, in the presence of the Commissioners, to make up the accounts of the properties of the orphans as above mentioned, and lay them on the table at the next meeting, in order afterwards to obtain the Governor's decision on the subject.

October 13th.—The Superintendent writes from Hottentoots Holland that the woodwork for a new granary had already been cut and carried out of the forest, and that the men were busy cutting reeds for the thatch, and that as ordered, he had sent hither 17 pack oxen, 8 cows and 50 sheep. The Governor expresses his satisfaction with what had been done, and adds that so soon as the present vessels had been despatched, he intended to make a journey thither, and that as the hay season commences at the end of this month he will send the required number of men for the work with the necessary tools.

October 15th.—More shells urgently required from Robben Island, whither one of the boats takes a certain lazy mason, by nature a thorough vagabond, who had already been censured twice for absenting himself from the fort during the night. He will have to serve his time on the Island.

The resumption of possession of Saldanha Bay will have to remain in abeyance for a while, and the sending away of the present garrison to Ceylon and Batavia postponed for a further occasion.

At False Bay some burghers have contracted to supply the Company with lime at three light guilders (4s. per tun), and to-day some Hottentoots were sent thither with pack oxen to convey a portion to the Cape, as otherwise the masonwork will have to stand still. The price is reasonable and the lime of sufficiently good quality, but it does not seem as if there is sufficient; besides the contractors do not appear particularly inclined to burn a large quantity, pretending that they cannot come out with the price, so that the *Stermeer* should soon make her appearance.

October 16th.—The half leaguer of arrack, promised by the Governor when the establishment of peace between England and our State was celebrated, and the burghers were being exercised in arms, was presented to them to-day with a slaughtered ox, and some biscuits, &c. All the burghers were present and kept up their festivities until late in the night, having had most lovely weather for the purpose.

1674.

October 18th.—The departure of the two Fatherland ships having been fixed for Saturday next, the Hon. Justinus Weynts commenced to ship his luggage. As many goods intended for the Cape could not be found in these vessels, we were compelled to leave them where they were. And regarding the reduction of the garrison, to ship in them for Batavia various new arms and other goods, which we can safely spare here and will be welcome in India. Also f1000 in cash, brought here in two chests by the *Couverve*, as our treasury has, by the sale of strong drinks, been so much stiffened, that for the present we shall not be in want.

October 19th.—The soldiers of the ships, who had thus long-worked at the fortifications were to-day sent back to their respective vessels. During the space of 11 days they have advanced considerably the foundations of the 5th bastion. 22nd. With one of these departing ships (the *Betuwe*) our Fiscal, *Magister* Pieter de Neijn, leaves for Batavia. The ex-Captain Coenraedt van Bredenbagh also leaves with his family. He has been permitted by the Directors to settle as a freeman either at Ceylon or Batavia. The vessels leave during the afternoon, about 5 o'clock.

October 23rd.—Arrival of the little vessel, *De Vliegende Zwaan*, which had left Batavia five days after the return fleet with supplies for the Cape. Had a most distressful voyage, and lost ten men by death.

From letters brought by her from Commander Hugo at Mauritius, it appeared that matters there were in a good condition, the unusual fertility of that island and the opportunities thus afforded, gave more and more satisfaction and brightened the hope of important profits for the Company, especially should the Directors decide to increase the number of their servants, as such a large establishment with its manifold necessary works cannot be worked by the small number of Dutch at present there. They have accordingly asked for assistance from this, as well as iron, salt, gallnuts, &c. The only thing that made them heavy-hearted was the staying away so long of succour from the Cape or Batavia, and that they had nearly reached the end of their rice and strong liquor. For that reason they had taken three lasts of rice out of the *Zwaantje* as well as a case of aniseed arrack, judging that for want of better stuff the latter would not be unserviceable for the preservation of their health. Wonderfully much is written of the cultivation of tobacco, which in quality need not give way to that of Virginia. A small case of 74 lbs., reared by the freemen there, was sent over as a sample, and annually thousands of pounds weight might be obtained there, if there were only men sufficient to grow it. They had therefore (for the Company) only 2 lbs. in stock. "Amber de noir" could be had in abundance. The tame and large cattle had, since Hugo's presence, considerably multiplied both by increase and preservation. But great damage had been

caused among the wild cattle by a hurricane on the 9th February last, which had destroyed mostly all the dwellings with the exception of that of the Commander, and done a great deal of other damage; but if 300 or 400 of such beasts could be secured, which it is maintained can be done (ende bijaldien tot een getal van drij à 400 diergelijke beesten te priveeren, conde vaceeren), the revenue would rise to four or five thousand guilders; but the writer says that he will at present offer no explanation, as it would be too premature, with which we readily agree.

Sugar cane thrives well there, and also paddy, so that they can easily have two crops of rice annually. Oats and buckwheat thrive well there, but the Turkish beans surpass in richness and delicacy all fruits of its kind, so that, if properly cultivated, hundreds of lasts may annually be obtained. The tan-mill, capable of preparing shammy and other leather, is said to have also been tried and found to answer, so that thousands of skins may be annually prepared if only material be not wanting. The possibility of the distillation of strong drink would soon be known. In short the letter contains a sketch of many things which cannot be carried out without a large number of persons. Whether the Company will feel inclined that way we leave on one side.

Jan Westphale, formerly Corporal on that Island, and loved and esteemed by the Commander for his activity, and made a member of the Council, has been degraded from his rank and pay, and sent hither in the *Swaantje*, in order to be tried here. The charges against him are fully detailed at the end of the Mauritius letter, the principal of which are briefly that he had ventured on the arrival of the first ship to ask for his discharge home, and to submit to their Honours quite a different report regarding the Island to that which had ever been made, a draft of which had been discovered, and though his Honour (Hugo) knew that it did not emanate from his Westphalian quiver, but that he strutted with another's feathers, he (Hugo) had nevertheless, setting aside other necessary matters, taken the trouble to refute it from point to point, *e.g.*, that he was very much hated by the people because of his severity, that he gave a very spiteful answer to a certain person who came to ask him something at his residence at the North Western Harbour, and not satisfied with that, thrashed him with a cane, saying that the Commander yonder did what pleased him, and he there. That contrary to orders he had supplied the fattest cattle of a particular place to the Danish ship *Oldenburg*; that he had pointed out to the Danish officers the best places of the land, and had had cut down from 30 to 40 palm trees without one's knowing why; that he had had land tortoises caught just as he pleased, which had been forbidden on pain of corporal punishment, and finally

1474.

that he had considerably defrauded and robbed the Company in the matter of "Amber de Grijs." But the documents to verify all these statements are very scanty and defective. The Danish ship *Oldenburg* had called there on the 15th July last, having left Bantam in February previously for Denmark, *via* the Cape; but in Lat. 34° she had encountered such severe weather, and was injured so much that the officers had decided to make for Mauritius, where they arrived in a very bad state. At the urgent request of the officers, in order to enable them to leave, she was provided from the *Swaantje* with three lasts of rice, and left for this the following August.

October 25th.—The Governor having hitherto been prevented by business and other matters from doing so, leaves towards evening for Hottentoots Holland, accompanied by Commander Jacob Lobs and a considerable number of the Chief burghers, all on horseback. He appoints the Secunde, Sieur Albert van Breugel, to act during his absence, and leaves him written instructions for the purpose. He intends to pass the night at the Cavalry Guard house (ruijter wacht) an hour distant from the Fort.

October 27th.—Hard at work building up the S.E. point of the Fort on the land side, in order to have it finished when the Governor returns.

November 1st.—The Governor and Company return from Hottentoots Holland, being well satisfied with all matters connected with the garrison and the cultivation of the soil there. He found the lands more fruitful and pleasant than those here. The corn sown promises a rich harvest. A certain amateur, who had also been there, brought with him hither some aloe plants growing abundantly there, about a day's journey further inland, in the neighbourhood of the Soesquaas boundaries, where they grow to a much larger size. For the present the offshoots were planted in the Company's Garden, to see whether they will thrive there.

November 2nd.—To-day the third point of the new Castle was finished; the second S.E. bastion, built of stone was brought up to its projected height. At the same time the building of the Governor's dwelling house, or the little church, was vigorously proceeded with.

November 3rd.—Heavy showers, which are welcome on the lands. In various places the corn is already getting into the ear. Sods are being collected to make for the present a breastwork for the second land bastion which has been completed. 5th. Some soldiers and sailors taken from the Fortification works and sent to the Forest to drag from it beams and other timber lying ready for the purpose. Lime much needed, and therefore we are impatiently looking for the *Stermeer*.

November 6th.—Letter from Robben Island, stating that the rabbits were completely destroying the garden and that therefore a good greyhound is required.

November 8th.—The master butcher takes a number of lean cattle to Hottentoots Holland, to be fattened there, as the multitude of cattle kept by private persons at the Fort has made the pastures so poor that the cattle cannot get enough to eat.

November 9th.—According to the promise of the Governor, lately made to the garrison, the half of the latter were to-day entertained to a dinner, consisting of a good piece of beef with various vegetables, and 4 or 5 courses, with as much good brewed delicious Cape beer as each desired to drink. Moreover each man received a glass of arrack (*mutsje*). Thus the men enjoyed themselves till the evening. The other half will be entertained similarly to-morrow. 10th. The remaining half was entertained in a similar manner, which however had drier weather than yesterday's party. The feast was certainly somewhat of an expense to the Company, but it caused great satisfaction to the common people and encouraged them to further exertion.

November 11th.—Letter received from Hottentoots Holland stating that the cattle had arrived there the day before yesterday, with the exception of four calves which had died on the way. Divine service conducted this day *as usual*. 12th. The Governor writes to the Superintendent there that he must at once send back the transport wagon, which is *en passant* to take in a load of hay at *Eerste Rivier*, our intention being to send her back with one or two hundred lbs. of rice, to see whether the idle Hottentoots, who are now squatted in numbers about the Fort, and whom we intend to dislodge, cannot be tempted thither, and thus induced to work there.

November 13th.—Arrival of the ration ship *Middelburg* this moonlight night, leaky and in a very bad condition altogether; very many of her men having died and many others sick and exhausted from pumping and scarcity of provisions and water. Despairing of being able to reach the Cape, in consequence of adverse winds, she had called at "Sinte Joanna," one of the Majot Islands on the 9th June, when she met the English ships *The Falcon* and *Maria* which informed her of the peace that had been concluded, without showing the least signs of hostility, as it might have been feared that, after having surmounted the anxieties of the ocean, they might still be sacrificed by malicious fate to hypocritical friends. Having remained there 4 months and abundantly refreshed herself, the bad monsoon being ended, and the distressed vessel having been, as far as possible, repaired, she left on the 3rd October and finally had a prosperous voyage to the Cape. She had lost 64 men by death. (See for further particulars, the journal of this vessel.)

November 14th.—It is worthy of notice that during the last fortnight, we have had continually hard weather from the West, with heavy rains, which is certainly unusual at this season, though one year does not give the law to the other.

1674.

This evening the master gardener, not a little shocked, reported that by accident he had visited the slave house to inspect it, when he found that 15 of the Company's slaves and Batavia convicts were missing, who, he maintained, had absconded. This supposition was confirmed by the report of the guardian of the slaves in the new Castle, who reported that five of his gang were also missing. Hardly had this rumour become known to some private person, when it was found, on investigation, that seven more slaves belonging to servants of the Company, and to burghers, were also missing, so that it was evident that there had been a general conspiracy among these 27 rogues, hence we determined to follow them at once. An ensign was quickly mounted and sent inland with as many horsemen as he could collect at the Fort, whilst all the burghers residing in the country were ordered, on pain of a fine of Rds. 25, and without the least delay, to come together at the "Ruyter Wacht," and according to the orders of the said ensign, whether together or divided, to block the thoroughfares to the interior, follow the fugitives on their heels, and endeavour to capture them. 15th. One of the fellow conspirators of the fugitive Indians from the new Fort, who appears not to have been able to follow the others, was early this morning discovered at one of the lime kilns, whilst a second, belonging to one of the burghers, was recaptured below Table Mountain, who on examination, confessed that the 27 had induced each other, and agreed together to run away to Mosambique, but that they (the two) having very soon regretted it, had left the troop. This we shall have to believe until further evidence is obtained. In the mean time the two are imprisoned.

The wet winter weather, which has continued so long, seems to have taken another turn, as to-day we had clear and warm sunshine.

This afternoon two more of the fugitives were sent in by the ensign, in charge of a horseman, with the information that a little before daylight they had unexpectedly found themselves in the midst of the fugitives, who becoming aware of their presence, and favoured by the darkness, succeeded in escaping, so that only the two, now sent in, had been captured. A Javanese convict, who defended himself against the ensign, and had previously with his knife ripped open the stomach of a Hottentoo, so that the latter entrails fell on the ground, as he thought that the Hottentoo intended to seize him, was shot dead. They are said to be provided with muskets and other arms for their defence. Where this wretched lot got them, must in time be investigated. In the meanwhile the ensign was provided with 12 more men and some pork and bread, and ordered in every way to watch the fugitives. 16th. The ensign sends in seven more of the fugitives in charge of some burghers on horseback, and as

he wished to be informed from here how he was further to act in searching for the rest, he was told that he was to continue the search as long as practicable, for that purpose retaining all his men with him, and that to-morrow some biscuit will be sent him on a pack ox for his people.

November 17th.—Provisions, &c., sent to the Island, viz.: $1\frac{1}{2}$ lasts of rice, 1 cask meat, 1 do. fish, $\frac{1}{2}$ aum arrack, some olive oil and dirty train oil, 12 rundles and $\frac{1}{4}$ piece of Guinea linen for the windows; also a good hunting dog to catch the rabbits which are doing so much damage to the garden. The Superintendent is also in time to provide himself with hay, to have something to fall back upon during the coming dry season, as the pasturage is sometimes very poor there. Two men and two pack oxen with biscuits despatched to the ensign, with orders to the latter that he was to search all the hiding places in the neighbourhood, with his men and the Hottentoots with him, and to send a party of Africans with some Dutchmen towards Saldanha Bay, provided with sufficient victuals, in order to intercept the fugitives in that direction. For that purpose, and in order to encourage the Hottentoots the more, 8 lbs. of tobacco are also sent to him, to be distributed among them, with authority that all, who may show fight and do not voluntarily surrender, may be freely shot down. It will however be more pleasant to us if they can be captured alive. 18th. Sunday. Last night one of the fugitive slaves, belonging to a private person, returned of his own accord, and this morning, another, loitering between the “Wijnberg” and “Coornschuur” among various houses of the burghers, was caught by the “Schnur” people and brought in. He stated that he had wandered from the rest. It was accordingly decided to let our people know of this, and to let the aforesaid slaves, in charge of a Corporal and three soldiers, go out with the latter, in order to point out where they had parted from their comrades, with further orders to the Ensign, as he is at present sufficiently provided with Dutchmen and Hottentoots, to let the freemen, whom he still has with him, go home and allow the aforesaid slaves and their masters also to return.

Arrival after the afternoon service of the hooker *De Bode* of Delft. Left Holland on the 22nd June with 22 men. The message brought by this “Messenger” was that no changes had occurred at home; and that she had some cargo on board for the Cape. 19th. The cargo landed, consisting of stockings, hats, buttons, and such things.

November 20th.—As no more of the fugitives have been found, and the absence of our men in the country has very much retarded the necessary works, we ordered our Ensign, that in case he had captured no more fugitives, to return, unless for reasons he might decide otherwise, when more provisions will be sent to him.

1874

21st. The Ensign returns bringing two more fugitives, who had been captured behind the Tigerberg. Before he left, he had persuaded a large number of Sonqua Hottentoots, with big promises, to search the country in every direction, and who had undertaken to do so faithfully, so that it is believed that more will be caught, as these Hottentoots, in consequence of the desperate act of the Javanese convict, who had been shot, committed against one of their nation, are so bitter against the slaves that they would not entertain the request of the Ensign unless he promised them that they might be permitted to resent the injustice done them in similar coin. This the Ensign agreed to, subject to our ratification, as we would rather see that the fugitives were hacked to pieces, than be left alive to make the roads unsafe and create other street offences, besides affording them an opportunity of getting more recruits. The Sonquas had also promised that they would show certain proofs (*lidtteijkenen*) that they had killed those whom they had been unable to capture alive.

November 23rd.—The Court of Justice meets and sentences the captured fugitives in various ways, in proportion to the magnitude of their crimes. Some were merely thoroughly scourged, of others the ears were cut off, and others again were branded on both cheeks, excepting a certain Javanese convict, who had most stubbornly resisted our men and endeavoured to hurt them in every possible manner. Having been reprieved from death, he had to undergo all the above mentioned punishments, after which both his thumbs were to be chopped off, and his tongue cut out. The sentences were at once carried out, after which all the condemned were heavily chained in pairs, so that any attempt to run away again may safely be abandoned. To date we have recovered 15, viz.: 10 of the Company and 5 of the burghers. Eleven are still missing, viz.: 11 of the Company and 1 of a freeman.

A considerable number of our wagons was this morning, very early, sent to the Eerste River (a valley about four hours' distant from Hottentoots Holland, on this side), in order to take away the hay lying ready there, which is a considerable help to the cattle in the dry season.

November 24th.—At the Saltpans, fully $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours' distance from this, the outside guards caught, and brought to the Fort another fugitive slave of the Company, who had been found grazing on the veld, like the cattle, a sign of great hunger. Being the most stupid of the lot, he could not give the least information regarding the rest of his accomplices. He could only by signs, make us understand that during the first night they had been pursued by our people and scattered, every one intent on escape.

November 28th.—The boats (*Oester* and *Schulp*) return from Robben Island, bringing with them a lot of rabbits which had been caught in the garden. Supplies for the Island asked for.

The lessees of the tap licences, which will expire next month, have renewed them on the same terms. At the instance of some burghers, who are annually making a good quantity of wine of their own, a licence was granted to a certain person to sell the same by retail at an annual lease of f600, with the right of also selling Cape malt beer, on condition that when he has sold all his stock, he shall buy from the Company at Rds. 20 the half-aum, a fairly high price indeed, but still profitable to the contractor.

November 30th.—Hard at work digging the foundations of the second sea point, but as the soil is mostly sand, the work does not proceed as rapidly as at the other places.

December 3rd.—Fifty-four sheep sent to Robben Island to breed there. 4th The S. Easter so vehement, that the sand was blown into the workmen's eyes, preventing them from doing their work.

December 6th.—In reply to the Superintendent's letters the Governor writes to Robben Island, that his request that the rations may be increased, cannot be entertained as it is something new and contrary to regulations; that no wagons or oxen can be spared here, and that he must get on with what he has, and that the milking of the sheep should henceforth be discontinued, as the tender lambs are thus deprived of their nourishment, and not only stunted in their growth but also helped to their deaths. That this was the reason of the great mortality for a long while now among the troop there. He also receives a signal flag for use when the return ships are in sight, according to annexed memorandum.

With the wagons sent to the "Eerste Rivier" to fetch hay, the Corporal at Hottentoots Holland was told that in case Captain Claas could be induced to move with his kraals, he should pay us a visit, as it would not be distasteful to us; and should he decline, then merely to ask him how far he intends going, that, should it be needed, he may be ordered to come to us. As regards the Company the obligingness of this African and his people is very convenient, having hitherto protected the garrison in Hottentoots Holland from the incursions of Gounema and other Hottentoot marauders, as otherwise that place, in consequence of the multitude of our cattle being depastured there, would require a much stronger garrison.

December 7th.—Court of Justice in Session. Trial of a certain butler, named Cornelis Pietersen, who has pretty well, as already mentioned, defrauded the Company during his administration.

December 8th.—The hookers *De Bode* and *Croonvogel* to take turns in cruising to meet the return ships, as it is often too

1674.

difficult for one vessel alone. The *Zwaantje* despatched to False Bay to take on board some lime burnt there by the freemen. 11th. Arrival of 12 wagons, laden with hay, from "Eerste Rivier." The hookers leave on their cruize, the one to False Bay, the other for the neighbourhood of Cape Agulhas, according to instructions given them, which latter also contain information of the Company's continuous welfare here.

Before the end of this year the final annual supplies on account, will be distributed and therefore, at eleven o'clock the placcaat enacted against the sale (*verquanselen*) of their goods received on account, was renewed and affixed everywhere.

December 12th.—The Governor orders the superintendent at Hottentoots Holland not to neglect to send a load of hay hither whenever he sends a wagon for supplies. The building of a dwelling house of stone should no longer be delayed, but, without neglecting other work, be also taken in hand. The obliging promise of Captain Claas to come down again as soon as he may be recalled, has been very well received here, also that the three mowers of Hendrik Albertsen, left there, were still continuing in the work. The distribution of clothing on pay (save the good months) is being much hurried, that the whole may be finished about the 15th next, as the year is hurrying to its close.

December 13th.—The superintendent on the Island ordered to send some blue flagstones for thresholds without delay, that the works here may not be retarded.

The Church Council, as usual, having proceeded to the election of new elders and deacons in the place of those retiring, yesterday submitted to our Political Commissioner a double number of candidates from which the Governor and Council were to make their selection. The matter having been considered in Council, the Governor draws attention to the little reflection which the meeting has shewn regarding the nomination of persons, against whom, personally, nothing can be said, but who as regards their functions (business) are at least rejectable. It was, therefore, unanimously understood to order the Kerkeraad to make a second nomination, and in order the better to impress on that body our objections, to send them through the Commissioner, at their first meeting. An extract from the resolution adopted to-day on this subject, to be registered in the Church books for guidance and reference. However, as regards the deacons, it was decided to proceed with that part of the nomination. It was also enacted that the renewal of the law regarding the election of burgher Councillors shall take place annually on the first day of January, and that the retiring ones shall always have the refusal of the lieutenantcy among the burghers, and further, that the Board of Orphan Masters, already

created last year, shall be strengthened with a servant of the Company, so that it will consist of 5 members, besides a burgher to be appointed as Secretary.

December 14th.—Hard at work, *building the new little church*, and continuing the fortification works, as the weather is very favourable.

December 16th.—After the second sermon the usual parade was held within the Castle.

December 17th.—Our Political Commissioner having again attended the Meeting of the Church Council, reported that the latter had in a second nomination selected another number of persons as elders. Decided to express to the Church Council the Government's satisfaction, and to leave the final election to them (Church Council).

December 18th-19th.—Fine warm weather, favourable vegetation, hastening the ripening of the crops everywhere. 20th. The master butcher takes 170 head of cattle to Hottentoots Holland to be fattened there.

December 21st.—The Church Council having been convened this day for the election of elders, the following letter was sent to that body:—"It pleased our Council to read that the considerations and reasons for the same, submitted to you by us, not only induced you to make a second nomination of a double number of persons, but that after due reflection you at once did so. We entirely agree with what you have done, leaving the final selection entirely in your hands, so that in due course, the elders selected by you may be introduced (to the congregation) at the proper place, with the person of Jan Valckenryk, elected by us to the office of deacon." (Signed) Isbrand Goske. In the Fort the Good Hope, the 21st December, 1674.

The Council also elects as burgher Councillor the burgher Ensign, Herman Ernst Gresnich *vice* Sieur Elbert Direksz: Diemer. A certain Sergeant made Ensign in Gresnich's place.

December 25th.—The festival of the Incarnation of our Saviour Jesus Christ we have celebrated to-day, and Holy Communion was administered to the members of the Reformed (Herstelde) religion.

December 26th.—*Hard at work, building the little church, as it is the intention to hold a service in it on the first day of the coming year. A second warehouse* is also being built within the Castle. Fine weather the last few days.

December 28th.—In order to clear the prisons, the court of

1674. — justice sat during the forenoon. Amongst others sentence was passed on the butler, who was condemned to serve for 20 years as a convict on Robben Island, and declared unfit to serve the Company any longer. The salesman and provisional junior merchant, Joan Wittebol, who had also a deficit in his administration in 1673, was degraded from office, rank and pay and further declared unworthy to serve the Company any longer at the pen. A certain burgher woman, a notorious backbiter, was, for having badly slandered another honest woman, sentenced to stand exposed for an hour with a paper on her breast, on which the word "backbiter" (achterklapster) was written, and banished in her own house for 6 months, on pain of heavier punishment. This sentence was immediately carried out after the adjournment of the Court.

December 31st.—Nothing particular happened. The usual works are being continued. Thus the year took its departure, and the Almighty is thanked for His mercies vouchsafed unto us so long.

JOURNAL 1675.

MISSING.

JOURNAL 1676.

GOVERNOR JOAN BAX, NAMED HERENTALS.

January 1st (Wednesday).—Fine weather after yesterday's south-easter. We celebrated this first day of the year with the hearing of the Holy Word of God, and we thanked His Divine Majesty heartily for His undeserved mercies shown unto us during the past year; and we prayed Him for their continuance, and that the Company's affairs might be blessed with prosperity.

To our great joy an "express" unexpectedly arrived from Hottentoos Holland with a letter to the Governor from the Hon. Joan Bax of Herentals, Governor Designate of this Colony, who had left the Bay of Gale on the 7th November last in the yacht *De Voorhout*. In consequence, however, of the illness of himself and his beloved (wife), he had been obliged to make for the nearest harbour and run into False Bay, where he safely arrived yesterday afternoon. Two deputies from the Council were at

once despatched thither with a sergeant and a few soldiers, with such refreshments as we were at such short notice able to collect, and a small wagon and horses to serve His Honour as a conveyance to this. His letter to the Governor (Goske) is as follows:—"These lines will merely serve to inform you of our safe arrival. Afraid of being kept back from Table Bay for some time (by the S. Easters), and because of our indisposition, we decided to land here, and as the mate, Otto van Arckel, is well experienced in these bays, we had no hesitation to enter them. Our intention is to rest this night at "De Vijfhoek," whence this will be brought to you by post. There we shall await your orders and commands, and, if possible, a small wagon for our conveyance, especially for my weak wife, with one or two horses. And as the old year has passed, and this will very likely reach you at the beginning of the new year, we wish you all happiness and prosperity, and as many blessings as you may yourself desire from Heaven. Having now with this kindly saluted you, we shall end, and commend you to God.

Your obedient and very willing servant,

(Signed) JOHAN BAX, named HERENTALS.

In the yacht *De Voorhout*, which had left the Bay of Gale on the 7th November last, and is now anchored in the Bay of Hottentoots Holland, this 31st day of December, 1675.

The newly-appointed burgher Councillor, Elbert Diemer, sworn in, and the retiring burgher Councillor, Wouter Mostert, made Lieutenant of the Burgher Corps.

January 2nd.—The Messenger of Justice sent out to-day to warn the burghers everywhere, that everyone, completely armed, was to appear at the Fort to-morrow morning, as it is supposed that by that time the Hon. J. Bax will be there, or at least, not far from it. Fine weather, but a heavy S. Easter towards evening.

January 3rd.—All the burghers appear at the Fort. In the place of Lieutenant Diemer, the retiring burgher Councillor, Wouter Mostert, was appointed, and as Ensign the Sergeant, Jan Valckenryk *vice* the newly appointed burgher Councillor, Harman Ernst Gresnich. Willem van Diedem was made Sergeant *vice* the Ensign, Jan Valckenryk. The burghers collectively promised to acknowledge and obey all these officers in their various military capacities and to be loyal to them in every other way.

The deputation sent to Hottentoots Holland to receive Mr. Bax sent the following letter to the Governor (Goske):—

"When we reached this place last night about 9 o'clock, we endeavoured, according to your instructions, to pay our compliments to the Hon. Bax, who had (having been prevented by the heavy wind) only a few hours before our arrival, with his wife and

1676.

little son, appeared here, very much debilitated by the fatigues of the voyage, and violent fevers. But by inhaling the land air and partaking of garden fruits found here and also brought with us, they had so far recovered, that His Honour had, as proposed by you, resolved to leave this place this afternoon, with the intention of passing the night at "De Kuilen," and then, to-morrow morning early (with God) continue his journey to the Cape. We have therefore sent you this letter in advance for your information; and will send you another as soon as we arrive at the resting place mentioned. . . . Mr. Bax wishes to express to you his obligation for all the attentions paid him by you, not only as regards the little wagon, but also the refreshments. This he will repeat verbally to you on his arrival." . . . (Signed) H. CRUDOP and J. CRUSE. In Hottentoots Holland, the 2nd January, 1676.

In the meanwhile news was received that Mr. Bax was not far from here, and was approaching rapidly, so that our soldiers at once fell in under arms, and properly drawn up with the burghers, the Governor personally and on horseback, and accompanied by some of the Councillors, rode out a distance to meet Mr. Bax, and welcome him, whilst the thunder of the cannons, and the salvos of the soldiers and burghers in the new Fort, made themselves also heard. His Honour was but indifferently well, and his wife by no means so. During the afternoon the angry S. Easter blew as usual.

January 4th.—A certain burgher's servant, having yesterday in a beastly way overloaded his stomach with strong drink, was yesterday morning found dead in a sheepshed. He had blue marks all over his head and body, truly a deplorable thing that a human being ends his life in such an accursed manner.

January 10th.—The freemen's boat *De Bruyt* arrives from Saldanha Bay with sea-fowl eggs, salted and dried fish.

January 12th (Sunday).—The yacht *Voorhout* arrives from False Bay; and during the evening the ship, *Prins Willem Hendrik de Derde*, from Zealand. Had 287 men on board and left Vlissingen on the 13th April last. Had lost 16 men by death, and brought 8 sick. She reports that the junior Harbour Master of the Company in Zealand had informed the officers, at Plymouth, whither he had been purposely sent to superintend the repairs of the vessel, that the ship *Het Hoff van Breda* had been violently attacked near the Canary Islands by four Turks, and after the loss of fully one hundred men, been obliged to surrender, and that she was taken to Algiers. 13th. Arrival of the new ship, *Het Huys te Spyc* of Amsterdam. Had left the Texel on the 2nd August last with 183 men, of whom 10 had died. She brought 14 sick. She brought some papers containing news of the

meeting between the deputies of the English and those of the Dutch Company, showing that all disputes between them had been amicably arranged.

January 14th.—Great drought on the Island, so that the Superintendent advised that a portion of the sheep should be removed, there being too many animals there, including the oxen used for the transport of shells, &c. All at Hottentoots Holland busy harvesting. The Hottentoo Captain Claas would in one or two days be there with all his kraals, and afterwarde pay us a visit.

January 15th.—Governor is pleased that there is still a quantity of hay on the Island in this unusually dry season, where almost nowhere any grass is seen on the veld. The Superintendent is therefore advised not to neglect collecting hay at the proper time of the year. Governor also pleased that he had found better stone for the kraal than what had been pointed out to him, and sends him a mason to show him where and how the kraal is to be built. He is also to send a number of sheep to the Cape, as there is not enough food for them on the Island, but they are only to be shipped when the wind is favourable for the passage to this.

January 16th.—Supplies landed from the *Prins Willem* mostly for the benefit of the return ships expected, as they are generally not properly provided at Batavia according to their wants.

January 18th.—Last year a placcaat was promulgated in consequence of the dissatisfaction of the Governor and Council in connection with the making of sugar beer and the selling of tobacco, garden and other produce, &c., by servants of the Company and freemen, who sell them according to their own fancy to the soldiers of the garrison at excessive prices, obtaining the sugar and tobacco from parties arriving here from India, and thus defrauding the Company of its legal profits. Placcaat is as follows:—"Governor Goske and Council make known that a large number of avaricious and selfish people here have not hesitated, in direct opposition to the Placcaten of 1665 and 1667, to assume unto themselves the right to ignore the prices fixed by us, but also on their own authority make sugar beer and sell it at their own prices, yea! even going so far as to undermine the lawful revenues of the Company, especially by buying in, bartering, and smuggling on shore quantities of sugar and other wares, brought hither by the out and homeward bound ships. Nor did they hesitate to buy from the officers and others on board ship quantities of cordage, provisions, &c, thus opening the way to private trading (particulariteit); and therefore having considered all these things and their pernicious results, we have decided strictly to forbid these unlawful practices, and to order that no one of whatever rank he may

1676.
— be, shall be allowed to sell any produce at higher rates than those fixed by ordinance, and mentioned in a separate one, copies of which are filed at the Secretariat and with the Burgher Council. Offenders without form of process to labour for 6 months at the public works and to be fined Rds. 50. Moreover after the publication of this, no one shall be allowed to sell sugar beer, except those specially permitted by us to do so, on pain as above.

And as by the buying of tobacco and many other goods, the Company is very much defrauded of its lawful revenue, yea! even in a thievish way robbed of its own property, no one shall henceforth, directly or indirectly, buy, barter or obtain by exchange any tobacco, sugar or other goods, much less provisions or ships' material, or whatever they may be called, and bring them on shore, on pain of banishment on Robben Island for a year, with the forfeiture of all the goods thus illegally obtained, and a fine of Rds. 100, or with heavier punishment according to circumstances. These penalties also to have effect in the case of ships' officers and others who may sell such articles and rob their employers of them, under whatsoever pretext it may take place.

After this has been affixed, no other tobacco or sugar shall be sold, by wholesale or retail, except what has been bought from the Company, and only at such weight and price, as have been fixed by the ordinance mentioned. Offenders not only to forfeit the tobacco and sugar found in their houses, but also a fine of Rds. 50, with six months' hard labour on Robben Island.

The Fiscal is particularly instructed to attend to this and to do so without connivance or favour, as we deem this best in the interests of the Company, and the welfare of this place.

Done at the Fort the Good Hope, this 30th December 1675,
and published and affixed on the 18th January, 1676.
(Signed) Isbrand Goske. By order of the Hon. Governor
and Council (Signed) H. Crudop.

January 22nd.—Arrival of the flute *Aardenbergh* from Zealand to Ceylon. Had left on 15th August last with 146 men, of whom 2 had died. Brought no sick. She brought news that the French Sub-General Turenne had in an encounter with the Emperor's troops, been killed, with many other officers, and that the French army had been forced by the Imperial troops to retire, all which is very fully mentioned in the newspaper (courant) of the 20th August last, which also gives detailed accounts of the great defeats of the French, as well as of the glorious victory obtained by the Elector of Brandenburg against the Swedes, the former having routed almost the whole army of the enemy. It further mentioned that every hour the declaration of war by the King of Denmark against Sweden might be expected. God Almighty grant that from all these heavy wars, a salutary peace may be born.

January 23rd.—The *Oester* arrives from the Island with shells and blue flags for door sills. The Inspector writes that one of the draught oxen had been killed by accident, and that the others, used for dragging shells to the landing place, were so poor, that they were no longer fit for work. He also sent the meat of the dead ox, which he had salted down, and which will be very serviceable for the slaves.

January 25th.—The ship *Coevorden* leaves for India. The wagon arrives from Hottentoots Holland with 10 muids of the newly harvested wheat. Towards evening one of our neighbouring and allied Hottentoot Captains, named Claas, arrived with some of his persons of state (*staatspersonen*), in order to welcome, in their own fashion, the new Governor Jan Bax. 26th (Sunday.) Celebrated our usual Divine Services twice this day.

January 27th.—Some soldiers landed from the *Aardenburgh*, who were at once set to work at the wooden jetty, which had been built to its proper height from the ground with heavy stone. On every favourable occasion this work will be continued so as to avoid the heavy expenditure annually incurred by the Company in this respect. The *Schulp* brings 73 sheep from Robben Island, being the remainder of what had been there.

January 28th.—The Messenger of Justice ordered to affix Notices that it is purposed on behalf of the Company to sell out of hand a quantity of white and black sugar, tobacco and Surat soap, in order to prevent the shrinkage to which all these goods are subject, especially tobacco and sugar, which by lying long lose most incredibly in weight.

January 29th.—Very busy working at the new Powder Magazine, the gate, and other works at the New Fortress. 31st. Some biscuit landed from the *Prins Willem*; 9 muids of new wheat received from Hottentoots Holland, and also 80 lbs of salted meat of an ox that was about to die.

February 1st.—The soldiers of the *Huys te Spyc* and *Prins Willem*, who had been employed at the Fortification works, re-embark.

February 3rd.—Arrival of the *Zuwaardvis*. Had left Batavia on the 22nd November last. Had been sent ahead of the Return Squadron, to give us notice of their approach. Brought a letter from Batavia, mentioning that the flute *Sparendam* had, on the 29th August, been sent to Ceylon expressly so early with some necessaries, in order to take in at that Island a cargo of rice for the Cape. She would at the same time also serve to convey to this place the Hon. Joan Bax, who is to succeed Governor Isbrand

1676.

Goske as Governor at the Cape, but according to advices received from Ceylon, dated 15th and 16th October last, His Honour would leave for the Cape in the yacht *Voorhout*, which had arrived there from the Cape on the 24th July previously. He had however been ordered by us (the High Government) to proceed direct to the Cape, without calling at Mauritius. . . This hocker, *De Zwaardvis*, takes with her various necessities for the Cape, whence she is to return to us *via* Mauritius. Orders have been sent to Surat on the 31st August to ship into *Het Wapen van Middelburg* and *Pelerim* a last of good unthreshed wheat for the Cape, as seed corn, that you may again be helped into corn, which has for some time not been thriving there. We trust that this kind will grow better than that sent last time, which according to your letters of the 4th June last are supposed to have been dried in ovens or on hot plates, in the places where they have been obtained. Your petition for seed rye, annexed to your letter of the 4th June, and received here on the 9th August, came too late for this season, as the last ship had previously, on the 26th June, already left for Nangasacqui under the Hon. Johannes Camphuijs. The 58 half aums of train oil arrived safely in the *Delfsharen*. . . And as you have considered the procedures of the officers of the yacht *Alexander*, in applying the torture to 2 persons too cruel and accordingly set them at liberty, we consider that you have acted well. . . Names of the return ships. . . We also send you the accounts of the two boys, viz.: Jacobus Steenhouwer and Joost Jansz: Schoonhoven for which Governor Goske wrote on the 23rd February last, and which the bookkeeper of the *Helena* forgot to send on shore. . .” (Signed) Joan Maatsuijker, R. v. Goens, Lourens Pit, P. A. Over ’t Water, Corn. Speelman, Constantin Ranst, Pieter v. Hoorn and Sib. Abbema. In the Castle, Batavia, the 22nd November, 1675

February 4th.—Arrival of 11 return ships under Admiral the Hon: Ex-Director-General of India, Nicolaas Verburg. Governors Goske and Bax proceed on board to welcome him, and he shortly afterwards landed with his wife and daughter, and some of the principal officers of the fleet, amidst the volleys of our soldiers and the firing of the cannons. Both Governors congratulated and welcomed him. Names of the return ships. . .

February 5th.—Mr. Verburg convenes the Council this afternoon for the first time, and reads his Commission appointing him Inspector of Affairs at the Cape. Decided to introduce him to the public to-morrow. Minutes state that the Council was convened by Verburgh, strengthened by the Rear-Admiral Joost Clant and the merchants Joan Putmans and Johan Barthold Sonsius. Ex-Governor Goske agrees with the proposal that Verburgh shall be installed to-morrow, notwithstanding when he accepted his

appointment as Governor in the Fatherland, it was on the express condition that during the period of his administration no Commissioner would be appointed for this place, and that he would not be subservient to any Commissioner.

And whereas the Fiscal of the return fleet, "Magister" Pieter de Neyn, in consequence of his dissipated life, had by Resolution of the Broad Council, on the 5th December last, been provisionally suspended as a member of the Council, and as Fiscal; and whereas he is still judged unfit to fill that office respectably, it was decided to appoint in his place the merchant and ex-fiscal of the coast, viz.: Johan Bartholt Sonhius. . . ." (Signed) A. Verburg, Isbrand Goske, Joan Bax named Van Herentals, Joost Clant, Joan Putmans, J. B. Sonhius, H. Crudop, and Lambert de Groot, Secretary.

February 6th.—At ten o'clock this morning the soldiers fell in before the old Fort and the Hon: N. Verburg was publicly introduced to the people as Commissioner. All promised obedience to him, which was confirmed by the discharge of muskets and guns.

February 9th (Sunday).—Two services. 12th. Soldiers landed to cut fuel for their ships in the forests.

February 12th.—Meeting of Council. Lourens Visser of Wanvrede, in Hessenland, provisional sergeant, bachelor, and Angneta van der Graaff, of Gorcum, spinster, on the flute *Aardenburgh*, in which they had left the Fatherland, request [permission to be married. Granted.

Several freemen appeared stating that they had been forbidden by Placcaat to make sugar beer and sell it, and that only two principal burghers had received the sole right to do so, and that they saw no way open to them of any longer making a living, and therefore prayed that they might again be permitted to make and sell sugar beer. Decided to allow them to do so, as long as the return fleet remains here, and that they shall be bound to buy the black sugar from the Company for cash, and at the ordinary price, and that they are to beware of tapping any strong drinks, on pain of the punishments decreed by the Placcaat.

The Commissioner now lays on the table a memorial from the merchant and ex-secunde Albert van Breugel, showing that he had for some time been confined in his own room, and afterwards in the new Fort, and as he is still a prisoner, he humbly requests to be set at liberty (with the promise of appearing at any time at the Fort when required), and that the charges against him might be shown to him, that he might meet them to the best of his ability: also that the free shoemaker, Jacques Jacqueline, who is on the point of leaving for Batavia, might be ordered to remain here, in order to be of service to the memorialist in his defence. "

1676. After consideration it was decided for the present not to entertain his request to be liberated on bail, but to depute the merchant Johan Putmans and the Lieutenant Dirck Jansz: Smient, to ask him, in the name of the Admiral and the Council for what reason the free shoemaker, Jacques Jacqueline, should not be allowed to depart to Batavia, but be kept here.

It was further decided to instruct Fiscal Hendrik Crudop to take proceedings against v. Breugel for the deficit caused during his administration, and to do so as quickly as possible, that his case which (he) has hitherto impertinently been delaying, may once for all be ended, as his measure of postponement has been meted out so fully to him in all things that there is no reason to give him any further respite, as will appear from the various resolutions from time to time adopted on the subject.

The deputation that same evening proceeded to the house of Breugel and submitted the following report:—"After the adjournment of the Council meeting, they had, as instructed, proceeded to the room of the merchant, Albert van Breugel, *ex-secunde* here, and asked him why in his memorial he had requested that the free shoemaker, Jacques Jacqueline, who had already been given a passage on one of the ships for Batavia, should not be permitted to leave, but be kept here for some time longer? That His Honour had replied that it was to testify to the truth regarding his deep gambling some time ago, on various occasions, with the ex-butler, Cornelis Pietersz: Lumes, adding, however, that it was not quite necessary, as there were various persons still here who had often seen, and could testify to it."—(Signed) JOAN PUTMANS, DIRCK JANSZ: SMIENT, and LAMBERT DE GROOTE, Secretary.

It was accordingly decided to let Jacques Jacqueline proceed to Batavia.—(Signed) N. VERBURGH, ISBRAND GOSKE, JOHAN BAX (named of Herentals), JOOST CLANT, JOAN PUTMANS, J. B. SONHIUS, H. CRUDOP, and LAMBERT DE GROOTE, Secretary.

February 13th.—The *Prins Willem* and *Het Huys te Spye* leave for India. 15th. The Commissioner, attended by Governors Goske and Bax, inspects the works at the new Fortress.

February 17th.—The *Aardenburg* will leave for Ceylon tomorrow, and take with her some soldiers of the garrison and from the return ships, whose term of service had expired, and who had re-enlisted for 3 years more. They are much required at Ceylon in consequence of the troubles of Ragia Singa.

February 18th.—Some months ago we obtained two young lions, a male and female, which we have taken care of until now, and remembering how his Candian Majesty in Ceylon has already some years ago desired to have some of these beasts, we decided to

send them as a present to him with the *Aardenburg*. We trust that this will please him, and that some good will in consequence result to the Company.

The Commissioner, accompanied by both the Governors, proceeds to the country to view the cornlands, and returns towards evening.

February 19th.—The *Aardenburg* leaves for Ceylon. The Council permits a burgher, named Jeronimus de Vos, to leave for Batavia, provided that he beforehand pays what he owes the Company. Various time-expired men re-enlist and receive promotion and increase of pay. Arrival of the new ship *Cronenburg* of Amsterdam. Had left the Texel on the 15th September last for Ceylon. Of her 179 men 7 had died. Brought no sick. Brought no news.

February 22nd.—Two soldiers of the garrison sentenced by the Court of Justice. The one had stolen some garden fruit and the other also. They were sentenced to be severely scourged and to ride the wooden horse three days with 12 lbs weight on their legs.

February 24th.—Arrival of the new ship *Silversteyn* of Amsterdam. Had left the Texel on the 15th September last. Of her crew of 305 men 21 had died. Brought no sick.

February 25th.—Some soldiers of the *Cronenburg* landed to work at the fortifications. A soldier of the *Hendrik Mauritz* apprehended for having murderously wounded a comrade in the neck. The weather very favourable for working at the fortifications and watering the return ships.

February 27th.—The Commissioners appointed to collect the annual returns leave for the country on horseback. The returns to be sent to the Fatherland as usual. 28th. The Commissioners return this evening, showing in their statement that there were 65 free men and 29 Dutch men servants, mostly all provided with arms, such as muskets, cutlasses or small swords. The number of their cattle consisted of 4,670 half-bred sheep, 403 oxen, cows and calves, which had on two occasions been given them on loan by the Company, and of which already 293 had died.

February 29th.—Some salted fish bought from the Saldanha traders for the Company's slaves.

March 1st.—Arrival of the flute *De Beemster*. Had left Gale on the 2nd January last. Her letter from Ceylon is as follows:—“On his departure we received from the Hon. Bax his last farewell note of the 6th November, and we are glad that His Honour received his demission with such great satisfaction and respect, as well as with the promise of maintaining a friendly correspondence

1676.

with us, which will be reciprocated by us. This will therefore serve as a beginning, with the wish that God the Lord will safely conduct him and his family to their destination, and after that grant him all happiness, prosperity, contentment and further promotion, to his own honour and the interests of the Company. This will be brought by the flute *Sparendam*, laden with rice and such other trifles as the friends in Gale will advise you of. . . . We pray that the Return Fleet may safely reach home, and that in your Government it may receive the joyful tidings of peace in Europe, of which we wish you shortly to send us the news, that we also may rejoice and thank God. And that Mr. Bax may know how we are going on in this Government, we have left the packet for Hoorn open for his perusal. We have not received the seed wheat from Surat, so that we cannot send any. . . .”—(Signed) R. v. GOENS, jun., S. VOSCH, JAN BLOMMERT, D. v. VORSTEN, PIETER VERWER.—Dated in the Castle, Colombo, the 28th December, 1675.

The letter from Gale to Gov. Bax is as follows: “That the flute *Sparendam* has been laden with $365\frac{8}{8}$ lasts of the very best rice for the Cape, valued at f28794.18.12, and such other articles as Mr. Bax was unable to take with him when he left, and which were in last year’s requisition, viz.: 2 horses, 4 asses, 11 cases with sprouting cocoa nuts, young arrack, orange trees, sugar cane, bamboos and Japanwood seed; also two cases with cinnamon trees, all which, we trust, will reach you in good condition, and that in time you may reap the fruit thereof.

We also send you with this flute 10 ‘sjoggys’ and other vagrants and vagabonds, which we request you to be pleased to detain, as they create nothing, as you know, but unrest and great evil in the land. We trust that they will be a welcome addition to your works, and that the transmission of such persons will not be disagreeable to you. . . . As we have no doubt that you have safely arrived, and taken over the administration, we once more wish you the blessing of God, and that it may tend to the service of our masters and your further advancement and reputation, which we shall be very glad to be informed of. We also request you to favour us, on occasion, with some garden seeds, whilst we shall, on our part, gladly accommodate you with such articles as you may require from us. . . .”—(Signed) W. v. D. MEULEN, M. SCHOLTER, MICHEL ADRIAANSZ.; DANIEL HERT-HOUWER, and FLORIS BLON, Secretary.—At Gale, the 1st January, 1676.

March 2nd.—Arrival of the return ship *Spanbroek*.

March 6th (Friday).—This afternoon the Rev. Meerlant preached a hearty preparation sermon, as next Sunday the Holy Sacrament will be administered to the members of the congregation and the people on the ships.

March 7th.—Cornelis Claasz: of Utrecht was, after his banns had been published twice in the Church, permitted to marry Catryn of Coromandel.

1676.

March 8th (Sunday).—Administration of the Lord's Holy Supper.

March 9th.—Some soldiers of the *Silversteyn* landed to work at the fortifications. During the afternoon a burgher's child in the country, which had been bitten by an adder, died.

March 12th.—Arrival of the flute *Sparendam* with goods for the Cape. (See March 1st.) 13th. The *Cronenburg* leaves. Arrival of the Danish ship *De Vergulde Pelikaan* from Bantam. 14th. Arrival of another Danish vessel, also from Bantam, bound to Copenhagen. Fires 5 guns and is answered by us with three. Allowed to take in water and buy refreshments from the free men.

After the evening prayer, the Council met and read the letter of the Directors, dated the 3rd November, 1674, requiring that on the arrival of Mr. Bax, the administration should be confided to him. Hence the present Governor, Isbrand Goske, transferred the Government to him with the usual honours and felicitations. At the same time the keys of the Castle and of all the Company's effects, &c., were delivered to him.

March 15th (Sunday).—After God's Holy Word had been preached, the gentlemen and friends of the departing Return Fleet took their farewell dinner, with the intention of embarking to-morrow morning at daylight.

March 17th.—Admiral Nicolaas Verburg and family embark, accompanied by the illustrious heads of the respective return ships and the Hon: Goske and Bax. The two latter and Mr. Putmans again land, and after that, the first and last named returned on board once more, closely followed by the despatches. 18th. The fleet leaves.

March 20th.—Letter received from Sergeant Lourens Visser, Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, informing us that three of our freemen, who had gone into the interior to shoot sea cows, had been massacred in the neighbourhood of the *Groote Rivier* by a troop of Gounema Hottentoots, or at least their dependents. 22nd. Divine Service as usual. 23rd. Departure of the Danish ships *Pelikaan* and *Vogel Phaënix* to Copenhagen. The *Silversteyn* also leaves.

March 26th.—Meeting of Council at 3 o'clock this afternoon. The Governor refers to the letter received from Hottentoots Holland, that once more a kraal of Souquas, called Hottentoots Obiquas, but dependents of Gounema, and supposed to be forest

1676.

rangers, had, at the *Breede Rivier* (see above, March 20th,) murdered three freemen, just as some time previously 8 or 10 free persons had, during the administration of Governor Goske, been so unexpectedly attacked by that tribe and miserably massacred. On the first occasion the Governor and Council looked upon those natives as the most dangerous enemies of the Company and freemen, and as a cancer and pest, who should be searched for and surprised in their hiding places in the best manner possible, in order to destroy them in the interests of the general safety. Accordingly it was now deemed best, the sooner the better (as the approaching bad monsoon might otherwise hinder us), to despatch inland to-morrow, the 27th instant, Lieutenant Cruse, with 50 soldiers, as many burghers, and a troop (lengte) of Hottentoots favourably disposed to the Government, provision them abundantly for 3 months and provide them with ammunition and everything else required for the journey. On their return they would have the booty obtained by them with God's required assistance, distributed among them by the Governor and Council. Finally Thomas of Macassar, slave of the free burgher, Jan Pietersz: Broertje, who had for absconding been scourged, branded and condemned to hard labour for life, in irons, which punishment he had already been undergoing for two and a half years, was pardoned by Commissioner Verburg and Governor Goske, in order to be returned to his master, who had continually been begging for his release, and is very poor, to be employed with more prudence in the gardens for the continuance of agriculture. Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, &c. (Signed) JOAN BAX (called Van Herentals), HENDRIK CRUDOP, DIRCQ JANSZ: SMIENT, JERONIMUS CRUSE, and MARTINUS VAN BANCHUM, Councillor and Secretary.

March 27th.—The commando (see above) leave in small parties, with the intention of resting at the "Ruijterstal," and coming together there, in order the following morning early, "at the appearance of Aurora," to proceed in the name of God, Who, we pray, may be pleased to prosper the expedition. The instructions given to Cruse, the commanding officer, say that it is unnecessary to repeat the motives that have induced the Government to despatch him and his men against our enemies, the Gounema and his adherents. These motives are well known, for only a few days ago three of our burghers were massacred by these barbarous and treacherous Hottentoots. You are also not ignorant of our intentions, before this cruel murder had been committed, to send out this expedition, in accordance with a decision of ex-Governor Isbrand Goske, to resent the many vile murders and thefts committed by the Gounema Hottentoots on those of our nation at various times. Hence, to be brief, you shall pay attention to the following:—

In the first place we urge you to take proper care of our soldiers and burghers; call upon God's Holy Name regularly in the morning and in the evening; carefully observe that everyone is obedient, and that no one, whether burgher or soldier, leaves the troop without your knowledge or consent, as much disaster might thus be caused either by the enemy or wild beasts. Not to be prolix, I further refer you to the memorandum of Mr. Goske, given you in 1674, and drawn up in a most praiseworthy manner.

What roads you will have to take, or where you will find the enemy, we cannot mention here, as we are still ignorant in these respects. The Hottentoo Captain Olaas, who goes with you, and has already sent out men ahead, will, as you march on, inform you from time to time of everything. This Captain Claas we have very much caressed (*gecarresseert*) and encouraged as much as possible, and hence we trust that he will help you in all things according to his custom. The other Hottentoo captains, viz.:—Cuijper, Schacher, Houtebeen, &c., should also go with you, that they may be bound to us the more. These you will no doubt meet as you proceed, according to the notice which you have sent them.

How you are to call on the enemy, and what the object is, you also know, and I refer you on this point also to the memorandum of Mr. Goske, for it must be more an endeavour to destroy the male portion of the enemy (their wives and children excepted) than to seize their cattle. However, should you not be able to overtake these fellows, but only their cattle, the latter should be seized and brought hither, and in our name you may promise the burghers and our Hottentoes a good share, but the distribution must take place here by us. We cannot fix the time for your return, but leave it to you, but we would not like you to remain away longer than three weeks, that we may be able to send the result to the Directors with the last return ships. During that time we believe the business could be done, whilst the last Batavia ships are refreshing here. You shall undertake nothing of importance without having previously deliberated with each other regarding what is best to be done, that you may not be charged with carelessness. Your Council shall consist of:—

Jeronymus Cruse, lieutenant and chief of this expedition.

Wouter Mostard, councillor and burgher lieutenant.

Jan Valekenrijck, burgher ensign.

And further the persons or sergeants of the Military and burghers.

With these men you will be sufficiently able to consider what should be left or done, and to your experience and gallant and good management we commend everything, and yourself to God, not doubting but that together you will acquit yourselves as brave—

1676.

men, and endeavour to avenge the blood of our murdered countrymen. With provisions and ammunition you have been provided as you liked. . . . (Signed) JOAN BAX. In the Fort the Good Hope, the 4th March, 1676.

March 28th.—Arrival of the flute *Oosterblocker*. Had left *Patria* on the 18th May last. Had 5 deaths and brought 6 sick, and took 10 months and 10 days for the voyage, with the loss of her boat.

The sloop *De Schulp* takes to the island a quantity of lime for repairing the kraal and dwelling-houses there, and also some vinegar for the garrison.

April 1st.—The superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, Sergeant Lourens Visser, sends in some agricultural implements to be repaired, and reports that Lieutenant Cruse and his men left the *Kuiflen* on the 29th of last month.

April 5th.—(Easter Sunday). The Resurrection of Christ celebrated to-day in somewhat rainy weather, with the preaching of His Holy Word. 6th (Easter Monday). Divine Service as usual; weather clearing up.

April 10th.—The following letter received from Lieutenant Cruse from the resting place at the “Honingbergen”:—“Monday, 6th April, 1676. Though we have already penetrated about 40 miles into the country, we have not been able, in spite of every effort, to find any traces of the enemy. On the contrary, we are almost daily deceived by smoke made here and there in Sonqua style, and our journey has consequently been considerably delayed. It was therefore unanimously decided, as the time is rapidly passing, and we would not like to extend our journey beyond the limit of three weeks, and much less return without having effected anything, to be patient for one more day and night, and await the return of the six spies who had been sent to the Elephants River on the 3rd instant. Should they, however, not make their appearance, we shall break up to-morrow morning early and continue our journey to Saldanha and St. Helena Bays, in order to surprise the Hottentoo kraals, which, according to a report of a certain Saldanha trader, are scattered about there, as the Hottentoo captains who accompany us have declared it for certain that they are all adherents of Gounema, whose cattle they have in their care, and who were lately participators in the spoliation of the kraals of our allies, and had thereby lost three men. And though these places are far distant, very sandy, and in all probability without water, nevertheless the journey must be made in as short a time as possible. Hence it was deemed advisable to send back to the Cape two wagons containing 16 persons, cripples and sick, and goods which we shall no longer require. The Hottentoo captains who have accompanied us with a long train of cattle, women and

little boys, we have also permitted to depart to their kraals to-morrow morning in company of the wagons, leaving us to select as many of their men as we may deem necessary for our further journey." (Signed) J. CRUSE, WOUTER MOSTART, J. VALCKENRIJCK, O. BERGH, CHRISTIAAN JANSZ: and HENDRIK EVERTSE SMITH. At the resting place near the "Honingbergen."

The flute *Oosterbloeker* preparing for her early departure. A quantity of liquor landed from her for the convenience of our tappers, as the Return Fleet has left us hardly with any. Council meets after evening prayer and decides to despatch the above vessel to Batavia in 2 or 3 days' time, and to land from her one leaguer of Spanish wine and 6 casks of brewed Hoorn beer, having been much deprived by the Return Fleet of these fluids. The hooker *Bode*, sent to Saldanha Bay with supplies, will bring back a large quantity of fish for the garrison and slaves.

April 12th.—The officers of the *Oosterbloeker* take their farewell dinner and receive their despatches for Batavia.

April 13th.—The sloop *De Schulp* leaves for Robben Island with a note to the Superintendent there, in answer to his of the 11th instant, stating that we had desired to receive the three ostriches required of him in a different manner, as through the carelessness of the Quartermaster one had died of hunger, and the legs of the other had been broken, and that henceforth, when he sent us anything, he should more earnestly recommend the vivacious sloop's crew to be more careful in their superintendence. On the other hand, we were pleased that the kraal and dwelling-house had been repaired, so that they would be able to last fully this year. As requested, he was further allowed, like his predecessors, one sheep monthly for himself, and that he should tell the convicts, who had requested to be released from banishment, that in time, not being yet qualified to do so, their request will be attended to, and that he was not to leave them without hope. He was also to take good care that large quantities of shells were collected. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with the implements asked for, and the Superintendent there is urged not to lose time unnecessarily in the cultivation of the land. Regarding his request for 2 slaves for gardening &c., he was told that there were none to spare, and that if he and his men carried on agriculture there with all zeal they would still be able to find time to make a garden so as to be in no want of vegetables; but as we have saved no garden seeds, he might, during his spare time, as we have collected a little from some Cape friends, do something of the kind, and to begin with, plant along the most suitable roads a good number of spike trees; at the same time taking care that you are not unexpectedly surprised by the treacherous and faithless Hottentoots.

1676.

The hooker *De Bode* sent to Saldanha Bay to fish there, as fish is very much needed here for the garrison and slaves. She receives instructions accordingly, and as we are in open war with the natives in those parts, you shall continually be on your guard, and never trust them, however friendly they may seem to be, as they have lately most shamefully murdered our people there. You shall therefore not let any men land without proper firearms, on pain of high responsibility. But in order not to widen the breach, you shall in no wise do any harm to the natives, or hurt them in the least, or hostilely treat them, unless they have previously given you cause for it, in which case it speaks of itself what you are to do, namely, to show them off in such a manner that they will never think of coming back. Finally, we recommend you to hurry as much as possible, and properly manage the supplies, and not to neglect to inform us of all your adventures. With this we commend you to God. . . .”—Your friend, JOHAN BAX (named VAN HERENTALS).—In the Fort, the Good Hope, the 13th April, 1676.

April 14th.—The *Oosterblocker* leaves at daylight. 15th. The rice being landed from the *Sparendam*, which, in this dry season, is a great solace for the Company's servants and the needy burghers living here. The Governor having been indisposed for some time with a bad leg, which, to his regret, prevented him from going out, to-day takes a look about in every direction, and makes a personal inspection of the conditions of the Residency, and also issues such necessary orders as were required. 16th. The boat of Willem van Dieden arrives from Saldanha Bay with oil, fish, eggs, &c.

April 17th.—The expedition against the Gounemas returns, without having, to our regret, effected anything. Their journal is as follows:

“March 27th.—In accordance with instructions from the Governor and Council of the Fort the Good Hope, we, as the head officers of 100 whites, and provided with 23 horses of the garrison and burghers, in order to avenge the murders committed by the native Captain Gounema and his tribe, we left this day, and rendezvoused towards nightfall at the Company's ‘Ruijterstal,’ whence we proceeded to the Tigerbergen, where we passed the remainder of the night, to rest and graze our cattle. Mustering our company, we found the number complete. 28th. Marched to the ‘Kuijlen,’ and there waited for the Captain of Hottentoots Holland, who strengthened our corps with 13 men, but, finding 7 agriculturists there who would be more serviceable to him (Cruse), he took them with him, arranging at the same time with Captain Claas that he and our other Hottentoo allies were to join us at the Berg River. 29th (Sunday.) Lovely weather. Marched th^e

whole day, and reached the Berg River in the evening, where at the same time some Captains, such as Cuijper, Schacher and Sousema, camped. They stated that Captain Claas would arrive to-morrow. 30th. Waited in vain until noon for Claas, and then proceeded for an hour, when we perceived behind the mountain range situated on our right various smoke columns rising in the air, leading us to suppose that perhaps the enemy might be lying encamped there; accordingly we at once packed off, and in order not to be too premature, everyone was strictly forbidden to discharge his firearms without orders, unless necessary, also not to make large fires, but only such as were required for use (and to make them) in the caves there, that our designs might not be discovered by the enemy. Late in the evening Captains Claas and Coopman, with their adherents, reached us, who, being encouraged with a dram and a piece of tobacco, sent out 8 Soucquas, or spies, in order thoroughly to observe the surroundings from the tops of the mountains, and find out where the fires originated, and also to search for the enemy everywhere. They are expected back to-morrow night, or at the furthest the day after to-morrow. They have been particularly encouraged, and in order not to delay the journey, were provided with biscuits. 31st. Marched on, and without the knowledge of the Hottentoots, we availed ourselves of the opportunity to count their cattle accompanying us, which consisted of 250 head, that after we have taken revenge on the enemy the cattle captured may not be mixed up with that of the Hottentoots.

April 1st.—Marched on as rapidly as possible in order to reach, if possible, better pastures for our cattle. Arrived at our resting-place, Captain Cuijper presented us with a fat cow, which was very welcome. It was at once killed and quartered. We are anxiously longing for the return of the Soucquas despatched by us. Their tarrying makes us hope for good news. 2nd. The pastures here being very inferior, we marched to a place called 'Soucquas Water,' where, in the dark, three of the Soucquas returned to us with the report that the smoke seen by us on the 30th last had not been caused by burning grass or rushes, but that they could plainly see from the tops of the mountains that they arose from a collection of Hottentoots kraals squatted behind the mountains. That they (the three Soucquas) had accordingly left their mates to inform us of this, and that they were to march prudently; and that the other Soucquas had remained on the mountains, in order to approach the fires the following night, so as to be able to give us thorough information the following morning, on which we might most surely depend. The Hottentoots appear to have good confidence in the report of the Soucquas, and have killed various beasts during the night as provisions for the march. 3rd. About 8 a.m. the other 3 Soucquas arrived who had

1676.

remained behind for further spying. They had very early approached the fires, but to our regret, had found them to be caused by rushes and grass, lit by some one or another, so that our hopes of capturing the enemy have vanished. We, however, at once, by means of tobacco, drams (soopjens), &c., induced the same Hottentoots, as well as three others, to leave speedily once more for the Elephants River, to find out whether the enemy was not in hiding there. In the meanwhile we marched to the 'Kleine Berg Rivier.' Late at night two (? three) more Soucquas returned, with news that they had observed behind the 'Swartebergen' five fires as if originating from some kraals, but without anything more. By good presents they were induced immediately to resume the journey (three of them) and make further inspection of the cattle and other matters, as it appeared that 4 were missing. They are expected back to-morrow. 4th. Marched to the spot where we had arranged to meet the Soucquas. Three or four of our men began to get sick and feverish, which is not opportune. We trust that they will soon be better. We do not fail in having them attended to by the surgeon, and as opportunity and our means allow, providing them with one thing and another as refreshment. To-day we distributed more than 600 lbs. bread among the men, as we did not have the least chance to secure any game. Most of our supplies have consequently been consumed. 5th (Sunday). As the spies had not returned yesterday, and we have advanced so far, that for the present we must be very prudent, and not dare to proceed further, we were this day compelled to our regret, to wait for them here; but in the evening we were informed by another Hottentoot that they had returned, but without having effected anything, and that consequently they were afraid of our displeasure, and did not dare to approach us, so that in every way we have been more hindered than helped by the Hottentoots. Our only hope therefore rests now on the report of the six spies sent to the Elephants river, whose return we are expecting every minute. 6th. Tired of the continual false news brought by the spies, and the long tarrying of those who have been sent to Elephants River, we decided in council, on the strength of the good hopes given us by the Hottentoots, to be patient this day and the following night and await the spies, and should the latter tarry any longer, then at once to proceed to Saldanha Bay or St. Helena Bay, in order there to surprise the Choriqwas who are allies of the enemy, according to the statements of the Hottentoot captains, and said to be well provided with cattle. But before continuing our journey we shall send to the Cape two wagons, some sick, and the men required for managing the wagons, and also a letter, &c., according to resolution. Bartered from the Caapmen (so called) a cow for the men, and also a sheep from Captain Claas's dependents for tobacco. 7th. The Soucquas having not yet arrived, we despatched the two

wagons to the Cape this morning, and with the third, we and our men continued our journey, while the Hottentoo Captains (excepting Claas) remained behind with 17 or 18 other natives, to await the arrival of the spies, with instructions, that when they brought good news, and the enemy had been seen by them anywhere, at once to let us know, that should the conditions of the place permit it, we might return. We accordingly on that hope did not march very far. 8th. Still no news from the Hottentoo Captains, but after marching four hours, we were overtaken by three or four nimble Africans, with the desired news that the spies had yesterday once more sighted the kraals of the enemy and had clearly located them near a mountain, called by them Comma (a place, where, according to the statements of the oldest travellers, no Hollanders had yet been), and that their Captains were busy packing up, in order to follow us as soon as possible with the Soucquas. In the meanwhile we travelled towards the mountain mentioned, situated more than three days' journey from us, and towards evening arrived at the Berg River to rest and wait for the Captains, but on the march we found some Soucquas of the enemy, searching for food in the veld. They were pursued by Captain Claas and some of his most active men, and one was caught and brought in towards evening and well secured. With the promise of being released, we asked him to show us the way to where his Captain's kraals were situated, and he told us that Gounema had retired far beyond the mountains towards the Eliphants River, but that Odesso, who is one of his associates, was with four kraals encamped forward at the place mentioned, and that on our march hither, we had passed near a kraal situated not far from this, which made us at once resolve to let the burgher Ensign, Jan-Valekenryk, at his own request depart thither during the night, with 32 men, on foot and on horseback, as well as with the captured Soucqua, and find out the truth, but they returned the same night disappointed, as those kraals had evidently, already some days ago, departed thence. During our whole journey we found the country in every direction so covered with the fires and footmarks of the Soucquas, that we very much feared that the Soucquas, of whom we only captured one, had given too early a notice of our doings to Odesso, and though the Hottentoo Captains have not yet joined us, we do not mind that much, but we long for the Soucquas who have brought us the information. We therefore, in the evening sent two Hottentoes and two Hollanders back, to bring them on as soon as possible, with strict orders to be back here to-morrow morning early. 9th. They return this morning early with the Soucquas, the captains came behind them, and we proceeded on our journey under the guidance of the prisoner. When not very long on the way we unexpectedly came upon a Hottentoo kraal, but man and beast could not have been

away long as the cow dung was still warm, and the fires not yet burnt out. We followed the 'spoor' as fast as possible, but having soon lost it because of the hardness of the ground, we went on, in order to lose no time, and towards evening arrived at our resting place, a long day's journey still distant from the enemy's kraals. We would have liked to have continued our march during the night, and therefore asked our prisoner whether there would be, by proceeding during the night, a chance of reaching the enemy at daylight, but he replied that that would not be very practicable, so that we were obliged to spend the night here. We, however, ordered the Hottentoots to send out during the night twenty of their swiftest men to the kraals, in order to give us information to-morrow on our journey, but we found them not too much inclined to do so. 10th. At daylight, Sergeant Olof Bergh, some burghers, and a party of Hottentoots went ahead in order to obtain, if possible, further information, with orders that, should anything particular occur, to let us know with a Hottentoot. We followed them as best we could. At noon we rested the cattle a little. In the meanwhile news was received that at the mountain before us two of the enemy's Hottentoots had been surprised by the men of the Sergeant, and that one had been killed but that the other had escaped. This had encouraged Bergh and his party to pursue further, and we remained still about four hours from the kraal until further news, which, however, did not arrive this evening, so that we fear that there will not be much to get. 11th. About eight o'clock this morning the Sergeant and his men returned with the report that they had from yesterday morning until late in the evening been on their legs without resting anywhere, and when dark, had reached the place where Odesso had had his camp, which had consisted of 47 huts, all which they had abandoned with much of their household implements, such as pots, bowls, roots, boiled elephant's meat, &c. They had also found in one of the huts five old women, 3 lame cows and 8 poor calves. They brought us all these, excepting the women, whom the Hottentoots and we excused. The enemy appeared not to have camped there more than two or three days, and as the old women said, had been informed of our approach by a Soucqua stationed at an outlook on the mountain top, and had at once fled through the mountains to Gounema. This pains us very much, and on enquiry, finding that none of the burghers could point out a way to reach them there, it was unanimously resolved in council, as our provisions and time did not permit us to pursue the enemy further, to commence our return journey to the Cape to-morrow morning, the lame cattle having to serve us as food on the way, and the captured Soucqua as guide. 12th and 13th. Having travelled two days, we reached a place called De Vogelsang, where we deliberated in council what we should do with the captured prisoner. It was unanimously resolved

that as he had been promised his liberty should he reveal to us the camps of the enemy, and as he has brought us to his kraals, and it is not his fault that he did not know of the enemy's departure, and did his best, as much as he could, not to break our promise, but to deliver him to Captain Claas and his men to act with him as they might deem proper, who accordingly, in the evening, after prayers, made short work of him. 14th to 17th. Marched rapidly on, these four days, from early morning till late at night, without anything worth mentioning occurring, and towards evening with rainy weather we reached the Fort 'The Good Hope,' all in good health. God be thanked for His kind mercy." (Signed) J. CRUSE, WOUTER MOSTART, and J. VALCKENRYCK.

April 18th.—Arrival of the *Asia*, *Tidoor*, *Cortjine*, and the hooker *De Croontogel*. Had left the Downs the 18th January last, and only lost 3 men by death, which, thank God, may be considered as a prosperous voyage. Arrival also of a small English vessel, *The Society*, of about 60 lasts, with 17 men. Her rendezvous was at Boston, in New England, which she left on the 29th December last, for Madagascar, to buy slaves. Allowed to take in water and buy refreshments from the freemen. Rice, however, we could not give our friends, as we had none to spare, and we were not allowed to sell according to orders of Directors contained in their despatch of the 28th September. Besides, in consequence of last year's drought, the crops have generally been a failure, so that we shall have to keep what we have for our own sustenance.

April 19th (Sunday).—With dutiful devotion God's Holy Word was twice preached to-day. 20th. Some agricultural implements required for Hottentots, Holland. The superintendent there promised not to lose time in furthering agriculture, but to keep his men busy with the plough, and the manuring of the lands; and as, in consequence of the unusual drought, the pastures have become very poor, and the cows give very little milk, and butter-making will no longer pay, he has decided to stop this industry for the present, promising that as the grass is now fairly beginning to grow again, and the cows will soon yield more milk, he will do his best once more to start the dairy.

April 21st.—The fortification works zealously continued. 22nd. The Governor inspects them during the afternoon, and afterwards proceeded to the Company's garden, whence (after the gardener had pointed out to him what was best to be done in the interests of the Company) he returned home.

Towards evening the *Oester* returns from the Island with her ordinary load of shells, and a note from the Superintendent mostly treating of his innocence regarding the neglecting of the ostriches, sent over in such a damaged condition.

1676.

April 23rd.—Some soldiers landed to cut fuel in the forests for their ships and our lime kilns. Lourens Visser, Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, ordered no longer to send empty wagons once a fortnight to the Cape for supplies, but to load them with chaff for our horses. Letter sent to the Provisional Superintendent at Robben Island, Albert Bernenots, that as soon as the sloop had her cargo of shells on board, she was to be despatched at once, that the lime kilns may not stand still, and that as many blue flags were to be collected for the use of bridges as possible. For that purpose he receives, in order to prepare other steps, two experienced stone-cutters, and he is further to tell Willem Willemsz: from whom we received a note, that we had not the slightest idea of sending his wife away, so that he need not be anxious, and that his person (according to the orders of the Directors received 3 or 4 days ago) would not lightly be injured. The little English vessel, *De Societeyt*, having obtained what she needed, and properly thanked us, leaves for Madagascar. *The ex-burgher, Jacob Rosendaal, was snatched away from this sinful, perishable, and vain world by the cold, unexpected, relentless death.* 24th. The body of the free burgher, Jacob Rosendaal, buried this afternoon. God grant him and us all, when parting from this world, a blessed resurrection, to the Glory of His Holy Name! Amen.

April 26th.—The drums beaten to order all the men of the ships about to leave to return on board. 27th. The hooker, *Croonrogel* leaves for Batavia.

April 28th.—Arrival of the return ships *Ceylon, Alexander*, and *Voorsigtigheyd*. Had left Batavia on the 9th February last. Thank God, with healthy crews, excepting a very few, slightly suffering from dropsy. Near the land, the skipper of the *Alexander*, Jorst Goes, departed this life; and commended his soul to the Merciful and Gracious God for the last time. The letter received from the High Government is as follows:—Ships Affairs. —“As we have heard here from various persons that vineyards are increasing very rapidly among the different people at the Cape, so that a fair quantity of white wines is already being obtained, we wish to suggest to you to see whether no Spanish, or Canary or Sack grapes are found at the Cape, and to inform yourselves regarding those which give the best promise, that you may then pay particular attention to their cultivation; and should there as yet be none of those kinds, then to requisition the Directors at Home for some, and only plant that particular kind which principally agrees with the Cape climate, and is less subject to getting sour than the white wines. It would, therefore, be good, that during the presence of the vessels there, you would be pleased to look round, so that you may the better frame your Requisition; and it will please us also to learn from you the

results of your experience, whilst the annexed extract from our general despatch to the Directors will tell you what we wrote them on this subject.

As the sister and friends of the junior merchant, Anthony de Vogel, whom you took out of the yacht *Schielant*, have requested that he may be allowed to come hither, you will be pleased to let him leave for Batavia by the first favourable opportunity, as you will always be able to obtain another in his place from any of the passing ships. . . .

We have met here one Hans Adam Cockenberger, of Vienna, who has been serving 7 or 8 months at the Cape as soldier, and who is an expert viticulturist, and professes within a few years to plant such a large quantity of vines, that soon he will have more than the Cape needs, so that many leaguers could be sent to India. At his request he was allowed to leave as a freeman in one of these three vessels, in order at once, on his arrival to commence operations. For that purpose you shall permit him to select such lands as may be sufficient, as this is deemed a matter of importance, in which the Masters are greatly interested; hence a helping hand must be held out to him, by providing him with the cuttings of the various Company's vineyards, such as he may desire to have. And as he says that his wife is equally experienced in viticulture, &c., and in case of his death, would be able to continue the work, he has requested our recommendation to the Masters to allow her a passage to the Cape. This you may also remember in your letters to the Hon. Company.

According to annexed memorandum, these ships will bring you three natives or blacks, condemned to pass the term of their banishment at the Cape according to the sentences of the magistrates. . . .” (Signed) JOAN MAATSUYKER, &c., &c.

April 29th.—The rest of the outward bound ships leave. The body of the late skipper of the return ship *Alexander* brought on shore, and interred with the proper solemnities. 30th. Arrival of the outward bound ship *Macassar* with 280 men. Lost 31 by death and brought 26 sick.

May 1st.—Wagons arrive from Hottentots Holland with hay and chaff, and also 47 lbs. mutton and 5 sheep killed during the month in consequence of sickness. Supplies, &c., to be sent to that station. Half of the kraal on Robben Island had been blown down by the violent S. easter, so that material will at once be sent over to build a small house instead.

May 3rd.—Arrival of the ship *De Stadt Grave van Delft* with no dead. The skipper was the only sick person on board, being very ill and lame, who, to our great distress and sorrow, reported that he had, near the land, and on the 19th April last, spoken a small English vessel named *The Rebecca*, from Barbadoes, and

1676.

bound to Madagascar for slaves. She had 12 men on board, and was 20 lasts large. She had left St. Jago on the 4th February last, and informed our people (on *De Stadt*, &c.) that she had heard from the skipper of the hired flute *St. Lourens*, out of his own mouth, at Ilha de Maay, that his ship, the *St. Lourens*, had run on shore near Boa Vista during the night, that nothing of the cargo had been saved, and that 4 persons had perished. We pray that this sad communication of the Britons will disappear in smoke, as it will otherwise not only be a great loss to the Company, but also deprive us of our entire requisition for the current year. These English also told us that they had understood from the Governor or Captain at St. Jago that a few days previously four French war ships had passed there, each mounting 50 guns and carrying 500 men, which alleged that they intended to cruise here about in the latitude of the Cape, with the hope of surprising some Dutch vessels; but to accept this as gospel we cannot very well do, as we are of opinion that the French keep their designs somewhat more secret.

The sloop *de Schulp* takes some salt to the Island for salting the meat of the oxen which off and on die there from sickness. . . .

May 4th.—Arrival of *Het Sticht van Utrecht* with 265 men, of whom 16 had, by death, been sacrificed to Neptune. Brought no sick.

May 5th.—Meeting of the Council. The Governor asks whether the yacht *Voorhout*, projected by resolution of the Hon. N. Verburgh for the slave trade at Madagascar, should not at once start on her voyage. As this is now the favourable monsoon for such an expedition, it was decided to despatch her not later than the 15th of this month, and to give the officers such clothing and specie, &c., as are required for the purpose. . . . It was also decided, in accordance with His Honour's resolution of the 11th March, by which she had been selected to proceed to Mauritius to obtain thence a cargo of lime for the fortification works, and not to employ the flute *Sparendam* for the purpose, in consequence of her unfitness; but to despatch the hooker *De Bode* instead, which is quite suitable for the purpose, and to despatch the *Sparendam* to Batavia to be repaired there. (Signed) JOHAN BAX, named VAN HERENTHALS, H. CRUDOP, DIRCQ JANSZ: SMIENDT, J. CRUSE, and M. VAN BANCHEM, Councillor and Secretary.

Arrival towards evening of the *Muyderberg* and *Den Briel*. The first with 128 men, of whom 4 had died; and the second with 229 men, of whom 24 had departed this life. She also had 20 sick. They reported that they had seen a large vessel under the land, which makes us cherish the hope that she may be the *St. Lourens*, which had already been described as dead by the English,

and that that nation has only practised on our credulity. But though the wind was favourable, the vessel could not be sighted, so that our hopes sank, and we feared that the loss of that very much needed vessel was but too true.

May 8th.—Some soldiers landed from the ships to work at the fortifications and in the quarries. They were at once put to that healthy labour, whilst the carpenters of the ships were set to work hacking beams. 9th. The hooker *Sicaertvis* leaves for a cruize outside to warn the Company's ships outside of the four French ships said to be off the coast to capture Dutch ships.

May 10th (Sunday).—Divine Service. Strong S.E. wind the whole day. 11th. Some cattle and sheep bartered from the Souswaas in the interior. The *Voorhout* taking in her cargo for Madagascar

May 13th.—The gunner and some men busy removing some guns from the old fort to the new one.

May 14th.—The Resurrection of our Saviour celebrated to-day by hearing his Holy Word, according to Christian duty.

May 15th.—The *Bruyt* arrives from Saldanha Bay with fresh eggs, &c., which are sold to the garrison and burghers here. Letter received from the superintendent on Robben Island stating that he had put into the ground the cocoa nuts, where they would be protected from the S.E. winds until they can be transplanted by the person to be sent over for the purpose. It would be a most desirable thing if we could rear them. He also asks for 5 draught oxen, as those on the Island have been so overworked that they cannot be employed any longer.

May 17th.—The wagon arrives from Hottentoots Holland with 244 lbs. of salted meat, of 4 oxen and 4 sheep, which 6 lions had in broad daylight and before the eyes of the herds taken from the troop. One of these cruel beasts had, however, been killed, whose skin the wagon also brought. The superintendent also wrote that two slaves had arrived there, but that he did not know whether they belonged to the Company or private persons. He would detain them until further orders.

May 18th.—To our great consternation we received information from Hottentoots Holland that during the past night a large number of beasts of prey, both lions and wolves, had broken into the sheep shed, and had wounded, torn to pieces, devoured or killed 120 sheep, of which only 20 were still alive, which the superintendent sent us with the wagon, as well as the 78 dead animals. All the men of the garrison there had been under arms, in order if not to kill, then at least to put these voracious beasts to

1676. — flight, but they were 2 or 3 times so hard pressed by the latter that they were obliged to take refuge in the dwelling-house. They had, however, shot a lion and a wolf, but in consequence of the darkness of the night and the heavy rains, they did not dare to pursue the vermin. The superintendent further stated that in order to escape from those wild beasts, the Hottentoots had with their kraals retired to beyond the mountains, as a good number of their cattle had also been destroyed by the brutes.

May 19th.—A certain free burgher who had been resident here named François van Hairbrugge, having the day before yesterday exchanged the life of this miserable and detestable world for a better one, was this afternoon carried to his grave.

The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with the following note to Sergeant Lourens Visser:—"Received yours of the 16th and 18th instant. Your carelessness and thoughtlessness in the discharge of your duties, are much too much in evidence before us, especially from the examination of your own man, who states that the sentry had warned and roused you in sufficient time, with notice of the approach of those injurious animals; and yet! with such a number of men you did not wish to hinder the brutes, which are all signs of a great stupid thoughtlessness, and the more so, as some time ago you had already shot a lion, which should have been a warning to you, so that we say that you have had sufficient knowledge, and should have had ready a sufficient number of muskets, traps, and other defensive tools (according to your custom) in order to prevent the entrance of the beasts into the kraal. And had such traps been laid all round the kraal, so many valuable and indispensable animals would not have been lost through your shameful neglect. Moreover, you cannot be ignorant, because of your long experience, and which you ought to have, that wild beasts usually keep near the kraals of the Hottentoots, and that you might easily have observed that when the natives break up their kraals and leave for another place, the beasts of prey at once look about for other pastures and that in such cases you had no assurance that you would escape. This should, therefore, have urged you to be very careful, which we find in every way that you have not been, even in the case of the dead sheep which you sent, which were not even skinned, and on their arrival here were in such a stinking condition that not more than 10 or 12 could be used. All these are matters of grave consequence, and for which you can have no excuse, as it is very little to your credit, and certainly not what we expected from you. We shall therefore investigate this matter further when occasion serves, and properly point out to you your faults and neglect, after which we shall also correct you so as to make you feel it, that similar losses (which may God prevent) may no longer occur through such careless ser-

vants, Farewell."—(Signed) Your friend, JOHAN BAX, named VAN HERENTALS. In the Fort the Good Hope, the 19th May, 1676.

1676.

May 21st.—*De Stad Grave* and *Voorhout* receive their despatch, and will leave the Bay with the return and outward bound squadrons, that in case of meeting an enemy they may show a more formidable front. The first is destined to Batavia and the other to Madagascar for the slave trade. She has been furnished with such specie, merchandize, &c., as are requisite there, according to the experience of Commander Hubert Hugo, who had been to that island in 1672 for the same purpose in the yacht *De Pyl*. God grant that we, as well as the English, may obtain a large number of these serving people, who will be very welcome at the fortifications, and for agricultural purposes. The good success of this we shall further leave to God, and time. Ample instructions have also been given to the officers for their guidance, with such other documents as may serve them on occasion.

May 22nd.—A light S. E. breeze. The following vessels leave:—

<i>Ceylon</i> (Admiral's ship)	} For Patria.
<i>De Voorsigtigheyt</i>	
<i>De Alexander</i>	
<i>Macassar</i>	} For Batavia.
<i>Utrecht</i>	
<i>Den Briel</i>	
<i>Muyderberg</i>	
<i>De Graaff</i>	

The yacht *Voorhout* for Madagascar for slaves.

A note sent to the island, in reply to that received from its Superintendent, stating that we can understand the weak state of the cattle there and that some more are required, but that we ourselves, as we have often informed him, are much in want of draught animals, especially for the new fortifications, which are not progressing as fast as should be. That he is therefore urged to take good care of the animals used by him for transport, as we are unable to provide him with others; with the understanding, however, that he must not neglect the collection and bringing on of the shells, and carefully attend to everything. The sloop also takes thither a person to transplant the cocoa nuts lately sent over.

May 24th.—The Holy Feast of Pentecost twice celebrated by going to church, the services being most devotionally conducted by our minister, the Rev. Petrus Hulzenaer. 25th. Whit Monday. Also celebrated by Divine Service, and the men excused from their daily labour.

1676.

May 26th.—The hooker *De Baers* to be sent to Saldanha Bay to be cleaned, and after that to continue fishing, &c. Consequently her men were paid a part of their wages, as they are much in need of clothing to cover their bodies.

May 27th.—Instead of yesterday's threatening storm abating during the night, it increased in such vehemence that the wind blew most angrily from the sea, accompanied with hard rain.

May 28th.—The *Baars* leaves for Saldanha Bay, with instructions that: "She is to be thoroughly repaired, and the men kept continually busy catching and salting down fish. She takes a large seine for the purpose with sufficient salt and water, so that no time need be wasted to search for the latter. Your own experience and the advice of others will tell you where the best fishing grounds will be found. Being at war with the natives in that neighbourhood, you shall be always on your guard and not trust them, no matter under what guise they may show themselves, as they have lately shamefully murdered our people there. You shall therefore allow none of your people to land unless properly provided with firearms, on pain of high responsibility. But to cause no further estrangement, the natives shall in no way be molested or injured, or hostilely pursued, unless they be the first to give cause, in which case it speaks of itself what you are to do, namely, ward them off in such a manner that they will not think of returning. Make as much haste as you can, in every way, and manage the provisions properly. Finally, do not forget to communicate to us all your adventures." Your friend, (Signed) JOHAN BAX named VAN HERENTHALS. In the Fort the Good Hope, the 28th May, 1676.

May 31st (Sunday).—Fine weather. The rest day of the Creator properly celebrated.

June 1st.—The wagon arrives from Hottentoots Holland with 10 muids wheat and 889 lbs., salt meat of 47 sheep, 1 ox, and 2 calves, killed by wild beasts or dead from sickness. Also 3 lion skins and 1 wolf skin, of beasts killed there. Twenty-six muids of wheat had been sown, which are at present already showing a green tint. During this month only 8 more muids will be sown, as the season is nearly over. The Superintendent asks for 10 or 11 muids of barley to put into the ground. The beasts of prey had not yet quite left the place, as 3 or 4 were still about the kraals during the night and at unseasonable hours, but the men were on their guard and hoped to be able to kill them. For that purpose they had placed musket traps around the cattle kraal, in order thus, if practicable, to destroy the marauders.

June 2nd.—Very boisterous and unpleasant weather, with continuous heavy rains and vehement N. winds, which caused in the Bay a great roaring of billows, and on shore great leakages in

the houses, so that the workmen could do but very little. The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with supplies, &c., and the following note:—From your 2 notes of the same date it appears that the lions and other beasts of prey are still (to our regret) causing daily loss; as they have again destroyed a horse of the Company, and injured the leg of one of the men. We hope that through your care, as in a preceding case, he will completely recover, and that you will once for all be delivered from those injurious animals. We received the 10 muids of wheat in good order, and are pleased that you have put 34 muids of wheat into the ground, and that they are already beginning to look green, but that you will not, in consequence of the lateness of the season, be able to put more than 8 muids more into the ground, which would only bring the quantity up to 34 muids, is not so satisfactory, as we expected that you would have sown at least 40 muids, but as it is a little out of season now, we shall this once overlook it, and leave the rest of the lands to be sown with barley, of which you may obtain from Hendrick Elbertsz: here as much as you may think you require, always sending a load of straw when the wagon is sent in for barley.

The wagon will bring you the ordinary monthly rations; and for the wounded there 12 mengelen (quarts) brandy, and 12 mengelen (quarts) vinegar, which we desire you to distribute economically among those in need of them as you will be able to get along with that quantity a considerable time, and will have to render us an account from time to time of your distributions. Two quarts of the brandy you shall at once send to Captain Claas, with 2 lbs. tobacco annexed to this, as a present from the Governor, to refresh him somewhat in the wet season. We desire you to maintain good friendship with him, and if possible, to obtain from him some rare birds, animals or plants, in fact everything that is rare and may be serviceable to His Highness the Lord Prince of Orange, as this has been strongly impressed on us by the Directors.

The Governor would also like to see you desist from writing on your address to him the title of Councillor Extraordinary of India, which you generally make use of in your superscriptions. He is by no means pleased with it, and besides has hitherto not been favoured with that rank. The title of Governor will be quite sufficient and appertains to us, without anything more. The mails also go over now. Place the keg for the butter in a bit of linen, in order thus to keep it clean.

We expect the sheep shed and kraal, &c., will be built up strong, and made secure against the beasts of prey, &c. *Vale.* (Signed) Your friend, JOHAN BAX named VAN HERENTHALS. The 2nd June, 1676.

June 3rd.—Calm weather with a gentle S.E. breeze. The Super-

1676.

intendent on the Island informed of our regret that the other half of the cattle kraal had been blown down by the wind, and ordered to repair it as much as he can with the means at his disposal until other arrangements can be made. Some material is also sent him for the purpose. And as regards the petition of the convicts there, orders have already been issued to have clothes made for them, which, as soon as finished will be sent to them. 4th. The *Sparendam* leaves for Batavia, and takes with her the chief merchant and ex-secunde of this place, Sieur Albert Van Breugel, with some of his chief furniture in order to prosecute his suit before the High Court there, as for reasons he cannot do so here.

June 5th.—Court of Justice sits this morning. As various criminal cases are still to be tried, and which could not be attended to because of the weakness of the Board (in number), and in consequence of the heavy business caused by the presence here of the return and outward bound ships, it was decided to strengthen the Court with some more members in order to enable it to finish its work the better. Some Surat wheat, weevil-eaten, to be sold.

June 6th.—Fine warm weather. This day departed this life the wife of the burgher, Sieur Johannes Prætorius. The soldiers according to custom exercised in arms. 7th. Magnificent, perfect weather, and the Lord's Day celebrated by the hearing of His Holy word.

June 8th.—This morning at 8 o'clock the weevil eaten wheat (see 5th) was sold by auction in the large hall of the old demolished fort, and realised a fair price. The Governor proceeds to the country on horseback, accompanied by the master carpenter and mason to inspect the Redoubts *Kyckuyt* and *Keer de Koe*, a good half hour distant from this Fortress, the one on the beach, and the other somewhat inland, which are threatening to fall in. In the evening he returned, having found the Redoubts so out of repair that to all appearance they will soon collapse. He therefore decided as advised by the "basen," to pull them down and build them up from the ground with stone, which will be a permanent and massive work, and will be started without delay. A commencement was also made with a stone bridge at the Company's Garden, extending outwards towards the Lion Mountain. By this serviceable work the repairs annually required for the wooden bridge will be avoided. Hence gradually all the wooden bridges will be replaced with stone ones.

June 9th.—Meeting of Council. The additional members of the Court of Justice introduced, and a Secretary appointed for that Board. All having taken the oath the meeting was adjourned.

June 10th.—Beautiful weather. The Governor on horseback proceeded this afternoon to the back of the Lion Mountain, to

have a good look at the sea shores all about there. He returned over the Kloof between the Lion and Table Mountains at night-fall. Note received from the Island that the kraal which had been blown down had been partly rebuilt, and covered with the old reeds, so that it will still serve for a while. 11th. Fine weather continuing to the great benefit of the crops.

June 12th.—Session of the Court of Justice. Case considered of the assistant Jacob van Leeuwen, who had in revenge, with a knife stabbed a gunner on the departed ship *Mauritius Eyland* (on which the prisoner was also serving), because that gunner had first wounded him in the face. The gunner had finally died of the wound. After ripe deliberation it was decided to send round to the members the documents submitted by the Fiscal as Prosecutor, that every one of them might carefully read them over, seeing that some of them have only lately taken their seats at the Board, and the case deserves some attention. Thus, after ripe deliberation action may be taken. Pleasant weather the whole day.

June 13th.—Fine rains for the agriculturists to put their ploughs into the ground, as the season for sowing is pretty well over, so that a late harvest is promised to those who have not yet put their seed into the ground.

June 18th.—In order to settle various undecided cases, the Court of Justice sat this morning. Besides civil cases, sentences were also passed in the case of two persons who had been left here by the return fleet, and had mortally wounded their victims. The one, an assistant, named Jacob van Leeuwen, was condemned to have a bullet fired over his head and to be banished for life on Robben Island; and the other, a sailor, Pieter Jansz. of Dordrecht, to be thoroughly scourged and stroked with a red hot sword, cross-wise, over his body. Two slaves, one of the Company, and the other of a burgher, who had stolen some cabbages from a garden of a freeman, were condemned to be scourged and branded, and have both their ears cut off. Moreover, they were to be riveted in irons, and thus sent home to their owners. 19th. The above-mentioned sentences carried out between 11 and 12 o'clock this morning. Arrival of the English ship, the *Phoenix*, mastless and helpless. During the afternoon the Captain's brother landed with the chief mate, who had been sent by the Captain to greet the Governor. They mentioned that they had left London on the 20th March last, in company of nine other vessels, five of which were destined to Surat, and the rest to Bantam. She carried 80 men, but in Lat. 35° and Long. 13° 14', she had been suddenly overtaken by a whirlwind, which had carried away her masts. Had called at St. Jago, and there heard that 5 Dutch privateers were cruising for the French; that the condition of our dear

1676.

Fatherland was good, and that our people, under Admiral De Ruijter, had obtained great victories over the French in the Straits. That there was little appearance, during this summer, of peace, the contrary of which we pray may be the case, that God the Lord may in a short time grant us a desired and permanent peace, for the general tranquillity and consolation of the many impoverished persons. The aforesaid friends requested, in order to repair their ship, to be supplied with some pieces of wood for masts, which they might join together for the purpose, and to be permitted to buy some sheep, vegetables and other refreshments from the freemen. At once the Secretary was ordered by the Governor to reply in the usual form to our friends, but as regards the masts, the Captain's brother was told that we could hardly help them, as one of our ships, the *St. Lourens*, had through some misunderstanding of their officers been wrecked at Ilha de May, her whole cargo consisting mostly of such materials, in compliance with our requisitions for this year. We were therefore in great need ourselves, but promised them, however, to do what we could, and render them such assistance as we were able. Towards evening the Captain's brother and the mate returned on board with a message from the Governor to the Captain that he expected him and the other friends at dinner to-morrow. 20th. The Captain and some of his officers land, accompanied by two ladies, who were most politely received and entertained (*gecaresseert*) at dinner by the Governor. The Captain having referred to the state of his vessel, received the promise that we would do for him what we could.

This morning notices were affixed in many places by the Messenger of Justice that some camlet and fine linen would be sold by auction in order to prevent their further destruction by lying so long in the stores.

News received towards evening that a shepherd at the Diepe Rivier had shot a certain Hottentoo. The matter will be investigated to-morrow.

June 21st.—This morning, by order of the Governor, two Commissioners and the Provisional Fiscal, Gerbrand Muller, left for Diepe Rivier, about 5 hours distant from this, where the Hottentoo kraals are situated, in order to inquire into the rumour which reached us last night.

In the afternoon the Secretary, Harbourmaster and Master Carpenter proceed to the *Phoenix* to find out what she mostly required; and also to notify to the officers that without the knowledge of the Governor no wine beer or strong drinks or drugs (*drooge waren*) were to be landed, and much less sold to the freemen or Company's servants, as the Company itself sold those articles, and would suffer loss in consequence. They also took with them a note, signed by the Governor, permitting the officers

of the *Phoenix* to buy from the freemen as many vegetables and sheep as they might require for their men, provided that the sellers shall each time report at the Secretariat the number or quantity sold by them.

The Commissioners and Fiscal return and report that they had been to the Hottentoo kraals at the Diepe Rivier, where a Hottentoo was said to have been killed by a Dutch shepherd. They arrived there on the 21st of the month, and found there the kraals of the Captains Kuipper and Houtebeen. On inquiry they were informed that in a little hut in one of the kraals of Houtebeen the wounded Hottentoo was lying, who voluntarily confessed that he had seized a sheep out of a troop grazing in the veld, and cut its throat, and that, when the shepherd became aware of it, he had fired at him, and had hit him so with shot that his leg had been broken, and in his buttock or thigh he had a big hole, but that he could not complain of that, as he knew that he had done wrong. Speaking to the Captains of the kraals and saying that there had been a fault on both sides, on the one hand the theft committed by one of their men, for which he was liable to be hanged, and on the other that the Dutchman had acted wrongly by taking the law into his own hands, they replied that they did not think that the Dutchman had acted wrongly, as if they had been innocently molested they would already have laid their complaint before the Governor, and that the Dutchman was justified in what he did, as they (the Hottentoes) were such fast runners that a Dutchman would not be able to overtake them, and that they were also satisfied, when any of their Hottentoes had stolen cattle, that they should be punished with the cord. To this we replied that if any Dutchmen stole their cattle, they were not to hurt them, but seize and bring them to the Fort, in order to be punished according to what they deserved. . . ."—(Signed) J. CRUSE and J. MARQUAERT. In my presence, as Provisional Fiscal. (Signed) Gt. MULDER.

June 22nd.—The Secretary, Harbourmaster, and Master Carpenter return on shore from the *Phoenix*, accompanied by our English friends, who thanked the Governor for having had the inspection made, and for the assistance promised by him, and assured him that they would land nothing that might be prejudicial to the Company without previous permission. They also brought a present with them, which we kindly received, and which, by the Governor's orders, was for the present deposited in the store, in order, afterwards, when required, to judge of its value.

The wagon from Hottentoes Holland brings a load of straw and the skin of a lion shot there by our men. The letter of the superintendent mentioned that he had received the monthly

1676.

rations and the 12 quarts of brandy, &c., for the wounded in good order, and given 2 quarts of brandy and 2 lbs. of tobacco to Captain Claas, in order to make him more favourably disposed towards us. He had also been told that they were presents from the Governor himself, for which that African felt very much obliged, and expressed his thanks. The superintendent also mentioned that contrary to our expectation he had not been able, as the season had passed, to sow more than 34 muids of wheat, but that he still saw a chance of sowing a portion of the lands with rye. . . . Some wooden shovels, iron shod, sent to him.

June 23rd.—The English captain and some officers land, and after having paid their respects to the Governor, rode out on horseback, accompanied by Lieutenant J. Cruse and the master carpenter, to the forest, about 3 miles distant inland, to see whether they might not find a serviceable mast for their injured vessel.

The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with the goods asked for and a note to the superintendent, stating that we had been advised by his letter of the information communicated to him by Captain Claas that the Hottentoots, called Hessequas, were camped with their kraals 10 or 12 days' journey from this, and were very much inclined to barter with us; that this, however, was at present too premature a business to enter into as they were still too far away; but should they come nearer, and the bad season had in the meanwhile ended, we would further consider the matter. The hooker *de Bode* leaves for Mauritius. God grant that she may bring us a large quantity of lime and other material, which are so necessary here for completing the new fortifications, and the more so as everything shipped for us in the wrecked flute *St. Lourens* has been lost.

June 24th.—Our English friends return to the forest this morning with their men, in order to take from it a log which they deemed fit for repairing their broken masts. They return in the evening.

June 25th.—The English officers again state that if we do not help them with spars, they will not be able to leave. Reiterated the reasons why we could not help them; but in order to get rid of these unpleasant foreign guests and avoid all backbiting and misunderstanding, we allowed them to take some timber from the forest. This they commenced to do yesterday.

A placcaat issued this morning regarding the sale of sugar (? ginger) beer. "Whereas some selfish servants of the Company, in spite of the heavy pay which they draw from the Company, do not hesitate to make money with such and other traffic (*schache-rijen*); and whereas many of the freemen require for themselves for their subsistence and that of their families the small profits

derived from the sale of that beer, and they should accordingly be protected, the sale of sugar beer by servants of the Company, as being an absurd thing, is strictly forbidden."

June 26th.—This morning the Governor, accompanied by the Captain of the Castle, proceeded to below Table Mountain and neighbourhood in this valley to inspect the cripple bushes growing all about, so that in time they may serve as fuel. But in consequence of their daily use, and that everyone could cut down as much as he required, the supply had been very much diminished, so that the placcaat forbidding the cutting of any kind of wood or cripple bush in this Table valley will again be renewed. His Honour also went to inspect the "Waterplace" behind the tail of the Lion Mountain to see whether no trees could be planted there, in order to serve in course of time as fuel. 27th. Some vegetables sent on board the English ship to refresh our friends there.

June 28th (Sunday).—During the afternoon the English captain landed to thank the Governor for the ground fruit sent him in return for what we had received from him. He again begged us to help him in the refitting of his dismantled vessel, which we promised to do as far as we were able, provided we were well paid for doing so. To-day we did our duty by attending Divine Service twice.

June 29th.—The Governor proceeds with some friends to the kraals of the neighbouring Hottentoots. Our English friends very busy working at their masts, in order to fit them in their places. 30th. The Governor returns late at night, having found the kraals of Cuijper, Schacher, and Houtebeen at the Diepe Rivier, situated about 5 hours away towards the interior. He had passed the night there with his friends. The main object of his going was to present the aforesaid Hottentoo Captains with some things of trifling value, in order to attach them the more to the Company. As they are poorly provided with cattle, we only obtained 10 cattle and 10 sheep from them. On his return hither, His Honour also inspected the corn lands of the freemen, and found that all the seed had already been put into the ground, whilst a few were still busy sowing barley. The corn was already standing very green, and much more seed had been sown than last year. The success of a good harvest we leave to God and time.

July 1st.—The English captain this morning, after having welcomed the Governor back, troubled us for some cordage, as he maintained that he could not do without it to refit his vessel. We were obliged to grant his request; and in order to assure these friends, according to all outward appearance, of our good feelings towards them we have permitted them to inspect the Company's equipment depôt to see whether there was any serviceable cordage,

1676.

with the promise that we will let them have what is required, provided that it be properly paid for. Beforehand, however, we ordered the harbour master to set aside all the good and serviceable cordage, in order to hide it from our friends, that it may serve us when required.

Two wagons arrive from Hottentoots Holland with chaff, straw, and 142 lbs. salted meat. Things were going on well there, and our orders are being properly carried out. The Hottentoots were again coming thither with cattle, and a few days ago we had bartered from them a young beast and six sheep. Petition sent for tobacco, pipes, and other things to be used on occasion for the trade. 2nd. The wagons leave with the supplies and merchandise. The Governor writes to the superintendent that he was by no means pleased that he had given 60 lbs. rice to the Hottentoots who were keeping the crows away from the land, and orders that henceforth those birds are to be driven off by the men of the garrison. That, however, he will overlook it this time, but that in future he will have to account for the rice, as he is not authorised to bring such new expenditure into vogue. But should the Hottentoots come down for rice, the opportunity should not be neglected, but made the best use of. For that purpose he receives the tobacco, beads, &c., now sent him. 3rd. At their request our English friends receive a piece of timber for a "malwagen." The superintendent on the Island permitted to pay a visit to the Cape, and a corporal sent over to take temporary charge. The preparation sermon for the ministration of the Holy Communion was preached this afternoon (Friday). 5th (Sunday). Holy Communion celebrated.

July 6th.—The assistant, Salomon de Leeuw, and the master butcher sent to Hottentoots Holland to make complete returns of the cattle and effects of the Company there, and the land surveyor, Johan Wittebol, to discover a suitable spot for a stone redoubt. The superintendent ordered to render them every assistance, and point out to the latter such material as will be required, and when the current month is ended to come to the Cape, leaving the command there to a suitable person, in order personally to report on the crops and conditions there.

During the afternoon the Governor and the members of the Council dined at the house of the Captain, where there also enjoyed themselves the English Captain, his brother, and two English ladies. This was done to afford them as much recreation as possible, in order to give them no cause for dissatisfaction, but when we come to the settlement for what they have received, we shall certainly know how to charge them.

July 7th.—To prevent all suspicious actions, it has been considered not inexpedient, as the master butcher has been sent to

Hottentoots Holland, to whom the superintendence of the Company's cattle in this neighbourhood has been entrusted, to commission the Lieutenant of the Fort and the Fiscal to frame an extra return of all the Company's cattle at Hout Bay, behind the Steenberg and elsewhere, to see whether anything may be found tending to the injury of the Company.

July 9th.—Fine weather. The Governor proceeds in the afternoon to the "Schuur," and found the crops there in a desirable condition, so that next year, if God the Lord will only grant his further blessing, an opulent harvest may be expected.

Late at night the Commissioners return from Hout Bay with the report that they had found everything in proper order at the Company's kraals there. They had left on Tuesday afternoon (the 7th) at 4 o'clock, and passed the night at the farm of the burgher, Wouter Mostaert, named "Weltevreden," and early the next morning arrived at Bommelshoeck, and there found, after counting:—

Ewes fit for breeding	..	..	..	250
This year's wethers	..	..	..	100
This year's ewe lambs	..	..	..	100
Old and young ewes, unfit for breeding				136
Total	..	..		586

Leaving Bommelshoeck, we arrived behind the Steenberg about noon, and there found:—

Oxen fit for work	..	..	..	16
Cows	..	..	..	76
Heifers	..	..	..	60
Calves (oxen 4, heifers 30)	..	..	..	34
Bulls	..	..	..	1
Pack oxen	..	..	..	2
Cows in calf	..	..	..	18
Total	..	..		207

Left the Steenberg the same day, and arrived in the evening at Hout Bay, at the "Boereboomen," where we passed the night, and early the next morning collected the cattle in the kraal, and found that there were:—

Draught oxen	..	..	..	59
Draught cows	..	..	..	6
Calves	..	..	..	7
Total	..	..		82 (? 72)

1676.

There are besides 8 draught oxen among the hunters at the Ruijter stal. At the "Boereboomen" we found:—

Ewes fit for breeding	280
This year's wethers	90
This year's ewe lambs	70
Rams	6
Old and young ewes, unfit for breeding..	140
Total	586

We also found in the neighbourhood:—

Pigs	44
--------------	----

Left Hout Bay about 9 a.m., and at noon arrived at the "Schuur," where we found:—

Draught oxen in daily use	71
Milch cows	20
Calves (viz.: bulls 20, and heifers 18) ..	38
Total	129

At our departure we ordered the herds to look well after their charge, and if the Hottentoots came too near with their cattle, they had to let us know, that we might make them retire.

We left the "Schuur," and then arrived

At the residence of Pieter Vassagie, where we found	40
" " Albert Barents, "	40
" Rietvallei "	54
" Fort "	40
Total	174

The master butcher we found had 20 sheep.

(Signed) 7th-9th July, 1676, J. Cruse and Gerbt. Mulder.

July 10th.—Arrival of two large spiegel ships *Het Wapen van Zierikzee* and *Ter Goes*, the first destined to Batavia and the other to Ceylon, both equipped by Middelburgh. The *Zierikzee* had 284 men, and lost 5; and the *Ter Goes* 238 men, of whom 10 had been committed to the deep. The one brought 24 and the other 11 sick. They brought no news of interest, and, according to the Directors, little could as yet be said regarding the peace. The Ambassadors were gradually reaching Nymegen, but some time must still elapse before they could enter into negotiations; moreover, it was still quite uncertain what might be decided by the plenipotentiaries. In the meanwhile, France Our Country,

Germany, and the Spanish Netherlands were all arming heavily. God grant that we may soon have the desired success.

The officers reported that they had called at St. Jago, where the Portuguese had informed them of the loss of the *St. Lourens*, and that they had not been able to obtain good accommodation there from the Portuguese, mainly because (as they had been informed) seven of our Zealand Privateers had called there, and on their own authority had taken what they liked without paying for anything. A small French vessel which was lying at anchor there, they had chased through the rocks to the sea, but they did not know whether she was finally abandoned or captured by them. The officers were therefore obliged to pretend that those vessels were of Amsterdam; for if the Portuguese knew that they came from Zealand, they would have obtained nothing there. They accordingly obtained some water and refreshments, though they had to pay heavily for the latter. A small English vessel which was lying there, and named *Willem van Crusten*, informed them that 5 French war ships, each carrying 50 guns, had proceeded hither to lie in wait for our out and homeward bound ships. The result time will show.

July 11th.—To prevent all disorders, &c., often caused by the officers and other lesser officials, especially soldiers and sailors of the vessels in the Bay, it was decided to renew a *Piaccat* formerly issued on the subject. For this purpose the Fiscal and two Commissioners proceeded on board the vessels to affix it.

The Commissioners despatched to Hottentoots Holland, to count the cattle there returned late this evening and report—(See 6th July).

That after careful personal investigations they found that there were 199 cattle; viz:—66 draught oxen and 133 young ones; 118 cows, that is, 20 milch cows, 10 cows in calf; 9 cows not bearing any; 25 large heifers; 54 young heifers; 21 calves; 1 bull; 333 sheep; 20 horses; 2 mules; 8 geese and 3 ducks.

Of grain there were:—15 muids of wheat; i.e., 13 muids seed, and $\frac{1}{2}$ muid Bengal wheat, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ Bengal, dirty Bengal used for forage for the horses—also 7 muids barley.

(Here follows a list of the agricultural implements, ammunition, &c., at the Post, which it will not be necessary to insert here.)

On Thursday morning the cattle were again counted, and Surveyor Wittebol carefully inspected the place selected by you, and found it very suitable as a site for a stone redoubt, it being elevated, and affording a fine view over the Company's lands and the sea shores. But to protect it from heavy rains it will be necessary to sink the foundations four or five feet deep, especially if the redoubt be erected somewhat near to the river, otherwise there will be no difficulty. The stones required for the purpose are not far from the spot at the foot of a hilly mountain to the south of

1676.

the river, and can be easily obtained by undermining. We also found that Sergeant Visser had already some time ago quarried several loads which are lying ready for use, but to transport them a molewagon would be required, but, as the Sergeant says, before the end of this month, July, hardly any hands can be spared for the purpose, as "all are urgently needed for manuring and ploughing the land, sowing barley, and cleaning the cattle kraals." For the same reason no men can be spared for collecting shells, of which not more than from 16 to 20 tuns will be obtainable, and which besides, are to be collected one by one. Regarding the wood work for the redoubt, we have inspected the nearest forests, but could find in them no trees thicker than 6 or 7 inches in diameter, and from 16 to 18 feet long at the most, which will besides have to be dragged down from the steep places with great trouble. But as the carpenter informed us that there were forests further away which will most likely contain heavier and better timber, we deemed it necessary in order to give you an exact report on everything, to visit those also. But on arrival there we certainly found a few trees heavier than those above described, but also that it would be impossible to remove them with wagons because of two steep intervening hills. This being what we have done we trust that we have carried out your orders in every respect . . .

(Signed) Salomon de Leeuw, Jochum Marquaert and Joan Wittebol.—Dated 11th July, 1672.

One of the nearest resident Hottentoo Captains named Schacher came to present the Governor in his own way with an ox, for which (as their object principally tends in that direction) he was given some rice and tobacco, with which this African returned home well contented.

July 12th (Sunday).—Fine weather. Celebrated the Lord's day of rest in the usual manner. 13th. Some soldiers landed to work at the fortifications. 14th. The Governor inspects all the works, and issues such orders as will hurry on the fortifications in this fine weather. Some provisions and other necessaries landed from *Het Wapen van Zierikzee*. 15th. The soldiers sent to Hout Bay to cut fuel returned.

July 16th.—The Governor inspects the redoubts Keert de Koe and Kijckuijt, which are now completed and found the work massive and permanent, so that they will require no attention for a long time. The hooker, *De Swaartvis*, returned from Hout Bay with fuel for the lime kilns.

July 17th.—The English ship *Phoenix* fires some guns and flew a signal of distress. It appeared that her boat and sloop had in one way or another got adrift, and were already a good distance

out in the Bay. A sailing boat was sent after them to prove our good feeling to our friends, and when they had been brought back they were handed to their owners. During the afternoon the Captain landed and civilly thanked the Governor for his kind assistance.

The Court of Justice condemns two soldiers, who instead of doing their nightly patrol duty had debauched themselves with strong drink, to ride the wooden horse for 3 days with a 25 lb. weight attached to each leg, and after that to serve as convicts on Robben Island for 2 years. Some burgher cases were also disposed of. 19th. (Sunday). Usual Divine Services.

July 21st. — One of the boats returns from Robben Island with 100 goats. Things were in a very good state.

July 22nd. — In accordance with the orders of the Directors contained in their despatch of the 15th May, 1671, and who had urgently required that four times annually a parade of the burghers was to take place at the Fort, it was decided by resolution of the 10th instant to have a general wapenshaw of all men capable of bearing arms, both servants of the Company and burghers, and therefore this morning about 7 o'clock the drums were beaten for the rendezvous, and after the military and other servants had fallen in in the new Fortress, they were conducted outside the Fort by the Lieutenant of the Garrison to behind the houses of the freemen. In the meanwhile the burghers also marched from their usual meeting place in good order towards our men, whom they joined, and also a Mounted Company (als ooc een Cornet paarden). Thus arranged and divided into Companies or Standards, excepting the horsemen, they marched three times past the residence of the Governor, and afterwards behind the houses of the freemen, and then retired. Our Garrison was entertained with a "soopie," whilst the freemen instead of six dollars allowed them by the Directors in the Fatherland for time lost on such occasions, received half a leaguer of Spanish wine, 300 lb. biscuits and a cask of pork, with which they were well pleased. This general parade which we had carried out to the utmost of our power with all practicable means, caused great surprise among our English friends, who had also looked on, and who beheld our fine Garrison and the formidable power which we could command should an enemy arrive. After the parade the English Captain, his brother, and the two English ladies (leddies), and the officials of the Company were entertained at dinner by the Governor and treated to a glass of wine. 26th. (Sunday). Usual divine services.

July 27th. — The *Bruyd* arrived from Saldanha Bay with eggs and fish, &c. The Englishman has at last finished his mainmast and takes it on board this afternoon, 28th. To-day we saw to.

1676.

our joy that the Englishman had stepped his mast, so that the vessel once more commences to look like a ship, whilst on its arrival it was a mere wreck. We hope to get these needy guests soon from our necks. 29th. Departure of the *Zierikzee* and *Het Wapen ter Goes* to Batavia and Ceylon.

July 29th.—The Commissioners appointed to take stock of the Provision Depots, that the latter may be transferred to the newly arrived dispenser, Jacobus Hinlopen, submit their written report. The other stores will be investigated in the same way, and the books balanced for the past half-year. Rice and other voluminous articles to be excepted. Here follow the contents of the various stores, which are mentioned as Nos. 1, 2 and 3; the great rice store, the train oil store and the corn loft.—(Signed) Ms. VAN BANCHAM and Gt. MULDER.

July 30th.—The Superintendant on the Island reports that some of the convicts were suffering from dropsy and other natural diseases, which delays the work there considerably.

July 31st.—The Secretary and Fiscal appointed to audit the cash, &c., in the care of the Cashier, submit that on this day, 31st, they had found in the hands of the Cashier Johannes Ravensberg, in various kinds of specie, a balance of f2421.10.—(Signed) Ms. VAN BANCHAM and Gt. MULDER.

August 1st.—The Governor proceeds to the “Coornschuij” to look at the sown lands there. He ordered the Master Agriculturist, Hendrik Elberse, to build a small kitchen, somewhat away from the dwelling house in order to prevent the possibility of fires which had nearly occurred during his presence there, if it had not been prevented by God’s goodness. The Commissioner for examining the equipment stores submit their report, which is signed by Guiliam van de Stappen and J. H. Blum. 2nd. Fine rain during the night for the crops. Celebrated our religious services as usual.

August 3rd.—It was taken into consideration that for a considerable time for reasons the Company had had no men as a garrison at Saldanha Bay, which with its islands had hitherto been navigated and frequented by the free Saldanha traders, and that it was necessary again to renew our Company’s old and lawful possession there. Accordingly we have despatched thither for the purpose the vessels *De Waagman* and *De Bruyd*, the latter belonging to the free Saldanha traders. They take with them some stones on which the arms of the United Netherlands have been cut, as well as the mark of the Netherlands Chartered E. I. Company, with orders to the Ensign of this garrison, Jacob Coon, and Willem van Diedem,

licensed caretaker of the aforesaid bay and islands (who have been commissioned by us for the purpose) to erect the aforesaid arms and mason them in well, and also to renew the old possession in all places, where in course of time any European nations might call for water or other necessaries. In erecting these signs of possession they shall make use of such confirmation as has always been customary. The vessels leave towards evening.

The Lieutenant and Ensign report on the Company's gunpowder. Details given:—The Depositories mentioned as “Below the Westpoint,” “Below the Sea Point,” “Below the North Point,” “In the Horn Works” and “To the Westside.”—(Signed) J. CRUSE and J. CROON.

August 4th.—In consequence of a severe N.W. storm the two vessels (see August 3rd) were obliged, when already as far as Dassen Island to put back to the Cape.

August 6th.—The stormy weather during the past night caused considerable leakage in various buildings. The Governor accordingly went out on a personal inspection, and ordered the masons at once to attend to the leaks, especially those in a certain building erected a few months ago for a brewery, and which threatened to collapse entirely if not at once shored up.

The Commissioners appointed to examine the armoury, report as follows:—In the new armoury, adjoining the Secretariat, are the following arms, belonging to the Government:—

17 halberts inlaid with silver; 1 do. without silver; 12 whole pikes with their covers, without stocks, and inlaid with silver; 1 half pike, also inlaid with silver; 3 muskets, silver mounted, the barrel of one of which is inlaid with silver; 3 loose musket barrels, also inlaid with silver; 2 carbines with copper barrels; 1 “Mayers” gun with copper mounting and lock; 1 children's musket and “vorquet” stock; 4 pistols, inlaid with silver; 1 toy pistol (poffertje), plain; 1 dagger with hilt and scabbard; 1 do. with a silver handle and scabbard; 1 Spanish sword without a scabbard; 1 small Cingalese cutlass without a scabbard; 1 “Nayers” cutlass without a scabbard; 1 do. sword, do.

The following arms are deposited in the places named:—

4 new and 4 old standards in the new Armoury.

7 halberts, *i.e.*, 4 in the new and 3 in the old Armoury, one without a staff, and 2 old-fashioned ones.

8 halberts (partesaans), 1 in the new and 7 in the old room.

101 muskets (snaphanens), *i.e.*, 12 in the new and 74 in the old room, 13 in the smithy, 1 in the horse stable, 1 with the Ensign Hendrik Croon; 11 drumskins in the new room; 51 blunderbusses, *i.e.*, 49 in the old room, 1 in the stable, and 1 in the smithy; 10 flint guns in the old room; 12 carbines with copper barrels in do.; 88½ pairs pistols, *i.e.*, 80½ pairs in the old room,

1876.

7 pairs in the horse stable, 1 pair belonging to the Governor, and 1 pair belonging to Ensign Croon.

310 muskets in the old room; 44 carbines, *i.e.*, 38 in the old room and 6 with the gunsmith; 12 do., unserviceable, without locks, in the old room; 4 do. barrels in the old room; 4 "voetbouden" (? voetbogen, cross-bows) with their locks and 12 springs (bengels) in do.; 1 two-handed sword in do.; 1 long sword in do.; 30 moulds, *e.g.*, 8 metal bullet moulds, two for shot, and 22 single bullet moulds; 2 air guns on do.; 2 Damascus cutlass blades; 218 crooked and straight cutlasses with their sheathes; 2 new drums with their belongings in do.; 10 unfit drumbarrels in do.; 4 barrels on which to fix the drums in do.; 3 prepared black calfskins in do.; 376 bandoliers, *e.g.*, 210 old and 166 new in do.; 62 sword belts, *viz.*, 38 good and 24 unfit ones in do.; 30 carbine straps, *e.g.*, 19 with iron hooks and 14 without any, in do.; 16 long pike staffs in do., and 266 pikes, *e.g.*, 167 whole ones, *viz.*: 135 in the old armoury, of which 52 have square points, and 32 in the respective guard houses; 99 half ones and "drielingen," *e.g.*, 55 with broad, 38 with square points, in the old, and 6 in the new armoury. Total, 266 assorted pikes, 6 cutlass belts in the old room, 12 assegaies in do.; 100 drum lines in do.; 5 drumsticks in do.; 200 "forquet" sticks; 236 different powder measures; a number of old arms, such as muskets, small sword cutlasses and their sheathes; broken barrels and stocks which are useless, all in do.; 8 cartridge belts; 50 stirrup straps, *viz.*: 18 new and 12 old, in do., and 20 daily used at the stable; 36 bits, *viz.*: 3 old and 10 new in the old Chamber and 23 at the stables; 21 saddles, including 1 for a lady, at the stables; 20 halters in do.; 55 forepieces, *viz.*: 20 at the stables and 35 above the Sergeant Van der Stappen; 28 cruppers, *viz.*: 20 at the stables and 8 above the sergeant's (room); 25 headstalls, *viz.*: 23 in the stables and 2 above Van der Stappen; 156 saddle straps as above; 125 girths, *e.g.*, 20 in the stable and 105 above Van der Stappen; 421 bundles matches, besides a large quantity in the warehouse; 5,250 lbs. musket, gun and crossbar shot bullets, consisting of 52 kegs in the warehouse at 100 lbs. each, and $\frac{1}{2}$ one in the old room = $52\frac{1}{2}$ kegs = 5,250 lbs.; 2 powder kegs of 100 lbs., of which the one is $\frac{3}{4}$ ths, and the other $\frac{2}{3}$ ths filled with Fatherland flints, in the old armoury; 1 case about half-full with Ceylon flints, in do.; 1 bullet keg with amaril, in do.; 1 empty tun for the removal of powder and grenades (beurston); 2 bundles iron wire "schutboren" and "laatpriemen," in do.; in a small case in the old Chamber, 10,692 copper nails for carts and saddles, *e.g.*, 442 large, 4,250 medium, and 3,000 small size, and 3,000 very small ones; 2 carts with their harness and belongings for 4 horses, in the stables; 1 wagonette which Mr. Goske had made, with its belongings, in do.; 2 wagons with harness for 4 horses in do.; 9 donkey carts with their harness in do.

In a box in the old Armoury are deposited : 8 pumprod "hearts"; 1 copper pump; 1 wooden do.; 3 fixtures (aanhangen), and 2 wooden taps for the same; 1 "schutboor"; 5 file handles; 1 meat knife; 2 shark hooks; 4 copper taps; 1 do. adze; 1 fish knife; 3 copper lamps; 1 table bell; 1 copper powder funnel; 1 iron snuffer; 1 bundle thin iron wire; 2 wire pliers; 1 pair of pincers; 2 "ellegaars"; 1 harpoon; 1 iron casting ladle; 2 leaden $\frac{1}{2}$ lb., and 5, 4, 3, 2 and 1 lb. iron weights; 1 copper standard measure of 3 lbs.; 2 drills; 2 grappling irons; 2 lancets; 2 wooden scales and balance; 3 "voetbouden" with their locks and 10 springs; 1 iron and 1 wooden hammer; 2 powder horns; 4 wooden and 2 copper cartridge moulds of 3 lbs.; 2 match stocks; 43 sail and 35 cartridge needles; $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. cartridge string and $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. sewing thread; 12 divers files; a little ruddle; 5 tailors' thimbles; 10 bundles cotton; 1 cartridge scissor; 1 bit with iron stock; 1 powder lantern, and 1 rotten trumpet. — Thus found at Cabo de Boa Esperance, the 4th, 5th, and 6th August, 1676. — (Signed) BERGH and VAN BREUGEL.

August 7th. — In order as much as possible to prevent disorders among the military, the Governor, this morning, gave the Captain of the garrison the General Articles of War, in order to be read by him from time to time to the soldiers in garrison here, that they may not be able to plead ignorance of the same, but be kept under good discipline. Ere this no copy of these articles existed here. Rainy weather.

August 8th. — The Governor visits the Rustenburg garden. The English ship *Phenix*, which has been here so long, is now able to leave. We contracted with the officers for the amount indebted to us, as they had not sufficient specie for payment, and accepted from them as much wine and brandy as would cover the debt. The liquor thus obtained to be sold to the innkeepers, and also used for our own consumption.

August 9th. — Rainy, dirty weather. Nevertheless Divine services were twice conducted this day.

August 10th. — The Master Butcher, Jochum Marquaert, proceeds to Hottentoots Holland to fetch thence some milch cows. He takes a letter from the Governor to the Superintendent, who is to report how things are going on there, and when he intends starting bartering with the Hossequas Nation, and how far the latter and the kraals of Captain Claas are distant from him; and to hand a list of articles required for the barter.

August 11th. — This morning early being informed that the English had dared to proceed to Salt River in their boat, without having previously asked permission, and to such a spot, which for

1676

various reasons create suspicion, we at once sent an express thither with orders to tell them at once to leave. This was promptly obeyed, when the Governor, in presence of the merchant and secunde, Sieur Hendrik Crudop and the Captain of the Castle, Dirck Jansz: Smient, told the English Captain that if it happened again without our knowledge we would, for the reasons mentioned, be obliged to seize those who thus offended, and treat them according to law. The Captain replied, that it would not happen again without our consent, and requested remission (? of punishment) for what had occurred. He thereupon left. During the afternoon the Governor proceeded to the Salt River to see whether, near its mouth, there was not a suitable spot for a redoubt, to be garrisoned with one or two men, as it is a smuggling place for our ships, as well as those of foreigners. Rain the whole day.

August 12th.—The officers of the *Phoenix*, which is now quite ready for sea, pay us for the cordage and wood received from us at different times with 6 cases of bottles containing wine and brandy, and to our particular joy took leave of us at dinner with the drinking of a glass of wine. They will take with them a letter to Batavia, couched in such terms that it may be safely entrusted to them. 13th. The *Phoenix* leaves. It is to be wished that in future such needy and unpleasant guests would pass this place, the more so as they can with difficulty be satisfied.

August 14th.—The Commissioners for inspecting the Company's warehouses, especially the copper, lead, cannons, balls, &c., stored in them, report as follows: The war material consist of: 29,185 round balls, viz.: 355 of 2 lbs., 408 of 3 do., 722 of 4 do., 884 of 6 do., 1,958 of 8 do., 1,485 of 10 do., 7,504 of 12 do., 10,710 of 18 do., 5,159 of 24 do., total, 29,185; 1,433 long projectiles, viz.: 55 at 3 lb., 138 at 4 do., 259 at 6 do., 124 at 8 do., 117 at 10 do., 423 at 12 do., 199 at 18 do., and 118 at 24 do.; total, 1,433; 2,070 handgrenades; some pieces of all kinds of balls, handgrenades, bullets (kneppels), fit for nothing else but grape.—(Signed) GULLIAM VAN DE STAPPEN and A. VAN BREUGEL.—The Fort of Good Hope, the 14th August, 1676.

The abovementioned Commissioners further report that there were:—In the cellar in the old Fort, 7 copper kettles, viz.: 3 old fish kettles and 3 do. small ships' do. with 2 covers, 1 new large one with its cover; 7 pots, viz.: 6 metal ones, of which 5 are broken and unfit for use, 1 iron do., also unfit; 2 copper cooks' pans; 2 do. cooks' spoons; 1 small metal bell; 2 do. discs (of the *Soetendal*); 2 large iron scissors for cutting copper; 1 copper garden watering can; 2 large wooden lanterns; 1 hogshhead full of potash; $\frac{1}{2}$ cask raw alum; $\frac{1}{2}$ anker burnt do.; $\frac{1}{4}$ cask gall nuts; 1 small bag gum; 2 broken mole traps; 54 double iron lock-plates; 32 single do.; 969 lbs. steel in bars; 2 helmets; 2 hose-

pipes; 400 lbs. white lead; 6,264 lbs. copper, viz.: 787 lbs. plate copper, consisting of 651 lbs. small yellow copper plates; 136 red do.; 2,620 lbs. wire copper, *e.g.*, 1,891 lbs. yellow and 720 lbs. red; 262 lbs. old copper; 530 lbs. chips; and 2,065 Japan rings; total, 6,264 lbs. copper; 22,077 lbs. lead, *e.g.*, 10,967 lbs. "Schuyt" lead, 11,110 lbs. flat do.; total, 22,077 lbs. lead.

In the large rice warehouse in the New Fort:

1,410 lbs. copper, viz.: 656 lbs. red plate copper and 754 lbs. yellow do.

In the iron warehouse in the New Fort:

1,245 lbs. steel, consisting of large staves, and 37,875 lbs. nails in 59 kegs.

In the traffic store in the New Fort:

3,078 lbs. flat lead.

In the Governor's kitchen:

73 lbs. red copper, consisting of 2 ovenplates (56 lbs. yellow copper is a plate).—Signed as above.

August 15th.—The Master Butcher returns from Hottentoots Holland with 12 milch cows and 20 sheep. Matters there were in good order.

As many residents and even servants of the Company, for their own convenience and profit, cut down wood behind this Fortress on the slopes of Table Mountain, serviceable for fuel and enclosures for their gardens, &c., notwithstanding the placcaat of 1671, which has for some time fallen into abeyance; and as this tends to considerably injure the Company, which in consequence is obliged to obtain fuel from a great distance at heavy cost, as the wood now growing in the neighbourhood is as yet unfit for use, and that the latter, allowed to grow, will in proper time in an emergency become a guarantee for daily use, it was, to-day, decreed by placcaat, to forbid this indiscriminate cutting of fuel, except to those who have obtained special permission for the purpose. The penalty to be very severe. The Governor visits the "Coornschuur" to inspect the cornlands. He found them in a good state.

The Commissioners for making returns of the iron and cannon report as follows:—We found in the Depot 122 staves lump iron; weighing 6,780 lbs.; 652 square staves, weighing 30,568 lbs.; 605 flat do., weighing 21,223 lbs.; 1,379 staves, weighing 58,571 lbs.—(Signed) GULLIAM VAN DER STAPPEN and J. H. BLUM.

Return of the Company's ordnance:

90 cannons, viz.: 78 iron ones, i.e., 12 twenty-four pounders; divided as follows:—2 for the main guard; 2 on the West Point;

1676.

2 on the North Point ; 2 on the Sea Point ; 2 on the East Point ; 2 on the "getijpte" Point, or 12 in all of 24 lb. balls ; 29 eighteen pounders, viz. : 7 on the West Point ; 4 on the North Point ; 6 on the Sea Point ; 6 on the East Point ; 6 on the "getijpte" Point. 28 twelve pounders, viz. : 7 on the West Point ; 6 on the North Point ; 2 on the Sea Point ; 6 on the East Point ; 7 on the "getijpte" Point. 3 three pounders for the Horn Work, and 6 iron ten pounders on the Sea Point. Grand Total, 78 pieces. 12 metal guns, viz. : 2 bell metal pieces of 6 lbs. for the rice warehouse in the N. Fort ; 2 do. of 4 lbs. for the said rice store ; 2 do. of 2 lb. balls as above ; 4 do. of 18 lbs. on the North Point ; 2 do. of 8 lbs. on the East Point, or a total of 12 pieces. Grand total, 90 guns of various calibre.—(Signed) GULLIAM VAN DER STAPPEN and ALBERT VAN BREUGEL, H. Son.

August 16th (Sunday).—Beautiful weather, in which we celebrated our usual Divine Services.

August 17th.—Letter from Superintendent at Robben Island, asking for some medicines for the dropical convicts there.

August 18th.—Council considers the want of cattle, so as to arrange for supplying the out and homeward bound ships. The dearth caused principally by mortality, accidents, and destruction by lions and other wild beasts, whilst the increase can in no wise keep step with the great consumption which generally takes place here. Moreover cattle are urgently needed for carrying on the Fortification Works, and can only be acquired by means of land expeditions, and as the chief of the Hossoquas, through Captain Claas of the Essaquas, invited us to trade with that tribe, from which we would obtain a considerable quantity of cattle, and that they were already for that purpose about 7 days journey from Hottentoots Holland, it was decided to send an expedition thither, especially as that tribe is abundantly supplied with cattle (according to experience) and very much inclined to barter, and to furnish the travellers with all such merchandise as are required and will be most acceptable. Accordingly the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, Lourens Visser and 24 experienced travellers for his assistance, were selected for the purpose. See Resolutions. The *Schulp* leaves for Robben Island with the medicines.

The Commissioners for inspecting the business warehouses report as follows :—

We found in the said stores 174 iron pots. Of *Black Brazilian Tobacco*, mostly spoilt, 217 lbs. quite bad ; 34 do. a little better ; 86 lbs. the best, or a total of 337 lbs. Of *Virginia or Yellow Tobacco*, 195 lbs. externally appearing to be good ; 18 lbs. re-packed, nothing particular. Total, 213 lbs. Two cases filled with

fine tobacco pipes and one not full ; these cases contain 26 gross. One small case with 3 gross and 2 dozen coarse pipes. Four cases filled with glass beads, containing $157\frac{1}{2}$ mas. 3 do. copper beads full, marked O.O.O. ; R.R.R. ; S.S.S. ; containing 2,320 chains, each chain consisting of 100 beads. 658 single bunches copper beads, each bunch consisting of five chains, and each chain of 100 beads. In a box, 20 packets twine and 12 penknives. In a case, 529 gross common copper buttons ; 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. tin, consisting of 7 pieces ; 2 cases numbered 11 and 12, in each 160 pieces Negros cloth, or together 320 pieces. 1 parcel, numbered 6960, containing 20 pieces coarse Guinea cloth ; 1 parcel, numbered 2316, containing 100 black Taffachelas ; 1 parcel, numbered 2336, containing 160 pieces check Chelas. 2 parcels, numbered 907 and 345, with 100 pieces in each, of fine Mouris. 2 parcels coarse Parcal, numbered 5870 and 1754, in each 160 pieces ; total, 320 pieces. 2 parcels coarse Parcal, numbered 1444 and 8873, each containing 160 pieces. 2 parcels double sail cloth, numbers 274 and 335, each containing 40 pieces. 6 double sail cloths ; 75 single do. ; 10 pieces coarse Guinea cloth ; 14 Surat blankets ; 3 coast blankets (damaged) from the *Soetendaal*.

In a case, the following :

22 gross tin silvered buttons ; 25 gross copper gilt buttons ; 6 $\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. fine white thread, 97 lbs. do. of various colours ; 68 pieces, coarse gingham ; 43 $\frac{1}{2}$ pieces narrow blue bafta, 9 pieces broad do. ; 33 made shirts ; 136 pieces taffachelas, 22 do. check chelas ; 98 $\frac{1}{2}$ pieces Nicquancias "boesyn" ; 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. Fatherland coloured silk ; 29 lbs. Indian silk ; 34 pairs ladies' stockings, moth eaten ; 11 pieces allegias ; 1 piece of coarse armosyn ; 4 pairs of men's stockings ; $\frac{1}{2}$ piece fine armosyn ; 3 pieces fine chintz ; 3 pieces cambric (Fatherland) ; 1 piece betthilles d' Oirnael ; 36 pieces fine mouris ; 58 pieces parcallen ; 123 pieces fotas or whore clothing ; 44 $\frac{1}{2}$ pieces coarse chintz ; 4 double photas ; 158 pieces coarse parcallen ; 34 pieces coarse salempouris ; 25 pieces fine mouris (spotted) ; 13 pieces fine Chinese linen (spotted) ; 1 piece coarse Chinese linen ; 6 pieces narrow black coarse camlet (moth eaten) ; 1 do. less nine C. (also moth eaten) ; 4 do. broad coarse camlet (moth eaten) ; 13 $\frac{3}{4}$ C. perpetuam ; 110 $\frac{3}{4}$ C. flowered Haarlem stuff ; 1 case fine window panes ; 2 coarse with coarse do.

In the store loft :

5 cases Surat soap, 4 of which have been badly damaged by rats. 1 case full of powder measures ; 74 pairs Cape shoes ; 3 rolls tarpaulin sail-cloth ; 2 do. French narrow sail-cloth ; 10 rolls sail-cloth (Klaverdoek) ; 36 rolls Dutch sail-cloth ; 20 rolls Osnabruck linen ; 23 rolls Flemish do. ; 24 pieces red bunting ; 24 do. white do. ; 24 do. blue do.

1676.

In a case the following books and guides :

4 books entitled "The Christian Navigator"; 34 grammars; 38 A. B. C. books; 12 little prayer books; 21 Histories of David, as well as of Tobias; 13 A. B. C. boards; 124 bundles quills; one keg full of do.; 4 reams, and 2 books coarse cartridge paper. $1\frac{1}{2}$ reams fine cartridge paper; 1 ream and 8 books large medium; 16 reams and 9 books medium; 28 reams and 1 book small medium paper; 3 full cases of paper marked A. B. and C. containing 20 reams cartridge paper. A case with horse harness containing 24 head stalls and 24 straps for stirrups.

Tinware :

23 two pint measures; 16 pint measures for beer and wine; 14 half-pint measures; 3 salt cellars; 11 mustard pots; 1 wine glass measure; 31 tin cups; 2 chamber pots; 3 dry ware measures; 17 double strands of Fatherland twine; 168 do. single do.; 300 lbs. do. in a cask; 4 strands injured by the rats; 4 packs Bengal twine; 283 strands coarse Mauritius twine; 6 fish lines; $24\frac{1}{2}$ small red Cape skins; 10 black Cape skins; 3 English yellow skins; 5 white skins; 1 pack, No. B. containing 120 lbs. white cotton thread; 52 lbs. white do. cotton thread in 2 bags; 1 cask full of the same; 24 lbs. borax; 6 hides sole leather.

Spices :

52 $\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. cloves; 27 lbs. nutmegs; 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. mace; 59 lbs. cinnamon.—(Signed) M. VAN BANCHEM, and G. MULDER.

August 22nd.—The Governor proceeds to inspect the "Corenschuij" and surrounding lands (as some female slaves had last week been there to clear them of tares). We found that the latter had been completely uprooted. Two wagons arrived from Hottentoots Holland, with 13 muids of wheat. 24th. The wagons return thither with a note to the Superintendent, that as he has been appointed chief of the expedition to the Hossequas, he must be here personally about the 1st of next month, to receive further instructions and select the wares required for bartering purposes; also that we hoped that in the meantime the Hottentoots would come nearer, or at least remain in their present quarters. Further, that in the monthly accounts of the Hottentoot trade we find the number of cattle bartered by him, but not the quantity of tobacco, beads, or anything else which he had given for them. In future this was to be exactly stated, and without neglect, for our information.

August 25th.—The Governor, accompanied by some officials and burgher Councillors, proceeded this morning to the Salt River Pan, where a large number of Company's cattle is stationed. He found the pastures very beautiful.

The Commissioners for taking stock of the various tools, &c., report as follows:—

Carpenters' tools:

14 pit saws; 7 stone do.; 9 stilling do., of which one is broken; 7 pit saws (Kraan Sagen); 7 English pit saws; 4 do. stilling do.; 44 hand saws; 33 bitstocks; 7 chisels; 7 counter-sinks; 13 "Crusier" planes; 12 ploughs; 4 rebate planes; 3 rabbit planes; 11 boring plane chisels; 3 joiners' plane chisels; 1 jointing plane; 12 carpenters' adzes; 20 do. axes; 16 augers of 2 inches; 11 do. of $1\frac{1}{2}$ do.; 9 do. of $1\frac{1}{4}$ do.; 3 do. of 1 do.; 12 do. of $\frac{1}{2}$ do.; 4 do. of $\frac{3}{4}$ do.; 1 "trecken" bore; 2 large pincers; 1 small do.; 7 pump borers; 17 reefline rolls; 10 small gouges; 24 puncheons; 3 half do.; 3 "Vermoor" chisels; 21 inch do.; 4 "goat" or "schuijt" chisels; 2½ inch do.; 14 calking irons; 486 assorted boring rods; 15 knife files; 28 screw jacks.

Masons' tools:

100 trowels; 46 plummets; 31 hammers; 32 masons' do.; 43 "Kalkoven"; 19 large lime brushes; 6 small do.; 65 stonecutters' chisels.

Smiths' and locksmiths' tools.

1 long plane jointer; 1 hand plane; 9 punches; 16 cold chisels; 1 do. hammer; 4 smiths' hammers; 5 "gaatschijven"; 1 drill bore; 1 screw driver; 2 furbishing irons; 2 scraping do.; 3 drills; 3 square bores; 1 anvil; 9 square files; 19 half round do.; 1 cutting file; 1 "oog ijser."

Wagon makers' tools:

12 axes; 3 "Schobbers" or bores.

Curriers' tools:

9 iron hooks; 19 do. scissors; 6 round leather scissors; or "Slegt-klingen"; 5 flaying knives or plane irons, (new); 14 do. (old); 8 do. (small); 35 "Caspel houten"; 16 "Vrijf" do.; 1 sharpening steel.

Millers' tools:

16 edging hammers; 1 mill crank.

Coopers' tools:

13 bent cutting blades; 12 straight do.; 5 "Kroosen"; 2 tap bores; 3 iron braces with their belongings; 4 lines; 3 curved "haal" planes; 5 pick axes; 12 "Slaghoeven"; 2 wooden hammers; 1 driver; 2 bung borers; 1 pair of bellows; 2 leather hose pipes; 2 copper basins: 1 adze with its belongings; 2 branding irons; 3 axes, or broad coopers' bills: 2 copper syphons, one with a cock; 2 iron bores without braces.

Garden and agricultural implements:

46 ploughshares; 64 colters; 17 caps for ploughshares; 83 "Vloeren" for do.; 21 hair spits; 21 hair hammers; 27 new

1076.

scythes; 4 do. old do.; 81 new sieves; 15 old do.; 31 "streeckels"; 50 scythe handles; 19 sickles; 39 iron rings for scythes; 5 whetstones; 11 serviceable fans; 14 unserviceable do.; 3 corn rakes; 37 wooden corn shovels; 14 pieces of wood for making do.; 17 sieves, injured and unfit for use; 441 spades; 132 shovels; 82 shod shovels; 193 spades; 197 broad hooks; 102 round do.; 294 choppers; 40 soap knives; 181 cooks' axes; 10 garden scissors; 162 single pikes; 172 double do.; 52 crowbars; 65 sledge hammers and 14 wedges.

Material for catching whales and seals:

1 harpoon; 6 blubber knives; two blubber pans; 8 lances; 1 train oil spirn; 8 blubber hooks; 4 turning hooks.

Distillery material.

1 spatula; two iron dishes; 2 iron frames for wine distilling; 32 door locks; 9 stock locks; 61 chest do.; 4 padlocks."

Assorted tools:

3 cage irons; 10 scrapers; 27 tailors' scissors; 16 tailors' thimbles; 10 "Kruyplateins"; 78 horn leaves; 166 assorted sail makers' needles; 115 drum skins; two pump irons; 1 metal disc with an iron bolt; and a lot of iron work for a boat.—(Signed) ADRIAAN VAN BRAKEL & DOUW GERBRANTS.

August 26th.—Arrival of *De Vrye Zee* of Delft, with 257 men, of whom 3 had died. Brought no sick. Though she had kept to the West as much as possible, she had nearly fallen into the enemy's hands in the Latitude of Cape Finisterre, where a small English vessel coming from Malaga had warned them of the proximity of 35 French ships, of which 29 were already in sight. Truly a proof of this Englishman's good feeling towards us. Two days later she fell in with 4 Turks but escaped during the night in misty weather. About the same time she encountered a French war ship, which tried to board her, but she also escaped from the enemy.

Very little change had taken place in the condition of our dear Fatherland; all the ambassadors had not yet arrived at Nymegen, but the armies were all in the field, and every vessel available had been sent to sea, whilst His Majesty of Denmark had been assisted by our State with 29 ships under the command of the Lieutenant Admiral Cornelis Tromp. God grant that the long expected peace may once for all be established to the reputation of our State.

August 28th.—After the meeting of the Court of Justice, at 11 o'clock, a placcaat was issued prohibiting everyone of the free residents from tapping or selling sugar beer, as the brewer and lessee of the Cape beer licence have repeatedly notified to us that they will be unable to pay their lease amounts, if no provision be

made on this subject. Notwithstanding, a considerable reduction had been allowed them by Governor Goske and the Hon. Nicolaas Verburgh, lately Commissioner to this Government. The want of hops and sufficient grain for brewing, and the fact that many of the residents earn a living by selling sugar beer, have completely ruined brewer and lessee, so that they cannot pay up for their leases. Hence that the Company may not completely lose the lease money, the prohibition was promulgated. 29th. Some soldiers of the *Vrye Zee* sent to the Forest to cut fuel. 30th (Sunday). The usual religious services, with rainy weather. 31st. Some provisions landed from the *Vrye Zee*.

September 3rd.—The last point of the New Castle finished completely to-day.

September 4th.—Some sheep and lambs sent to the Island to be depastured there.

September 6th (Sunday).—Lovely weather; our usual services held.

September 7th.—The Company's vessel *De Haagman* and the freemen's boat *Bruyt*, with the ensign of the Castle, and the licensed Saldanha Bay trader, Willem van Dieden, on board, return from Saldanha Bay and report that according to our orders they had erected our arms everywhere on the different islands, with the required ceremonies, and that on investigation they had not found any signs of possession having been taken by any European nation, whether French, English, Danish, Portuguese or others.

September 9th.—The free burgher, Willem van Dieden, who with his partner, holds the charter to navigate to Saldanha Bay and the neighbouring islands for the purpose of melting train oil, &c., having been permitted to make a trial trip with the Company's vessel the *Haagman*, to find out whether she would answer his purposes, on his return with her, offers to buy her, as both his vessels were old and no longer fit for the work. Council considers the necessity of keeping the train oil industry going both for the benefit of this settlement and for supplying India; and also that the vessel is badly built and could be spared without inconveniencing the Company; hence after having been inspected and valued by the Harbour Master and Master Carpenter, she was sold to Dieden and his partner for f2300.

The *Vrye Zee* leaves with a favourable breeze.

September 11th.—The wagon returns to Hottentoots Holland with supplies and material. Superintendent Visser is informed by the Governor that he was pleased to read that the Hottentoo Chief Claas had arrived there with the news that the Hossiqua

1676. tribe were still encamped near the "Backley Plaats," and that he (Visser) was to detain Claas with him until the arrival of his Honour there, which, wind and weather permitting, will be next Monday or Tuesday. 13th (Sunday). Divine service held twice this day.

September 14th.—A vehement S. Easter since last night. Meeting of Council this morning. Governor asks whether there was anything that might prevent him from leaving for Hottentoots Holland, or might have occurred since the Resolution on the subject had been adopted. But as nothing had taken place to hinder him, he decided to leave at noon.

Short Journal of events during the journey of Governor Johan Bar to Hottentoots Holland, dated 14th September, 1676, and following days.

September 14th (Monday).—In spite of the S. Easter, the Governor and suite left precisely at 12 o'clock, and reached the resting place "De Kuijlen" at 5 o'clock in the afternoon, where after supper the Governor dispatched a note to Hottentoots Holland, with a wagon which was going thither in the night, informing the Superintendent of his approach.

September 15th.—Left at daybreak with lovely weather, and arrived at the Company's possession at Hottentoots Holland about 10 o'clock in the morning, where everything was found in good order; also the Soeswaas Captain Claas, who had been detained to await the Governor, who found that everything good might be expected from a barter, and therefore ordered the Superintendent to be ready for the expedition with his men, tomorrow. The Governor and his friends inspected a portion of the corn lands which were in a desirable condition.

September 16th.—A heavy N. wind commenced to blow during the night and continued the whole day. Nevertheless Sergeant Visser and his men left, intending to march as far as the foot of the mountain. Captain Claas accompanies him over the mountains to his Kraals. He declined the Governor's request to accompany the Expedition to the Hossiquas to assist at the bartering, as he feared, and not without reason, that the Gounema tribes, his open enemies, might in his absence suddenly surprise his Kraals, just as they had lately done with the Kraals of the Cape Hottentoots, which were very much nearer to the Cape than he is at present. He offered us however, 10 or 12 of his men instead, for which kind offer, and to make him more and more well disposed to the Company, His Honour, after having previously shown him every conceivable courtesy, presented him with some copper beads, tobacco, rice, &c., with which he was much pleased.

September 17th.—The wind succeeded by drizzling rains until the afternoon, when the Governor inspected all the corn lands and the cattle kraal, and appointed another Sergeant as temporary successor to Visser, until the the latter's return. The first thing he had to attend to was to have the corn lands weeded, to repair the Kraal, and further carefully attend to everything; the Governor intending to return to the Cape before daylight to-morrow morning.

September 18th.—With the appearance of Aurora the Governor leaves on his return journey, the wagons having preceded him three hours previously. On the way, at the "Eerste Rivier," he was met by the Hottentoo Captain, Cuijper, whom yesterday we had informed of our return journey; and as he had pitched his Kraals on the spot where we were about to mow hay, and had with his cattle done considerable injury to the Company, and further, as we shall be much in need of hay during the dry Monsoon for food for our cattle, he was told by the Governor, that for the reasons stated, he was to remove from the spot with his Kraals. This was, as far as we could observe, accepted by him without dissatisfaction, after he had been treated with a little arrack, with which he departed well satisfied. About noon we reached the "Kuijlen," where we found encamped with their Kraals the Hottentoo Captains, Thomas, Houtebeen, &c., who were also presented with some beads, tobacco and a dram of arrack, and very much satisfied. About 4 o'clock, after dinner, at the "Kuijlen" we again, thank God! arrived at the Fort, where we found everything in its former state, nothing remarkable having occurred during His Honour's absence. This journal has been kept by me. (Signed) A. DE MAN, First Clerk.

September 19th.—The wagon returns with necessaries, &c., to the Hottentoo Holland, with orders to the Superintendent to have the corn lands thoroughly weeded, and hay made. Further he was to continue ploughing, to have the kraal repaired and build a kitchen; and also take every opportunity to obtain information regarding our travellers, and when the month is expired, to let us know.

September 20th (Sunday).—Divine Services as usual. N. W. wind.

September 21st.—The Lieutenant appointed to examine whether any hay might be collected behind the Tigerbergen, reported this evening that there was still a good quantity, the more so as no Hottentoots had as yet, this year, squatted there with their Kraals. Some mowers will therefore be sent thither without delay.

September 22nd.—Most desirable weather, especially for the

1676!

works. The Orphan Masters appeared this afternoon before the Governor, and in a quite improper manner troubled him—the President of that Board especially being very impertinent—demanding that the free burgher, Willem van Dieden, who is at present on the point of leaving for Saldanha Bay in order to continue the train oil business there, might be arrested and made to remain here, that he might pay them the sum of f1500 which is due to them, according to acknowledgment on behalf of the two minor daughters of his wife by a former marriage. In order to prove that His Honour desired to lend a helping hand to the Orphan Masters in everything, he ordered the Secretary of the Orphan Chamber, Johannes Pretorius, to notify to the said Willem van Dieden that he was not to leave before he had given satisfaction to the Orphan Chamber; the Governor letting the impertinent and annoying conduct of the Orphan Masters stand over until to-morrow.

September 23rd.—This morning the burgher, W. van Dieden, informed the Governor of the loss and shame caused him by being detained here by the Orphan Masters, promising that he would this very day render ample security. He had wished however, that he had been treated otherwise. Thereupon the Governor promised him every assistance. At noon the Orphan Masters came to inform the Governor that van Dieden had satisfied them, when they were ordered to appear before him “collegialiter” in the afternoon. When they appeared, the Governor reminded them of the passion displayed by them in what had occurred with van Dieden, and further advised them to act with discretion and not to jump about with honest persons in such a manner, and that they were not to exceed their powers, as he has pointed out that they had done, assuming to themselves matters which did not pertain to them; and after the Governor had advised them in future not to address him with such “protesting” words, he concluded by warning them that if it happened again, he would be compelled to make other provision. With this they were dismissed.

September 24th.—The Superintendent at Robben Island informs us that many of the convicts there were suffering from dropsy, and that consequently the daily works could not be carried on properly. He also sent with the hooker (*De Swartvis*) a certain convict, named Jan Frost, who was suffering from that disease, but had died in the vessel during the night. The Governor pays a brief visit to the lands at the “Corenschuij.”

September 25th.—The Hottentoo Chief, Cuijper, notorious for his intercourse with the Chief Gounema, the open enemy of the Company, having been ordered hither, and charged with his conduct, denied it with great protestation, and as we have no further

evidence, we could not proceed further, and consequently left matters as they were. But he was requested to quit the Company's hay lands, as mentioned under the 18th instant, and having been regaled with some copper beads, he was dismissed.

September 26th.—Arrival of *Het Wapen van Alkmaar*, having on board the Hon. "Magister" Volckerus van Goens, chief merchant. Had left Texel on the 25th May last. Lost 7 by death, and brought 72 sick. Received by her a letter from the 17 in reply to our letters of last year, and containing principally some orders on matters here. 27th. 80 sheep brought from the Island for slaughter.

September 29th.—Arrival of the (1) *Geele Beer*, (2) *Juſtrouw Maria*, and (3) the hooker, *De Quartel*, destined to India. The *Juſtrouw Maria* had lost two by death, and the *Quartel* one. They brought no sick. 30th. Arrival of *De Gecroonde Eendracht* of Enckhuijsen.

October 1st.—As the hookers *De Baars* and *Swaartris* have been purposely kept here in order, if required, to carry despatches to India, and as the necessity no longer exists, and we have the *Quartel* to serve us, it was decided to despatch the two aforesaid hookers to India, and discharge into them the cargo of *De Quartel*. As the hooker, *de Bode*, is shortly expected back from Mauritius, we shall again have two vessels to serve us on occasion. Decided to land some coals out of the *Quartel*, and some provisions from the Fatherland ships, which are urgently required. From *Het Wapen van Alkmaar* 12,000 grey "klinkerts" are to be landed for the train-boiling establishment, that is to say, not before the arrival of the Director of the Miners, who is soon expected here in the ship *Vryheyt* of Enckhuijsen, for whom the bricks are intended. Should he think that the landing can be effected without disservice to the Company, it will be done, otherwise they are to be left untouched.

October 2nd (Friday).—Preparation sermon this afternoon, as next Sunday the Lord's Holy Supper will be celebrated. 4th. The Holy Sacrament administered to the members.

October 6th.—S.E. wind. The Hon. Volckerus van Goens embarks, accompanied by the Governor and some other friends from the ships. But as the wind grew stronger, the Governor decided not to go on board *Het Wapen van Alkmaar*, but at once to return to the shore. The despatches for Batavia were delivered to Mr. van Goens, to be delivered by him to the *Geele Beer* and *de Gecroonde Eendracht*. During the afternoon the vessels leave; six in number.

October 7th.—For a considerable time the head gardener and his assistants have been suspected of robbing the gardens, but in

spite of every investigation, we have only now found out where the things went to. The Fiscal was accordingly instructed to take action, and prosecute those who may be found guilty. 8th. Fine weather. The works at the Fortification progressing well. Dull weather in the afternoon, making us suspect that rain will fall. 9th. Favoured with a lovely rain. Rather strong South-Easters towards evening from Table Mountain, which was covered with clouds and makes us think that the wind will last some days.

October 12th.—The flagstaff on Lion's Head thrown over and down by the S. Easter during the night, so that the signal cannot be hoisted, and it is feared that the little vessel, now approaching, may conclude that there is something wrong, because of no flag being hoisted, and thus decide not to call here. It was therefore decided to despatch one of our sloops to her, to inform the officers of the good condition of affairs here, and if necessary, render every assistance to the vessel. Having found the vessel behind the Lion's Head, both arrived here towards evening, and the officers having called on the Governor, reported that she was *de Bode*, which had left this place on the 22nd June last for Mauritius. She brought us 40 lasts of lime and some blocks of white and red ebony. Had left the Island on the 22nd September last and brought various documents from the Directors. The letters addressed to us are filed in our letter book. She brought with her also a family of freemen, and an unmarried man, who had remained behind there, the others having from time to time been sent to Batavia. Six Frenchmen also arrived in her, who had deserted from an English ship there (named *The Unicorn*), who stated that they had been most unhumanly treated by the English.

The Fiscal, some Commissioners from the Court of Justice and the Chief Surgeon, leave for a place behind the *Tijgerbergen*, about 6 hours distant from this, to inspect the body of Jan Zergijssel, who with others, had been stationed there to gather hay. Whilst putting down a gun trap, the gun accidentally went off, lodging the bullet in his brain and smashing his skull.

October 13th.—The skipper of the *Quartel*, the master carpenter and 20 or 25 men, sent with a new flagstaff to be erected on Lion's Head. This they did before evening. The Governor wrote to Sergeant Visser at Hottentoots Holland that he was pleased to hear that he was on his return back, and hoped to be at his Post within a few days with more than 200 cattle and the same number of sheep; that however he would have liked to see the numbers larger. He hoped however, that he would get some more at the kral of Captain Claas, and that if wind and weather permit, he hopes to be at Hottentoots Holland next Friday or Saturday, with a large company.

October 16th.—Everything having been prepared for the journey to Hottentoots Holland, and the Governor having entrusted the administration to the Captain of the Garrison, Dirck Jansz : Smient (as the second person Sieur Hendrik Crudop will accompany the Governor, and he (Smient) was accordingly the most important personage), and having given him full instruction, with orders that the jetty on the sea shore was to be masoned up with stone so many feet, to avoid the heavy expenditure which has annually to be incurred, he left with a large company at noon (12 o'clock), intending to pass the night at "De Kuilen." Rain. 17th. Commenced the mason work at the jetty, which was finished in the evening. 18th (Sunday). Our Divine Services dutifully held. 19th. The *Haagman* arrives from Saldanha Bay with 23 half-aums of train oil. Letter received from Hottentoots Holland that the Governor had arrived there safely, but had encountered heavy rain on the way. 20th. Cold and wet weather continuing, making the roads impassable and hindering the works, but very desirable for the agriculturist and gardener. 25th (Sunday). Divine Services held as usual.

October 26th.—The present time of the year does not seem to bind itself any more to the old customs, as the fine weather of yesterday has to-day been transformed into continuous rains and cold winds from the N. West. In the afternoon the Governor and his company returned through the Hout Bay from Hottentoots Holland, after he had given orders for the enlargement of the cattle kraal, and the management of the crops, which promise an opulent harvest, and urged the Superintendent to look well after everything.

During the time the Governor was there much rain fell, so that the rivers had been flooded, and he had been compelled to remain there longer than he had intended. During his presence there, Sergeant Visser had returned from the interior with 239 cattle and 226 sheep obtained from the Hossiquas.

His journal is as follows :—

September 16th.—Proceeded from Hottentoots Holland to the Kloof. 17th. Marched to the Onoflocks Kraal. 18th. Reached Captain Claas and his kraals at the Swarte River, and bartered fair sheep. 19th. Reached Coopman's kraals and there obtained 5 sheep and 2 cattle in the place of the one stolen by them from the kraal in Hottentoots Holland. 20th. Proceeded to the "Rivier Zonder Ende." 21st. Reached "Calabas Kraal." 22nd. Marched to "Tijgerhoek" where we met some Hottentoots of the Soesquas kraals, and that of Schacher. With them was a Hossiqua Hottentoo. They had with them between 30 and 40 head of cattle and about 150 sheep which they had bartered from the Hossiquas for some copper chains, beads, assegays and good

1676.

tobacco, as the Hossiqua Hottentoo informed me. 23rd. Marched to the Hossiqua Kloof, whence we sent in advance a Hossiqua Hottentoo, and 2 others of Captain Claas, to notify to the Hossiquas that we wished to come to them to barter. 24th. Reached the "Breede Rivier." 25th. Marched to the "Klip Rivier." 26th. Reached "Quaelberg's Casteel," where 3 Hossiqua Hottentoots informed us that they had broken up their kraals, and had retired further inland, for they feared that, as they had heard some freemen had been murdered at the "Breede Rivier," that we might revenge ourselves on them. I sent them back to their tribe with a present of 5 chains, that they might notify to their friends, that they need not be afraid of us, and that they should not go further. 27th. Reached the "Buffeljacht"; there they sent me a sheep as a present, with a message that they would concentrate their kraals at the "Oliphants Rivier," in order to barter there. 28th. Reached the "Oliphants Rivier" and the Hossiqua Kraals, 9 in number lying along the river. 29th. Rested and bartered 30 cattle and 18 sheep. 30th. Bartered 69 cattle and 59 sheep. October 1st. Bartered 75 cattle and 61 sheep. 2nd. Bartered 52 cattle and 60 sheep. 3rd. Bartered 8 cattle and 16 sheep. We could not obtain more cattle from them as the tobacco was very much spoiled, and they did not like it, saying that if I had had more good tobacco they might still bring some more animals to sell, whilst on the other hand, their kraals had not yet come together, some being still at a considerable distance. But the chief of the captains promised me that in a few months time they would move somewhat hither with all their kraals, and then they would send some Hottentoots to the Governor to inform him of it, when, should the Company like to send to them some goods, such as good tobacco, some iron rods and red copper chains, as well as blue and other assorted beads, we might still be able to barter more cattle. 4th. Left with the bartered cattle for the "Buffeljacht." 5th. Marched to the "Backley Plaats." 6th. Rested, in order to graze the cattle. 7th. Marched to the "Drooge Kraal," at the "Kleijne Rivier." 8th. Reached the "Hossiquas Kloof." 9th. Arrived at the "Copere Kraal," where we found 3 Sousquas kraals from which we bartered 4 cattle and 29 sheep. 10th. Reached the "Calabas Kraal." 11th. Arrived at the "Hooge Wagon Kraal." 12th. Marched to the "Ezelsjacht," at the "Rivier Zonder Ende." 13th. Rested to let the cattle graze. 14th. Reached the "Botte Rivier." 15th. Marched to the "Caffer Kuyjs Rivier." 16th. Broke up from there, and marched to the Company's Lodge in Hottentoots Holland, where we brought 239 head of cattle and 226 sheep, exclusive of what had been killed on the road as food for the men.—(Signed) L. VISSER.

October 27th.—The freemen's boat brings from Saldanha Bay

a Hottentoo Captain, named Jacob, who by our orders, had been sent with the pretext of bartering cattle, to discover the kraals of Goenema. He had found them all together fully a day's journey behind the "Berg Rivier" in the "Suijckerbergen," where they could be easily attacked and surprised in front as well as in the rear; the more so, as the Namaquas and Coreguriquas, their sworn enemies, are lying behind them and would also, at a favourable opportunity, like to fall upon them, so that they would not be able to escape in that direction. The aforesaid Captain Jacob offered to show us himself these hostile Goenema Hottentoots, and whereas this nation cannot, in spite of all practicable measures attempted, be brought in a friendly manner to a condition of rest and peace with us, so necessary for the cattle trade, and through too long a forbearance towards that unworthy brood, without gaining anything, the illustrious reputation of the Company and respect for it are in the meanwhile only made to suffer, and they do not desist from ruining our people, and seize every opportunity to benefit themselves; and though, to resent such conduct, we sent out in March last a considerable number of military and burghers, who however, in consequence of some inconveniences returned without having effected their purpose, it was decided for these and other reasons, once more to send an expedition against them, (the more so, as according to Captain Jacob, we may expect a good success), under such leaders and with such orders as will be contained in the instructions to be drawn up for the purpose. God willing, the expedition will leave next Sunday. In the meanwhile everything will be got ready, whilst the affair will be kept secret as much as possible.

October 28th.—Arrival of the *Eendracht* of Rotterdam, skipper Simon van der Meer. Left the Meuse on the 17th June last with 273 men, of whom 3 had died; no sick. Brought no home news of importance, only the friends on board informed us that the Lieutenant Admiral-General de Ruyter, had died of the wound in his foot, received before Messina, and that Vice-Admiral de Haen had provisionally been appointed to act in his stead.

October 31st.—Everything quietly prepared for the expedition to the Goenemas, which will leave to-morrow.

November 1st.—The expedition notified to some burghers, who were ordered, as soon as practicable to meet at the "Hooge Kraal," a high plain about an hour distant from the Fort, and the usual rendezvous. In the meanwhile the military also proceeded thither, followed in the afternoon, after the ending of the second sermon, by the heads of the expedition, provided with ample instructions for their guidance, viz:—

"Memorandum for the Hon. Captain Dirk Jansz. Smient,

1676.

Commander of the Company's forces, and Chief of this Expedition, and for the Lieutenant Johannes Cruse and further members of the Council, to serve them for their guidance during their journey.

It is unnecessary to mention why you are sent out against our enemies, the Chief Goenema and his adherents, as this is sufficiently known to every one, in consequence of the manifold massacres committed on our people, and notwithstanding all practicable means have been resorted to to induce them to keep quiet and live with us in peace. Accordingly on the 26th March last we decided to send against them in God's name a considerable force under the Lieutenant of our Garrison, J Cruse, but contrary to our intentions, it returned without having effected our purpose. Since then we have had too many occasions to experience the evil intentions of the Goenema Chief towards us, without having given the slightest cause for his conduct. But we have now, through the stratagem of a certain Hottentoo Captain, named Jacob, been informed that the chief and his kraals are squatted no further than a day's journey from the Berg River, at a place called the 'Suijkerbergen,' and might be easily attacked in front and rear, the more so, as the Namacquas and Choregriquas, their sworn enemies, are lying behind them, in order when they have the chance also to fall upon them, so that they would not be able to retire in that direction. It would be too prolix to mention here everything that has happened, but you were personally present at the Council meeting, when the whole was discussed, so that we merely state that for the reasons then mentioned, and for others, we decided to employ you as Chief of the Expedition, to which we have joined Lieutenant Cruse and the burgher Councillor, Harman Gresnigt, whose experience in these and other matters will be of service to you occasionally. To them are added Company's servants and free burghers, numbering 2 men.

You shall carefully attend to the following :—

In the first place, and especially, we urge you to take proper care of our Netherlanders, whether soldiers or burghers, call upon the name of God every morning and evening, and take particular care that no one, whether burgher or soldier, shall without your permission, stray from the company, as much disaster might otherwise result through the enemy or wild beasts. And not to be too prolix, I refer you to the Memorandum given in 1674 by the Hon. Goske to Lieutenant Cruse, which is still in the latter's hands and has been well drawn up. What roads you are to make use of, and where you will find the enemy, in case, contrary to our expectation, he may within a few days have broken up his camp, we cannot perfectly inform you, but (the camp) is said to be a day's journey on the other side of the Berg Rivier, on a spot

named De Zuijkerbergen, according to the information given us by the Hottentoo Captain Jacob, who will give you further information on the way, as he will accompany you, and has undertaken to lead you with your whole force to the aforesaid kraals. We trust that you will obtain good information from him, that you may be enabled to surprise the enemy, before having been discovered by him; and that you may do so during the night or otherwise when the opportunity presents itself, and you consider that it can be done with the greatest safety. This you must ponder well, as it is not unknown to you, that if the enemy becomes aware of your approach, the expedition would be altogether fruitless. This you are urged to prevent as much as possible. Besides Captain Jacob, some of the most faithful Hottentoes accompany you for your assistance, whom, especially Captain Jacob, you may freely tell, as well as all the burghers, in our name, that with good success, and if they conduct themselves well, they will receive a good share of the cattle, provided, however, that the distribution shall only take place after the return hither of the expedition. The manner of treating the enemy you are well acquainted with; that is endeavouring more to destroy the males (*de persoonen off vijanden*), and excepting the women and children, rather than to seize a portion of their cattle for our satisfaction. But should you not be able to overtake those fellows, but only their cattle, it speaks of itself that the latter should be collected and brought hither. We cannot fix the time for your return, but leave it to you to do so, with the recommendation that it be as soon as possible, as you know how much the men are required here. And as everything begun with ripe consideration generally reaches a good end, you shall not undertake anything of importance before you have ripely deliberated with each other regarding the best course to be pursued, in order not to be charged with carelessness. The Council shall consist of Dircq Jansz: Smient, Captain and head of the expedition; Jeronymus Cruse, Lieutenant; Harman Gresnigt, Burgher Councillor, and if necessary, the military and burgher Sergeants. The above we consider sufficient to enable you to judge what has to be done or not, and your council having been now appointed, we confide everything to your experience and good and brave judgment, not doubting that you will together act as brave men, and courageously endeavour to avenge the blood of our murdered countrymen. You have been abundantly supplied with provisions and ammunition, and we now wish you all a happy and successful journey." (Signed) Your good friend, Joan Bax, Named Van Herenthals. In the Fort the Good Hope, the 1st November, 1676.

November 2nd.—Wagon arrived from Hottentoes Holland for provisions; letter from Visser (Superintendent), stating that the appearances of an opulent harvest remain favourable.

1676.

November 3rd.—Captain Cuijper arrives with some of his Councillors, to whom we excused ourselves, in order to satisfy him that we had not communicated to him the sending out of an expedition against Gonnema, so that he might have joined it. We pretended that the reason was the sudden despatch of the same. We regaled him on a bit of tobacco and permitted him to go on board *De Eendracht* in order to enjoy himself a little on board. Whereupon this African left in a happy mood, as far as outward appearances went. 4th. Visser leaves for Hottentoots Holland with orders regarding what should be taken in hand there first, and to pay particular attention to everything there, and also to be on his guard that Captain Cuijper may not undertake anything injurious to the Company, or its garrison there, as very little faith can be placed in his fidelity. 5th. The *Bruyt* returns from Dassen Island with a load of dried fish, and the men of the *Eendracht* are sent to the forest to cut fuel. Heavy S. Easter, so that they cannot return to their vessel.

November 6th.—Beautiful weather for advancing the works. 8th. Two wagons from our travellers arrive, with a letter from Captain Smient, stating that they had already marched 30 (Dutch) miles into the interior, and were still fully two days' journey distant from the place where he thought he would find the enemy, if the latter had not left. Instead of during the day, he intended henceforth to travel during the night, in order not to be discovered. For the rest, matters were still in good order. 9th. *De Eendracht* leaves. The hooker *De Bode*, about to leave for Saldanha Bay, receives the following instructions: That she is to be properly cleaned, &c. The men are to be kept busy with fishing, without, however, neglecting the repairs to their vessel. As you are well provided with salt, as well as with fresh water, you need not waste time in searching for either. After a good catch the fish are to be properly cured and deposited in casks, that they may arrive here in good condition. Some stones have, also been shipped in the hooker to serve as a base for a blue stone into which the Arms of the States General and the mark of the Company are cut, and which we had lately had erected at Saldanha Bay, but which had been overthrown by an elephant. You will no doubt still find it on the same place, so that you will be able to put it up again, using such foresight that the work be done more satisfactorily than before. No time need be needlessly wasted by searching for stone required for the purpose, as you have been provided with a sufficient quantity. Having done all this you shall return at once. Cement and lime you also take with you. Your own experience will point out to you the most suitable spot for repairing your vessel, and that of those persons who have often frequented the bay will also be of use to you. And as we are at war with the Natives in the neighbourhood, who are subject to

Gonnema, to punish whom for his unjust enmity towards the Company, we have a few days ago despatched a body of 80 men under the command of our Captain, you shall not permit any of your men to go on shore without proper firearms, powder and lead, on pain of high responsibility.

But in order to cause no further estrangement, we also order that in nowise the aforesaid natives are to be injured in any way, or hurt in the least, or to be hostilely pursued, unless they on their part have previously given cause for so doing, in which case it speaks of itself what you will have to do, namely, to repel them in such a manner that they will not think of returning. Nor shall you trust the Natives too much, and should they ask you whether our people have marched against Gounema, you shall answer that you do not know whither they have gone.

We also advise you, as the free Saldanha traders are now busy catching seals, the principal hunt commencing now, to issue such orders that no one belonging to your vessel shall land on any of the islands in the neighbourhood, excepting the Schapen Island, much less by shooting to chase the animals away, as it is of the greatest importance to the Company. On pain of heavy punishment, you are therefore advised of this. Should you on the way wish to call at Dassen Island to communicate with Sieur van Dieden, nothing would be better, for you might then consider everything with him.

Finally, we once more urge you to hasten in everything as much as possible, and properly manage the provisions, and not to fail in advising us of all your adventures and experiences.—In the Fort “the Good Hope,” the 9th November, 1676.—(Signed) JOHAN BAX, named VAN HERENTHALS.

November 10th.—The *Eendragt* leaves with a S.E. breeze: Pleasant weather. 14th. Heavy S. Easters during the last two days. 15th (Sunday). The Sabbath of the Lord celebrated with the proper solemnities. Letter received from the hooker *De Quartel* in False Bay that it had hitherto not been able to ship more than a third of the lime in consequence of the incessant surf, which has been very violent there for some days, for if the boat had landed it would have been in danger of being smashed to atoms. It was therefore necessary to wait until the sea had calmed down.

November 16th.—Received an express from our Captain in the interior, dated the 11th instant, stating that after all diligence displayed, they had not been able to find the enemy, for, as 2 or 3 old women whom they had left behind informed them, they had been informed of our approach 2 or 3 days previously, and had at once fled with their cattle, notwithstanding our people had, in order to avoid discovery, marched by night instead of by day

1676.

They had therefore decided, in order not to return without having effected something, to despatch Lieutenant Cruse and 24 men to Saldanha Bay, in order to surprise there a certain native Captain, known as Kees, an adherent of the Chief Gounema, who with his kraals was encamped there, whilst he (the Captain) had decided to pursue the enemy with the rest of his men.

November 17th.—The Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland informed that in case the Hottentoo Captain, Claas, might feel inclined to visit us, we would consider it good, but he was not to be pressed much to do so, but as before, treated in every way well and in a friendly manner.

Arrival of the *Nieuw Middelburg* from Zealand the 19th June last. Her officers reported that on the 26th following they had met, behind Shetland, about 6 miles to the S. of it, the return fleet, which was still combined and accompanied by 5 cruisers or war ships. The officers of the fleet were still in good health, and without having encountered any mishap had approached so near home. But 3 days later they (the *N. Middelburg*) encountered 4 French war ships, with which they obstinately fought, showing a determined front to the enemy, and as good soldiers acting in the most praiseworthy manner. They thus escaped the threatening danger, but to repair damages were obliged to run into Cabo Verde.

Arrival towards evening of the *Vryheyt* of Enckhuijsen. Had left on the 18th July last. Reported that the Return Fleet had, 3 days before she left, safely arrived home, for which God Almighty must be thanked. . . .

November 18th.—The officers of the *Vryheijt* (among them the Hon. Jacob de Werelt, Director of the miners, specially to be employed on the coast of Sumatra) reported that His Highness the Prince of Orange, with some allies, had, shortly before their departure, not only blockaded the town Maastricht, but completely besieged it. The latest newspapers had mentioned the bad condition of the French and the favourable prospects of peace during this summer. May God Almighty grant his blessing on this salutary work, that thus the shedding of innocent blood may end.

November 19th.—Arrival at noon of Captain Smient, accompanied by the burgher Councillor Gresnigt and the major portion of the commando, having left behind them Lieutenant Cruse, who had with 24 men gone to Saldanha Bay (see November 16th). They had tried all practicable means to come up with the enemy, and for that purpose had divided themselves into various small companies, in order to be able to fall on the enemy from all sides, but in vain, for the kraals having been approached at daybreak,

they found that the enemy had fled with all his cattle, having left behind only 15 or 16 pack oxen, which, being unfit to travel, had been abandoned, as well as the huts. Three or four old women, who could not follow the troop, informed our people that they had already 3 or 4 days previously received notice of our approach and had at once cleared. We are firmly convinced that the information has been imparted to them by one or other of the Hottentots in this vicinity, which does not leave the most favourable impression on us, so that in future we shall have to notice most carefully the doings of these people. One of our men, standing sentry one night, was wounded in the arm by the Soucquas of the enemy, who were at the time seen there in fairly large numbers, and had evidently been ordered by the enemy to attack us during night-time or otherwise, as may be sufficiently deduced from their doings. In consequence of the darkness and the bushes all about, as well as other hiding places, it was impossible to find the Soucqua. The journal is as follows:

Journal kept by the Expedition to the Rebellious Gounema Africans.

November 1st (Sunday).—After service we left and reached “De Hooge Kraal,” the ordinary rendezvous where the men were mustered. Found all there, and then marched to the “Stink Rivier,” where we passed the rest of the night. 2nd. Marched before the Tijgerbergen and along the “Diepe Rivier” to beyond the “Paardeberg,” where we slept. 3rd. Reached the N. end of the “Riebecks Kasteel.” 4th. Marched to the “Bergh Rivier,” to a place called by us “Vogelesangh.” Before our arrival there we had observed columns of smoke about the river, which led us to think that the enemy might be encamped there; we therefore decided, in order not to be discovered prematurely, henceforth to march only during the night. 5th. In order as much as possible to relieve ourselves of everything that might retard our progress, we decided to send two of our wagons and 4 men, to conduct them, to the Cape, with a letter to the Governor. During the afternoon we crossed the rivers, and in order to discover the enemy we despatched 10 swift-footed Africans, well provided with food, and with a bit of tobacco to encourage them, to spy out the enemy. We divided them into two troops; the one being sent along the river where yesterday the smoke had been seen, and the other to the mountains where Captain Jacob had said he had left the Gouramas, with orders to them not to return before they could definitely inform us where the enemy was encamped. This they undertook to do, and lest on their return they might not find us, should we go further, we decided to wait for them here. 7th. The spies not having returned, we remained waiting for them. In the meanwhile we divided among the men half of the tobacco, with the promise that the rest would be given to

1676.

them when returning; besides each one was presented with a dram (soopie) of brandy. Towards sunset eight of the spies returned, and reported that 3 of the enemy, having with them 2 pack oxen, had passed them very close, without seeing them (as they said). The two others had remained behind, as they said that they did not intend to return before they were able to give us full proofs (of the whereabouts?) of the enemy. 8th. Marched from midnight to daylight, and were then so far advanced that for prudence sake we had to be careful, and therefore did not venture to proceed further. We were therefore obliged to remain here and wait for the two spies. But as they did not appear, we feared that they had been overtaken by the enemy. We therefore decided to send out 5 other Africans in advance as scouts, with the promise that we would follow them the whole night. Towards evening, however, the two spies who had remained behind returned with the news that they had passed some Souequeas very near in the veld, who were saying to each other, "What kind of Hottentoots must those be (pointing at them) that walk so quietly, evidently there must be some Dutchmen in the vicinity." This made us at once resolve to prosecute our journey the following night with our whole force, in order not to be frustrated in our object. 9th. In order not to be discovered by the enemy's Souequeas, who are always looking for their food in the veld, we hid ourselves in the bushes and other hiding places, and after a while the five Africans sent out by us returned with the news that they had at last, after much travelling, found some cowdung which was still fresh, without, however having fallen in with any Hottentoots or cattle. They maintained, however, that there must be some kraals in the neighbourhood there. We therefore at once sent in advance Sergeant Olof (? Berg) with 8 men and 3 Hottentoots to make a further search with orders, in case of any special occurrence, at once to let us know. We decided to leave the wagon and other encumbrances here, that they might not delay us in our march. Towards evening we continued our march, following those sent out in advance the best way we could. After 2 or 3 hours' march, we came up with the sergeant who reported that he had stopped on account of the lowing of calves, and the barking of dogs, not deeming it advisable to go further. We agreed with him and decided to wait until the next morning. In the meanwhile a certain burgher who had in the dark wandered from the troop, reported that at a "drift" not far from here, he had seen some Hottentoot huts and a white ox. A sergeant and 12 men were therefore at once despatched to the spot with the said freeman and a Hottentoot during the night, in order to find out what the facts were. After a while they returned and reported that they had found nothing, so that evidently the burgher must have mistaken

the place for the one where we had already rested. We remained quiet for the rest of the night. 10th. This morning after daybreak we reached the place where yesterday the calves were heard lowing and the dogs barking, without, however, finding any Hottentoots or cattle there, excepting 3 or 4 calves, some huts and a dog. Without delay we divided our force into three squadrons in order the better to intercept the enemy when discovered and he might attempt to escape to one side or another. Thus we marched forward hurriedly until after a long walk we at last found an end of the "drift." We then mounted the highest point of the mountain to look out for the rest of our people, but seeing no one we sent Sergeant Oloff to look for them and show them where we were. But after having stayed there a long while and neither seeing the sergeant nor the men, we returned to the place where we had camped the preceding night; and to show that we were there we lighted large fires. In the meanwhile a horseman came to inform us that the burgher councillor, Gresnigt, had with his men intercepted 17 or 18 pack oxen of the enemy, without having been able to effect anything more. It was then about midnight, so that we rested until the morning. 11th. This morning we again met the footmen of Sergeant Johannes, who told us that previous to our arrival there, some of the enemy's Hottentoots had arrived disarmed, and professed that they had been sent by Gounema to treat with us about peace, at the same time saying that they had been informed of our expedition 2 or 3 days before. We found in the abandoned kraal only a woman who could tell us nothing, excepting that Gounema would not appear there to treat with us amicably, which we could very well understand, and therefore as there seemed no chance of overtaking the enemy, we considered in Council that Captain Kees, also an adherent of Gounema, and guilty of the murders committed on our countrymen, was at present encamped at Saldanha Bay with his people, and (as he had never been attacked by our people there) that Lieutenant Cruse with 24 men should be despatched thither in order (if possible) to surprise him. He would take with him the few captured pack oxen, in order to relieve us of all encumbrance and lighten our march, as we still intend to pursue the Enemy, and, if possible, attack him. The Lieutenant and his men accordingly left without delay. We, on the other hand, continued our march until late in the evening when we reached some kraals from which the enemy had fled. There we found some huts still standing and 4 old women and above 20 cows, which in their hurry they had left behind. From the old women also, we understood that Gounema would not appear there to treat with us for peace. We left the huts and women undisturbed. 12th. At daybreak we continued our journey through very difficult mountain ranges, named by us "t Vagevier

(Purgatory) Zonder End," as far as the "Oliphants Rivier," where we found three different cattle "drifts," the one tending down, the other through, and the third up the river, which the enemy had made not without a study to confuse us regarding his course; but as night was falling, we remained there. 13th. Considered what "drift" the enemy might have crossed. Decided to cross the one going up the river, the more so as we observed smoke and fire in that direction. After having marched a while, we observed dust of cattle, which made us think that the enemy was lying there with some cattle. We therefore hurried thither on foot and on horseback, but having approached the dust, we found that it had been caused by three elephants (our imagined cattle!) which were marching there. We therefore marched in the direction of the fires, hoping to find some "drifts" or cattle spoor, but all in vain, for on our arrival there we only found the spoor of 2 Hottentoots and a little dog, who had evidently lighted the fire. Thence we marched to a suitable place to rest. 14th. When the morning star appeared in the firmament, we became aware to our great surprise, that some hostile Hottentoots had crept up through the bushes and other means of shelter, to one of our sentries, and wounded him with an assegay through the arm. Some shots were fired at him and others but in consequence of the darkness they escaped. About half an hour later we saw fires made by the Hottentoots on the mountain slopes, and at once despatched thither Sergeant Oloff with some men in order to creep up to them, but observing our men too soon they fled, when our men fired and marched to the fire, where they found only a bow and quiver with arrows, which they had left behind in their hurried flight. Whether any of them were wounded we cannot say. 15th. On the march again until within 2 or 3 musket shots from our resting place. Again saw some Hottentoots who had been hiding in the bushes and elsewhere, looking about to see whether we had left anything behind worth their having, when we rested, but finding nothing, they went their way, and as, because of their swiftness we could not overtake them, it would have been useless to waste time to attempt it. We therefore marched on till noon, without finding any "drift" or spoor of cattle. We were now completely without any hope of bringing our expedition to a desirable end, in spite of all our efforts by day and night (to our particular regret); all had turned out fruitless; nor could any one point out any other way to reach the enemy, and hence it was unanimously decided by our Council not to waste any further time in searching for the enemy, but to march back to the Cape as quickly as possible. Towards evening therefore we arrived at the kloof of the mountain which we had to cross. 16th. Ascended the mountain this morning early, but not without trouble to us, the horses, and pack-oxen; but we crossed it

without disaster and rested at the "Kleine Berg Rivier." 17th—19th. Marched rapidly forward from early morning to late at night, without any remarkable thing occurring, and at noon arrived at the Fort, "The Good Hope," all in good health. God be praised for His mercy. (Signed) DIRCQ JANSZ : SMIENT, J. CRUSE, and HERMAN GRISNIGT.

November 22nd (Sunday).—After the conclusion of the second sermon, the *Quartel* arrives from False Bay with a cargo of lime, burnt by some freemen there, and bought by the Company at f3 per tun. Towards evening an express arrived from inland, from Lieutenant Cruse, mentioning that he and his had safely arrived at the *Tijgerbergen*, about 6 hours journey from this, and that he hoped to be at the Fort tomorrow. It is said that he has captured a number of cattle.

November 23rd.—Accompanied by some members of the Council, the Governor, early this morning, rode out to meet the expected travellers, in order to welcome them. On their arrival the Governor ordered that a portion of the cattle should be located at the "Corenschuij," and another lot at the Fort. According to the Lieutenant, the enemy had with the captured cattle been encamped fully 2 days journey further than St. Helena Bay, at a place among the mountains very difficult of access; that most likely they would not have been discovered, if they had not caught one of their *Soucquas* searching for food in the veld, who, on the promise that his life would be spared, had shown them the kraal. Having approached it at daybreak, the enemy became aware of our presence and fled, without taking the least of their cattle with them, while 5 or 6 of them were shot. The captured animals consisted of ? cattle and ? sheep.

November 24th.—The burgher, Wouter Mostaert, having burnt a considerable quantity of lime behind Table Mountain, the *Schulp* was sent thither to take it on board for the Company. Fine, pleasant weather.

November 25th.—Arrival at the Fort of the Soeswaas Captain, Coopman, and another, living nearer, named Captain Schacher. The first, besides an African compliment, presented us with an ox, and the second with 3 sheep, for which we recompensed them with copper bead chains, and a little tobacco, &c. And as our travellers have returned from the expedition, without having, to our regret, found the *Gounemas*, who had no doubt been warned by spies on our side, we nevertheless succeeded in capturing a small troop of animals, but not of such importance as to enable us to distribute any among the *Hottentoots* who had accompanied us, to compensate them for their trouble, and the more so, as the Company is in the

1876.

utmost need of those animals. We therefore decided, in order to prevent all dissatisfaction, and to give them their full measure in every practicable manner, that they may not adduce frivolous complaints that they have been deprived of their dues in any way, to give some of the Hottentoo Captains a parcel of beads, tobacco and hard bread, as well as eight head of cattle, large and small, and the common Hottentoots, who had accompanied the expedition, some tobacco, beads and bread, in proportion to their deserts. And as it is to be feared that Gounema or his adherents, our injurious enemies, will again endeavour to harm us in every possible way, and attack us in every treacherous and hostile manner in order to revenge themselves, it was decided to strengthen all the country posts where cattle are lying with some additional men, and at once to notify to the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland to do the same thing at all stations where it is necessary, and instead of one man, to employ two for herding the cattle, should he deem it more prudent to do so as we feel certain that Gounema, or his accomplices will try to take advantage of us. He (Visser) therefore receives this order that he may carefully attend to everything, and not in any way neglect his trust, as in that case we shall pay no attention to frivolous excuses. Nor was he to trust Captain Cuijper too much, but keep a watchful eye on him and his.

Towards evening the master butcher reported that an unknown Hottentoo had visited the cattle herds of the Company at the "Riet Valley," about 4 hours distant inland, when the cattle were going out to the veld to graze, and advised them to be on their guard, as they were in danger of being clubbed to death by some Hottentoots. And nothing more. At once, this evening (as it had already been decided to strengthen the Posts) 7 or 8 men were sent thither.

November 26th.—When the gates were opened, Captain Smient left with 2 men to reinforce the 7 sent out last night, that we might not be taken unawares by our treacherous enemy. He was also ordered to cut down the surrounding bushes, which might serve the enemy as hiding places.

And as the Company's and the freemen's crops have reached maturity, and it will be necessary to protect them from all injury (except such as might proceed from God, whose Almighty Majesty must be adored), as the Hottentoots might at night or other unseasonable hours burn or destroy them in any other practicable manner, which would cause no slight loss to the public, the respective Captains of our allied Hottentoots (summoned hither by us) were told, in presence of the burgher Councillors, that they were to issue such orders to their subjects, that none of them during the night, or unseasonable hours shall wander about in the roads in the country or elsewhere, but at nightfall proceed to their kraals or dwelling places, as we have issued such orders that

any one met at such times must be looked upon as an enemy, and shot. They promised to obey this our order implicitly.

November 28th.—The Governor is glad that proper provision has been made in Hottentoots Holland, and orders the Superintendent, when the wagon is again sent for the monthly supplies to take care that it is properly protected, that it may not be surprised by hostile Hottentoots; and that as soon as he received our letter he was at once to dispatch two Netherlanders and two Hottentoots to the spot where the miners had formerly worked, and take thence some mineral quartz; that is to say, if he judged that it could be done without danger from the hostile Hottentoots; that however, we would be pleased if it could be done by two swift-footed Africans. He is therefore urged to see that the ore is brought in as soon as possible, as the Hon. Jacob de Wereldt, director of the miners, wishes to test the same to find out of what value it may be. He intends, at the latest, to leave for Batavia within 7 or 8 days time.

November 29th.—Arrival of the little yacht *Voorhout* from Madagascar. Their officers reported that in the bays of Magelage and Marangaan, situated about 9 (Dutch) miles from each other, they had obtained 254 slaves, of whom they had lost 22 on the voyage. The situation there is favourable for obtaining annually thence a large number of slaves; but that nation is very strict on cash, without which no slave can be obtained there. They only accepted Mexican dollars (Realen), which they weigh on receipt, to see whether the weight agrees with their fancy (humour). If not, they reject it, hence, if they (the officers) had been sufficiently provided with the aforesaid heavy standard coin (alloy), they would have been able to buy more slaves. When they were there, there were also there 4 English ships, also for buying slaves, as well as 3 Arabian vessels. The English intended to take their cargo to Barbadoes, and the Arabs theirs to Arabia. In order to refresh the slaves, our people, had on their return voyage, called at the Island Ansuany, where they had obtained good refreshments. Whatever further occurred during the voyage will be found more fully in their journal.

November 30th.—The hooker *De Quartel* proceeds with stores and building material to the Island, in order to bring back thence a cargo of shells. The Governor ordered the Superintendent to have the two (dead) draught oxen salted down at once, for though he (the Superintendent) in his letter expresses his belief that the animals have been bitten by something poisonous, it appears very strange to us, as we are rather inclined to believe that the deaths have been caused by some malefactor or other. He was therefore to investigate the matter carefully, as we shall also do on receipt of the meat.

1676.

The slaves landed from the *Voorhout* this afternoon, among them a fair number of healthy male and female adults. After having been counted on the jetty by Commissioners they were found to be 257 in number, babes included. At once each received a little cloth to cover their bodies, and afterwards all were provisionally lodged in a building at the Company's brick kilns, and fed with good refreshing food, which these poor people were so fond of, and ate to the last crumb, so that nothing was left, notwithstanding an abundance had been distributed among them. These refreshments they will require for some time still in order to be thoroughly restored to health and strength.

December 1st.—Departure of the *Nieuw Middelburg* to Batavia.

December 2nd.—Lovely weather. The soldiers discharged from our garrison embark in the ship *De Vryheyt*.

December 5th.—Heavy rains during the night and this morning which are most welcome for the agriculturist to revive the garden and other fruit, which have suffered much from the drought and heavy South Easters. The *Bryt* arrives from Saldanha Bay with 60 half aums of oil, of which 56 were at once shipped into the *Vryheyt* for Batavia.

December 6th (Sunday).—Celebrated our usual Divine services. Towards evening the African Chief, Claas, arrived in order to speak with the Governor about the cattle trade with the Hosiquas. He also delivered a note from the Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland, informing us of the good state of affairs there, and that the cutting down of the barley had been completed; the crop consisting of 9,500 bundles. 8th. The ship *Vryheyt* leaves for Batavia.

December 9th.—Captain Claas leaves with a letter to Hottentoots Holland, ordering the Superintendent there, that as soon as Claas informed him by an African, that the Hosiqua natives were prepared to barter, and for that purpose had come nearer, he was to let us know at once.

December 10th.—Whereas Sergeant Visser had on the ? been sent inland to barter, and through want of a sufficient quantity of good tobacco, could only obtain from the Hosiquas 239 head of cattle and 226 sheep; and whereas the Company is at present very poorly supplied, and more animals are required for properly refreshing the return fleet; and whereas the Souswas Captain, Claas, is willing to barter with the Company, and supply the latter with some cattle for the usual merchandise: it was decided in Council to undertake a barter, in order to obtain some animals from the said African, and to appoint as head of the expedition, Lieutenant Jeronymus Cruse, who will be accompanied by 27 men for his assistance.

It was also decided, that as the present year is near its close, to appoint Commissioners to take stock of everything, and audit the books, &c.

December 12th.—The Governor proceeds to the “Corenschuur” to inspect the cornlands there. 13th. (Sunday). The *Quartel* arrives from False Bay with a cargo of lime burnt there by the freemen, and bought by the Company for the new fortification works.

December 14th.—Lieutenant Cruse and his men leave (see Dec. 10th.) Trust he will be successful. The slaves brought us by the *Voorhout* (see Nov: 29th) having now, the sick excepted, fairly recovered and become strong, and also having been provided with clothing, have to-day been sent to work behind the Company's Fortress in the clay pit. They appear to take kindly to the work, and will in time do good service to the Company.

December 15th.—Arrival of a small English vessel during the night, named *de Societeyt*, from Madagascar. Had called here for refreshments in April last, and has since been engaged in buying slaves, of whom she still had 61 on board whom she intends taking to Barbadoes. She had met the yacht *Voorhout* in Magelage Bay whose officers she had promised on her return voyage (for she intended to call also at St. Augustine Bay, *via* Mosambique) to make inquiries after the merchant Nijhof and the other 3 Netherlands, and adopt all practicable means to get hold of them. But she could obtain no tidings of them, whether they were dead or alive. Her officers delivered to us the following written statement which they had found hanging from a tree at St. Augustine Bay, written by the merchant with his own hand, and given in favour of one of the natives, viz:—

“Rottief of Solaer, has, during the time we spent here at the large island Madagascar, in St. Augustine harbour, and further, as far as the land of Julia where we had lain at anchor, served us well and faithfully, and requested us to give him a testimonial accordingly, with which he might make the acquaintance of such of our officers who might call there afterwards. We accordingly could not, and did not wish to refuse him, and therefore request all officers, sailors, and soldiers in the Company's service to render the said Rottief such reasonable assistance as he may ask for, and where it may be required, which we shall at all times be prepared to repay with like civility. In the sloop, *De Boog*, the 8th July, lying on the roadstead, before the land of Julia, in the year 1672.”
(Signed) J. NIJHOFF.

The aforesaid friends asked permission to obtain water and buy refreshments from the freemen, which was as usual accorded, they being provided with a written permit for the purpose. They stated that they were urgently in need of a quantity of rice, but

1676.

this request was civilly refused, as we submitted that we also were very much in want of some, so that they might depend on it that they would not get any here.

The Ensign of the garrison and a sergeant were commissioned to make the returns of the Company's cattle at the various outside posts, as well as of all other effects there. For our satisfaction the Company's magazines will also be overhauled in order to be confronted with the books.

A certain burgher having complained that yesterday considerable damage had been done in his cornlands by cattle of the Company, we instructed the Captain of the garrison and the burgher Councillor, Elbert Diemer, to investigate the damage and report. They reported that it hardly amounted to two muids of wheat, which the cattle herds, through whose neglect it was caused, will have to pay for, that the farmers may no longer be deprived in such a manner of the fruits of their heavy labour (bloedigen arbeyt).

The Commissioners submit lists of the contents of the Company's armoury, the "Corps de Guardes" in the old and new Forts and in the horse stables. Signed) JACOB CROON and ALBERT VAN BREUGEL.

(N.B.—I have not deemed it necessary to insert them here, as they are very similar to those given above in the months of July and August, 1676. Only a list of the stable mentions that were in it: 20 saddles with their belongings; 20 bridles with bits, head stalls and everything belonging to them; 1 "caperçon"; 5½ pairs pistols; 1 coach with its belongings; 1 calash with its belongings; 1 pleasure wagon which Mr. Goske had made; 6 pleasure wagons with the belongings of two; 20 stabled horses; 15 do. in the veld, including 3 foals; 11 mules, and 8 asses. H.C.V.L.)

December 16th.—The Captain of the English ship, *De Societeyt*, dines with the Governor; and the conversation turned to a certain Netherland Pilot belonging to his vessel, who, when he previously called here, had very earnestly requested us, as he was free, and under no obligation to the Englishman, to remain here, and as he was a fellow countryman of ours, we could not very well refuse his request, however the Captain submitted that if he had known this beforehand, he would not have called here. The matter then dropped, but as the Pilot still persists in his intention, the Captain gave way, and this unpleasantness ended amicably.

December 17th.—The skipper of the *Voorhout* reported that his men had discovered a raft made of 3 doors tied together drifting near his vessel. He and the skipper of the *Quartel* were accordingly ordered to keep a watchful eye by day as well as by night, as it gives us strange suspicion that one or other may have escaped to the English vessel. This we found to be too true, for

the skipper of the *Voorhout*, being ordered to proceed on board the English vessel, with the excuse of visiting the Captain, in order to make inquiry, reported, on his return, that a slave of the burgher, Johannes Pretorius had, during the past night, arrived at the vessel on the raft : and that the Captain had purged himself by protesting that it had been done without his knowledge. The delinquent was at once conveyed to prison ; certainly an act of great daring, to entrust himself for such a long distance to the fickleness of wind and weather to which, especially at this time of the season, we are almost every moment exposed.

The Commissioners for inspecting the Company's chest report as follows :—

“In different small bags there were all kinds of current coin, mostly skillings and double stivers in cash, viz : f8181 and 16 stivers Cape valuation.”

The Cashier also submitted to us the following debts outstanding :—

Of Willem van Dieden, f950 ; of Jan Dirksz : free miller, f300 ; of Elbert Diemer, Wouter Mostart, and various other burghers for servants' (knechts) wages, f773.2.8 ; small items still outstanding, f95 5s. ; total : f10,300.3.8 (Signed) H. CRUDOP and M^r. VAN BANCHEM.

Here follows a summary of the contents of the warehouse under the charge of the junior merchant, Martinus van Banchem, similar to that given in the month of August, above, with the addition of f632, Cape valuation, in current money. (Signed) H. CRUDOP, and G^r. MULDER.

December 18th.—The Commissioners for the cattle returns submit as follows :—

On the 15th December, on the inner side of the Steenberg, or the East side on that post ; 2 men with two firelocks, and each with a scythe, being in charge of 415 sheep.

On the 16th December, behind the Steenberg or western side of that post ; 2 men and 2 firelocks, 1 tarred tent and 1 axe, being in charge of 277 head of cattle.

Ditto at Hout Bay at the beach ; 3 men with 2 blunderbusses and 1 wagon with its belongings, having in charge 70 head of cattle and 48 pigs.

Ditto at “De Boereboomen,” 2 men with 2 firelocks in charge of 552 sheep, 1 pig, 1 scythe, 1 kettle, and 2 buckets.

The same day at Hout Bay, called, Upper or “Hout Klincke,” 2 men with 1 musket, in charge of 125 goats.

Ditto with the Master Woodcutter, Carel Tetro, 3 men with their tools—list given. Then follow the lists of animals, &c., at the “Corenschuij” and at the “Ruijter Stal,” the latter in charge of Sergeant Uldrich, under whom were 3 men, 4 horses,

1676.

&c. Then the "Rietvlei" is mentioned garrisoned with 11 men, including 1 corporal, armed with 4 blunderbusses and 6 muskets. Then the "Kijkuijt" with two men and 2 muskets; then below the "Kijkuijt" there were two men in charge of 60 sheep. Then again at the "Kijkuijt" 1 man had the care of 5 head of cattle. Below the "Kijkuijt" there were also 51 cattle. At "Keert de Koe" were two men with two muskets.

On the 18th December there were in the Company's kraal behind the old fort, 40 cattle and 266 sheep, wagons, &c.—1 wagon and 4 oxen were with the Governor; 16 working oxen and 16 pack oxen in the fields, 2 muskets and 3 blunderbusses. (Signed) J. Croon and G. van der Stappen.

December 19th.—As the English Captain intends to call at St. Helena, on his way to Barbadoes, and the English return ships generally leave that Island in January for England, we decided to give him a small letter, merely stating the good condition of the place, to be handed to the English officers for conveyance to Patria. This he willingly undertook to do when at dinner with the Governor. He also presented the Governor with 6 assegays (which will serve as a present to the Hottentoo Captains, and we accepted with pleasure in order not to offend the giver by a refusal) so that we could do no less in return than by presenting him with some trifling articles, especially with an eye on the safe delivery by him of our letter. We accordingly made him a present of some earth fruit which he thankfully received. Thus these friends took their leave, but as the South-east wind blew so violently, the English Captain was unable to proceed on board.

December 20th (Sunday).—Celebrated our religious services in the usual manner. 21st. The English vessel leaves.

As complaints are daily coming to our ears from the freemen regarding the big thefts and wanton acts of the Hottentoes in the country and this neighbourhood, and as only this morning a certain burgher woman came to complain of the same thing, we have issued orders that if anyone detects such a malefactor, at once to seize him and deliver him over to justice that as a deterrent to others he may be punished according to his deserts.

Return of goods in the various warehouses in charge of the dispenser, Jacob Hinlopen. List similar to the one of August last.

December 22nd.—The *Schulp* takes supplies to Robben Island, and a letter from the Governor to the Superintendent advising him how he is to act on the arrival of ships from home and from India, and how, in case any accident happened to him there, he was to notify it to us.

The work at the Hospital and Cornmill is being diligently pro-

ceeded with, that, if possible, both may be completed before next year.

The Commissioners report on the arms, &c., on Robben Island. (Signed) Teunis Jansz: and Lambert Lourensz:

The Commissioners report on the cattle, agricultural implements, &c., at Hottentoots Holland (Signed) J. Cruse (Lieutenant), and Oloff Bergh (Sergeant).

December 23rd.—The Superintendent at Hottentoots Holland arrives and reports that the garrison there are very busy cutting the corn and binding it into bundles. It was desirable that the vicioous S. E. wind would cease for a few days, as it causes no little injury to the ripe corn, but judging from the way it is blowing to-day there seems very little hope of that.

A certain Hottentoo Captain named Jacob, having as a reward for his faithfulness in showing us the kraals of the hostile Hottentoots, received from us 1 cow and 3 calves, came to complain to us a few days ago that the animals had been taken away from him by Captain Schacher or his people. Thereupon the Governor summoned Schacher two or three times to appear before him, but as he has not put in an appearance, we have, in order to maintain the said Captain in the loss which he has suffered (as the act is one to bring the Company also into contempt) imprisoned two of Schacher's Hottentoots until he comes to inform us what induced him to act as he had done.

This afternoon the preparation service was held, as on Christmas Day the Lord's Holy Supper will be administered.

The Commissioners deputed to inspect the Harbour stores, submit their report. (Signed) J. Coon and A. van Breugel.

December 25th (Christmas Day).—The birthday of our Saviour, Jesus Christ, we have this day celebrated with the hearing of His Holy Word, whilst the Sacrament was administered to the members of His Church

The Hottentoo Schacher having at last appeared before us this afternoon, the Governor asked him what had induced him to rob Captain Jacob of the cattle which had been given him for his good services, which had greatly annoyed us, especially as it had been done within the Company's jurisdiction. He replied that as he had never yet done anything against the Company, and he had returned the cattle, he begged that we might forgive him. To this we consented, and thereupon the African left.

December 26th.—This second Christmas day we also solemnly celebrated.

December 27th (Sunday).—Like the two preceding days, we also celebrated this day of rest of the Lord.

The Hottentoots Holland Superintendent leaves towards evening

1676.
— for that Post, after having been instructed by the Governor to gather the corn without any delay, and as to what will be the first thing to be done afterwards.

December 29th.—The S. E wind has blown violently the last two days, causing great injury to the corn lands.

December 30th.—The Fiscal and two burgher Councillors departed to inspect the public roads and bridges, and submit returns of the crops still standing, return to-day and submit the following statement:—

	Morgen Sown.	Wheat.		Barley.		Rye.		Spelt.		Oats.	
		Sown.	To Reap.	Sown.	To Reap.	Sown.	To Reap.	Sown.	To Reap.	Sown.	To Reap.
Tennis Dirksz: de Visser	3	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	5								
Nicolas Loubs ..	2	1 $\frac{1}{4}$	2								
Jan Groff ..	8	5	16	1	12			1	8		
Jan Mostaert & Willem van Dieden ..	7	5	30	2	14						
Gerrit Cloete ..	2	1 $\frac{1}{4}$	6	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	4						
Hendrik Gijsbertsz: ..	5	5	14						2		
Willem Schallk ..	9	4	30	21	16	5	5		4		
Ocker Cornelisz: ..	6	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	16	1	20						
Pieter Visagie ..	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	10		5	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	5				
Pieter van de Westhuijsen	1	1	6								
Albert Barentsz: ..	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	5	2	30	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	5				
Hendrik Snevent ..	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	4			1 $\frac{1}{2}$	4				
Wouter Mostaert ..	6	4	8		6	1	8				
Jan Valkenrijck ..	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	9		4						
Jan Pietersz: Broertje ..	1	4	9		3	2	9			5	16
Cornelis Stevensz: ..	8	5	30	3	20						
Harmen Gresnigt ..	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	7	1	10	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	5				
Gerrit Pietersz: van der Bijl ..	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	10	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	7						
Steven Jansz: of Wagen-ingen ..	4	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	20	2	10						
Elbert Dirksz: Diemer ..	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	6								
Totals	89	50 $\frac{3}{4}$	243	18 $\frac{3}{4}$	161	5 $\frac{7}{8}$	41	1 $\frac{7}{8}$	14	5	16

In the Fort The Good Hope, 30th December, 1676.

(Signed) G. Muller, Elbert Diemer and Wouter Mostart.

December 31st.—Pleasant weather to-day. Nothing remarkable happened. Towards evening this valley and the bay were covered with a thick mist, and with this the year took its departure from us.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY
Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

~~REC'D LD-URL~~

LD-URL OCT 25 1967

FEB 15 1968

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 000 596 807 8

